# RT3050/52

## Datasheet

Preliminary
Revision August 14, 2008

**Application**

- 802.11 b/g/n AP/Router
- Dual Band Concurrent Router
- NAS
- iNIC

The RT3052 SOC combines Ralink's 802.11n draft compliant 2T2R MAC/BBP/RF, a high performance 384MHz MIPS24KEc CPU core, 5-port integrated 10/100 Ethernet switch/PHY, an USB OTG and a Gigabit Ethernet MAC. With the RT3052, there are very few external components required for 2.4GHz 11n wireless products. The RT3052 employs Ralink 2nd generation 11n technologies for longer range and better throughput. The embedded high performance CPU can process advanced applications effortlessly, such as routing, security and VOIP. The USB port can be configured to access external storage for Digital Home applications. In addition, the RT3052 has rich hardware interfaces (SPI/I2S/I2C/UART/GMAC) to enable many possible applications.

- Support 16/32-bit SDR SDRAM (up-to 64M bytes)
- SDRAM data [31:16] sre pins shared with GPIO
- Support boot from 8/16-bit parallel NOR type Flash (up-to 16M bytes))
- Support boot from NAND type Flash (up-to 64 M bytes)
- Support boot from ROM iNIC mode
- USB2.0 OTG x 1
- Embedded a 7-port Ethernet switch and a 5 port 10/100Mbps PHY
- Support 5 10/100 UTP ports and one RGMII/MII port for RT3052 only
- Hardware NAT, QoS, TCP/UDP/IP Checksum offloading
- Slow speed I/O : GPIO, I2C, SPI, UART, MDC/MDIO, JTAG,PCM and I2S
- Package and I/O voltage
  - 14mm x 14mm TFBGA-289 Package
  - I/O : 3.3V/2.5V(RGMII), 3.3v I/O

## Features

- Embedded 2T2R 2.4G CMOS RF
- Embedded 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP w/MLD enhancement
- 300Mbps PHY data rate
- 1x1/1x2/2x2 modes
- 20Mhz/40Mhz channel width
- Legacy and high throughout modes
- Reverse Data Grant (RDG) support
- Compressed Block ACK
- Up to 256 clients
- Multiple BSSID (up to 8)
- WEP64/128, WPA, WPA2 engines
- QOS - WMM, WMM Power Save
- Hardware frame aggregation
- International Regulation - 802.11h TPC
- MIPS 24KEc 384Mhz with 32KB I cache/16KB D cache

## Order Information

| Part Number | Temp Range | Package |
|---|---|---|
| RT3050F | -10~55 $^{0}$C | Green/ RoHS Compliant TFBGA 289 ball (14mmx14mm) |
| RT3052F | -10~55 $^{0}$C | Green/ RoHS Compliant TFBGA 289 ball (14mmx14mm) |

Ralink Technology, Corp. (Taiwan)
5th F. No. 36,Taiyuan St, Jhubei City, Hsin-Chu, Taiwan, R.O.C.
Tel: 886-3-560-0868 Fax: 886-3-560-0818

Ralink Technology, Corp. (USA)
20833 Stevens Creek Blvd., Suite 200 Cupertino, CA95014
Tel: (408) 725-8070 Fax: (408)725-8069
http://www.ralinktech.com

## Comparison Table

| *Feature* | *Device* | |
|---|---|---|
| | ***RT3050F*** | ***RT3052F*** |
| Package | TFBGA | TFBGA |
| Dimension | 14mmx14mm | 14mmx14mm |
| Balls | 289 | 289 |
| CPU | 320 MHz | 320/384 MHz |
| Cache | 16K I-Cache + 16K D-Cache | 32K I-Cache + 16K D-Cache |
| SDRAM | 16 bit (32MB) | 16/32 bit (64MB) |
| NOR Flash | 8/16 bit (16MB*2) | 8/16 bit (16MB*2) |
| NAND Flash | 8bit (32MB) | 8bit (32MB) |
| RGMII | NO | YES |
| USB 2.0 | YES | YES |
| TxRx | 1x1 | 2x2 |
| Band | 2.4 GHz | 2.4 GHz |
| Power Consumption | 1.9W | 2.3W |

## Functional Block Diagram

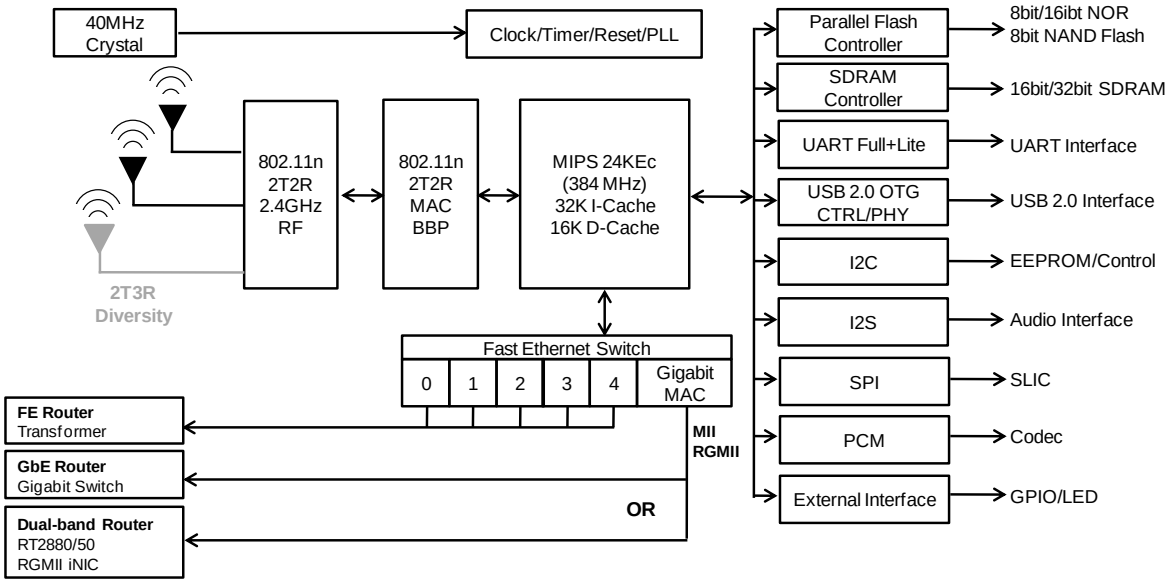



Fig. 1-1 RT3052 Functional Block Diagram

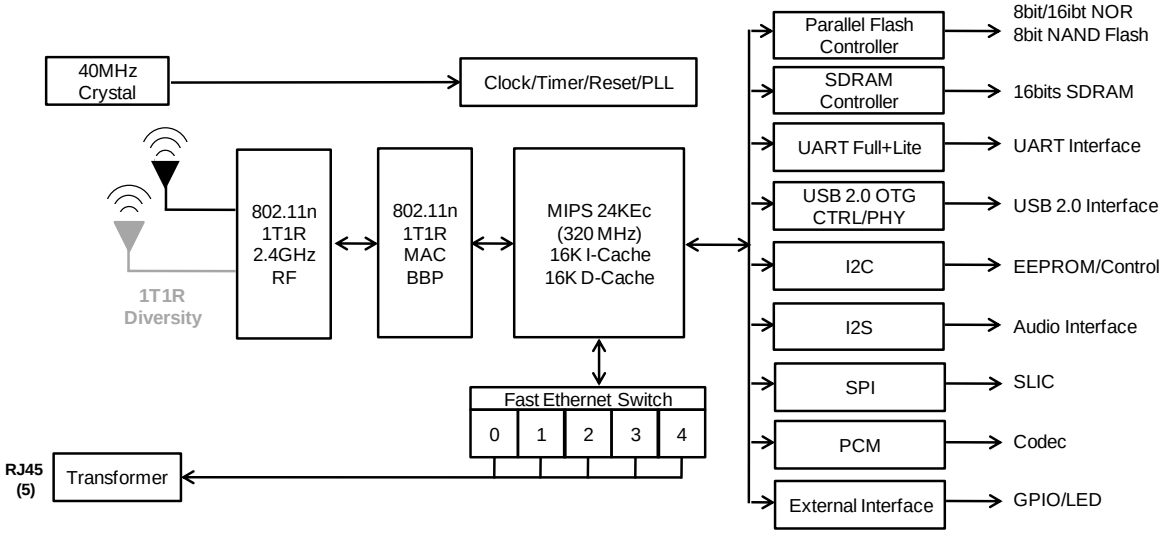



Fig. 1-2 RT3050 Functional Block Diagram

## Table of Content

## Table of Figures

# 1. Pin Description

## 1.1 289-Pins BGA Package Diagram

### 1.1.1 289-Pins BGA Package Diagram for RT3050F

Top view (left portion)

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | RF0_V12A | RF0_2G_OUTP | RF0_2G_INN | RF0_2G_INP | PLL_VC_CAP | BG_RES_12K | LDORF_OUT_V1 | RF_BB2_V12A | ADC_VREFN |
| B | NC | GND | RF_BB1_V12A | VCO_VCO_V12A | PLL_DIV_V12A | LDOPLL_OUT_V12 | LDORF_IN_VX | RF0_TSSI_IN | ADC_V12A |
| C | NC | RF1_V12A | GND | VCO_LO_V12A | PLL_PRE_V12A | PLL_X1 | PLL_X2 | BASE_TRX_IP | BASE_TRX_QN |
| D | NC | RF0_PA_PE | RF0_LO_V12A | GND | GND | BG_V33A | NC | BASE_TRX_IN | BASE_TRX_QP |
| E | NC | RF_V33A | NC | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| F | DSR_N | TXD | ANT_TRN | WLAN_LED_N | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| G | CTS_N | RTS_N | TXD2 | ANT_TRNB | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| H | UPHY_VDDA_V33A | UPHY_VRES | DCD_N | RXD2 | SOC_CO_V12D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| J | UPHY_PADP | UPHY_PADM | RXD | DTR_N | SOC_IO_V33D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| K | NC | NC | UPHY_VBUS | RIN | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| L | NC | NC | UPHY_ID | UPHY_VDDL_V12D | SOC_CO_V12D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| M | NC | NC | NC | SOC_CO_V12D | NC | RGMII_IO_V33D | RGMII_IO_V33D | GND | GND |
| N | NC | NC | NC | RGMII_IO_V33D | RGMII_IO_V33D | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A |
| P | NC | NC | NC | EPHY_REF_RES | EPHY_LED3_N | EPHY_LED4_N | EPHY_LED0_N | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A |
| R | EPHY_RXN_p0 | EPHY_RXP_p0 | EPHY_TXP_p1 | EPHY_TXN_p1 | EPHY_TXP_p3 | EPHY_TXN_p3 | EPHY_LED1_N | EPHY_LED2_N | SPI_DIN |
| T | EPHY_TXN_p0 | EPHY_RXP_p1 | EPHY_RXN_p2 | EPHY_TXN_p2 | EPHY_RXP_p3 | EPHY_RXN_p4 | EPHY_TXN_p4 | PORST_N | SPI_CLK |
| U | EPHY_TXP_p0 | EPHY_RXN_p1 | EPHY_RXP_p2 | EPHY_TXP_p2 | EPHY_RXN_p3 | EPHY_RXP_p4 | EPHY_TXP_p4 | SPI_DOUT | SPI_EN |

Top view (right portion)

| 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ADC_VREFP | ADC_VREF025P | ADC_VREF | LDODIG_OUT_V12 | SRAM_CS_N | MA20 | MD1 | MD6 | A |
| ADC_V12D | ADC_VREF025N | NC | OE_N | FLASH_CS_N | MD0 | MD5 | MD4 | B |
| RF0_LNA_PE | LDOADC_IN_VX | LDODIG_IN_VX | WE_N | MA21 | MD3 | MD8 | MD9 | C |
| GND | LDOADC_OUT_V12 | LDO_V33A | MA22 | SOC_CO_V12D | MD2 | MD10 | MD13 | D |
| GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_CO_V12D | MD7 | MD14 | MD15 | E |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_CO_V12D | MD11 | MA3 | MA2 | F |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_CO_V12D | MD12 | MA1 | BPLL_VDD_V12D | G |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | MA4 | MA0 | BPLL_POC_V33D | H |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | BPLL_DVDD_V12D | BPLL_DVDDA_V12D | BPLL_AVDD_V12A | J |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | MA5 | MA7 | MA6 | K |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_CO_V12D | MA9 | MA8 | L |
| GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | MA15 | MA11 | MA10 | M |
| SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | NC | MA19 | MA13 | MA14 | N |
| SOC_CO_V12D | SOC_CO_V12D | NC | NC | NC | NC | MA18 | MA12 | P |
| I2C_SCLK | JTAG_TDO | NC | NC | NC | NC | SDRAM_CLK | MA17 | R |
| I2C_SD | JTAG_TDI | JTAG_TRST_N | NC | NC | NC | SDRAM_RAS_N | MA16 | T |
| GPIO0 | JTAG_TMS | JTAG_TCLK | NC | NC | NC | NC | SDRAM_CS_N | U |

### 1.1.2 289-Pins BGA Package Diagram for RT3052F

Top view (left portion)

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | RF0_V12A | RF0_2G_OUTP | RF0_2G_INN | RF0_2G_INP | PLL_VC_CAP | BG_RES_12K | DORF_OUT_V1 | RF_BB2_V12A | ADC_VREFN |
| B | RF1_2G_INP | GND | RF_BB1_V12A | VCO_VCO_V12A | PLL_DIV_V12A | LDOPLL_OUT_V12 | LDORF_IN_VX | RF0_TSSI_IN | ADC_V12A |
| C | RF1_2G_INN | RF1_V12A | GND | VCO_LO_V12A | PLL_PRE_V12A | PLL_X1 | PLL_X2 | BASE_TRX_IP | BASE_TRX_QN |
| D | RF1_2G_OUTP | RF0_PA_PE | RF0_LO_V12A | GND | GND | BG_V33A | RF1_TSSI_IN | BASE_TRX_IN | BASE_TRX_QP |
| E | RF1_PA_PE | RF_V33A | RF1_LO_V12A | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| F | DSR_N | TXD | ANT_TRN | WLAN_LED_N | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| G | CTS_N | RTS_N | TXD2 | ANT_TRNB | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| H | UPHY_VDDA_V33A | UPHY_VRES | DCD_N | RXD2 | SOC_CO_V12D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| J | UPHY_PADP | UPHY_PADM | RXD | DTR_N | SOC_IO_V33D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| K | GE0_RXDV | GE0_RXCLK | UPHY_VBUS | RIN | GND | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| L | GE0_RXD3 | GE0_RXD0 | UPHY_ID | UPHY_VDDL_V12D | SOC_CO_V12D | GND | GND | GND | GND |
| M | GE0_TXCLK | GE0_RXD1 | GE0_RXD2 | SOC_CO_V12D | MDC | RGMII_IO_V33D | RGMII_IO_V33D | GND | GND |
| N | GE0_TXEN | GE0_TXD0 | MDIO | RGMII_IO_V33D | RGMII_IO_V33D | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A |
| P | GE0_TXD1 | GE0_TXD2 | GE0_TXD3 | EPHY_REF_RES | EPHY_LED3_N | EPHY_LED4_N | EPHY_LED0_N | EPHY_V33A | EPHY_V33A |
| R | EPHY_RXN_p0 | EPHY_RXP_p0 | EPHY_TXP_p1 | EPHY_TXN_p1 | EPHY_TXP_p3 | EPHY_TXN_p3 | EPHY_LED1_N | EPHY_LED2_N | SPI_DIN |
| T | EPHY_TXN_p0 | EPHY_RXP_p1 | EPHY_RXN_p2 | EPHY_TXN_p2 | EPHY_RXP_p3 | EPHY_RXN_p4 | EPHY_TXN_p4 | PORST_N | SPI_CLK |
| U | EPHY_TXP_p0 | EPHY_RXN_p1 | EPHY_RXP_p2 | EPHY_TXP_p2 | EPHY_RXN_p3 | EPHY_RXP_p4 | EPHY_TXP_p4 | SPI_DOUT | SPI_EN |

Top view (right portion)

| 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ADC_VREFP | ADC_VREF025P | ADC_VREF | LDODIG_OUT_V12 | SRAM_CS_N | MA20 | MD1 | MD6 | A |
| ADC_V12D | ADC_VREF025N | RF1_LNA_PE | OE_N | FLASH_CS_N | MD0 | MD5 | MD4 | B |
| RF0_LNA_PE | LDOADC_IN_VX | LDODIG_IN_VX | WE_N | MA21 | MD3 | MD8 | MD9 | C |
| GND | LDOADC_OUT_V12 | LDO_V33A | MA22 | SOC_CO_V12D | MD2 | MD10 | MD13 | D |
| GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_CO_V12D | MD7 | MD14 | MD15 | E |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_CO_V12D | MD11 | MA3 | MA2 | F |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_CO_V12D | MD12 | MA1 | BPLL_VDD_V12D | G |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | MA4 | MA0 | BPLL_POC_V33D | H |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | BPLL_DVDD_V12D | BPLL_DVDDA_V12D | BPLL_AVDD_V12A | J |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | MA5 | MA7 | MA6 | K |
| GND | GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_CO_V12D | MA9 | MA8 | L |
| GND | GND | GND | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | MA15 | MA11 | MA10 | M |
| SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | SOC_IO_V33D | MD26 | MA19 | MA13 | MA14 | N |
| SOC_CO_V12D | SOC_CO_V12D | MD31 | MD27 | MD21 | MD18 | MA18 | MA12 | P |
| I2C_SCLK | JTAG_TDO | MD25 | MD30 | MD22 | MD19 | SDRAM_CLK | MA17 | R |
| I2C_SD | JTAG_TDI | JTAG_TRST_N | MD28 | MD20 | MD16 | SDRAM_RAS_N | MA16 | T |
| GPIO0 | JTAG_TMS | JTAG_TCLK | MD29 | MD24 | MD23 | MD17 | SDRAM_CS_N | U |

## 1.2 Pin Description

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| JTAG interfaces : 5 pins | | | |
| T12 | JTAG_TRST_N | I, IPU | JTAG TRST. |
| U12 | JTAG_TCLK | I | JTAG TCLK. |
| U11 | JTAG_TMS | I | JTAG TMS. |
| T11 | JTAG_TDI | I | JTAG TDI. |
| R11 | JTAG_TDO | O | JTAG TDO. |
| UART Lite interface : 2 pins | | | |
| H4 | RXD2 | I, IPD | UART Lite RXD. |
| G3 | TXD2 | O | UART Lite TXD. |
| UART Full interface : 8 pins | | | |
| J3 | RXD | I, IPD | UART RXD. |
| K4 | RIN | I | UART RIN. |
| G1 | CTS_N | I | UART CTS_N. |
| F1 | DSR_N | I | UART DSR_N. |
| H3 | DCD_N | I | UART DCD_N. |
| F2 | TXD | O | UART TXD. |
| J4 | DTR_N | O | UART DTR. |
| G2 | RTS_N | O | UART RTS. |
| SPI interface : 4 pins | | | |
| R9 | SPI_DIN | I | SPI DIN. |
| U8 | SPI_DOUT | O | SPI DOUT. |
| T9 | SPI_CLK | O | SPI Clock. |
| U9 | SPI_EN | O | SPI Data Enable. |
| I2C interface : 2 pins | | | |
| R10 | I2C_SCLK | O, IPU | I2C Clock. |
| T10 | I2C_SD | I/O, IPU | I2C Data. |
| GPIO interface : 1 pin | | | |
| U10 | GPIO0 | I/O | When NAND-flash is applied, this pin should be used as the BUSY/READY pin. Otherwise, it is dedicated as the GPIO0 Pin |
| Misc signals : 4 pins | | | |
| T8 | PORST_N | I, IPU | Power on reset |
| F4 | WLAN_LED_N | O | WLAN Activity LED |
| F3 | ANT_TRN | O | Positive signal for antenna T/R switch |
| G4 | ANT_TRNB | O | Negative signal for antenna T/R switch |
| 5-Port PHY : 26 pins | | | |
| P4 | EPHY_REF_RES | I/O | Connect to an external resistor to provide accurate bias current |
| R1 | EPHY_RXN_P0 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #0 RXN |
| R2 | EPHY _RXP_P0 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #0 RXP |
| T1 | EPHY _TXN_P0 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #0 TXN |
| U1 | EPHY _TXP_P0 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #0 TXP |
| U2 | EPHY _RXN_P1 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #1 RXN |
| T2 | EPHY _RXP_P1 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #1 RXP |
| R4 | EPHY _TXN_P1 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #1 TXN |
| R3 | EPHY _TXP_P1 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #1 TXP |
| T3 | EPHY _RXN_P2 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #2 RXN |
| U3 | EPHY _RXP_P2 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #2 RXP |
| T4 | EPHY _TXN_P2 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #2 TXN |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| U4 | EPHY _TXP_P2 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #2 TXP |
| U5 | EPHY _RXN_P3 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #3 RXN |
| T5 | EPHY _RXP_P3 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #3 RXP |
| R6 | EPHY _TXN_P3 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #3 TXN |
| R5 | EPHY _TXP_P3 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #3 TXP |
| T6 | EPHY _RXN_P4 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #4 RXN |
| U6 | EPHY _RXP_P4 | I | 10/100 PHY Port #4 RXP |
| T7 | EPHY _TXN_P4 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #4 TXN |
| U7 | EPHY _TXP_P4 | O | 10/100 PHY Port #4 TXP |
| P7 | EPHY _LED0_N | O | 10/100 PHY Port #0 activity LED |
| R7 | EPHY _LED1_N | O | 10/100 PHY Port #1activity LED |
| R8 | EPHY _LED2_N | O | 10/100 PHY Port #2 activity LED |
| P5 | EPHY _LED3_N | O | 10/100 PHY Port #3 activity LED |
| P6 | EPHY _LED4_N | O | 10/100 PHY Port #4 activity LED |
| RGMII/MII interface : 12 pins (2.5v or 3.3v) | | | |
| K2 | GE0_RXCLK | I/O | RGMII/MII RX Clock. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| K1 | GE0_RXDV | I | RGMII/MII RX Data Valid. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| L2 | GE0_RXD0 | I | RGMII/MII RX Data bit #0. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| M2 | GE0_RXD1 | I | RGMII/MII RX Data bit #1. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| M3 | GE0_RXD2 | I | RGMII/MII RX Data bit #2. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| L1 | GE0_RXD3 | I | RGMII/MII RX Data bit #3. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| M1 | GE0_TXCLK | I/O | RGMII/MII TX Clock. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| N1 | GE0_TXEN | O | RGMII/MII TX Data Enable. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| N2 | GE0_TXD0 | O | RGMII/MII TX Data bit #0. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P1 | GE0_TXD1 | O | RGMII/MII TX Data bit #1. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P2 | GE0_TXD2 | O | RGMII/MII TX Data bit #2. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P3 | GE0_TXD3 | O | RGMII/MII TX Data bit #3. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| PHY Management interface : 2 pins (2.5v or 3.3v) | | | |
| M5 | MDC | O | PHY Management Clock. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| N3 | MDIO | I/O | PHY Management Data. For RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| USB OTG PHY interface : 5 pins | | | |
| H2 | UPHY_VRES | I/O | Connect to an external 8.2K Ohm resistor for band-gap reference circuit |
| K3 | UPHY_VBUS | I/O | USB OTG VBUS pin; Connect to the VBUS pin of the USB connector |
| J2 | UPHY_PADM | I/O | USB OTG data pin Data- |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| J1 | UPHY_PADP | I/O | USB OTG data pin Data+ |
| L3 | UPHY_ID | I/O | USB OTG ID pin. Connect to ID pin on the Mini-type connect |
| SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Interface : 62pins | | | |
| P12 | MD31 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #31 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| R13 | MD30 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #30 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| U13 | MD29 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #29 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| T13 | MD28 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #28 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P13 | MD27 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #27 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| N14 | MD26 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #26 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| R12 | MD25 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #25 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| U14 | MD24 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #24 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| U15 | MD23 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #23 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| R14 | MD22 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #22 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P14 | MD21 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #21 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| T14 | MD20 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #20 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| R15 | MD19 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #19 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| P15 | MD18 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #18 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| U16 | MD17 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #17 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| T15 | MD16 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #16 for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| E17 | MD15 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #15 |
| E16 | MD14 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #14 |
| D17 | MD13 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #13 |
| G15 | MD12 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #12 |
| F15 | MD11 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #11 |
| D16 | MD10 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #10 |
| C17 | MD9 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #9 |
| C16 | MD8 | I/O | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Data bit #8 |
| E15 | MD7 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #7 |
| A17 | MD6 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #6 |
| B16 | MD5 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #5 |
| B17 | MD4 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #4 |
| C15 | MD3 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #3 |
| D15 | MD2 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #2 |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| A16 | MD1 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #1 |
| B15 | MD0 | I/O | SDRAM/NAND or NOR Flash/SRAM Data bit #0 |
| D13 | MA22 | I/O | Flash/SRAM Address bit #22<br>This pin is shared with NAND flash CLE |
| C14 | MA21 | I/O | Flash/SRAM Address bit #21<br>This pin is shared with NAND flash RE_N |
| A15 | MA20 | I/O, IPD | Flash/SRAM Address bit #20<br>This pin is shared with NAND flash WE_N |
| N15 | MA19 | I/O,IPD | Flash/SRAM Address bit #19 or SDRAM DQM bit#3 |
| P16 | MA18 | I/O, IPD | Flash/SRAM Address bit #18 or SDRAM DQM bit#2 |
| R17 | MA17 | I/O , IPU | Flash/SRAM Address bit #17 or SDRAM DQM bit#1 |
| T17 | MA16 | I/O , IPD | Flash/SRAM Address bit #16 or SDRAM DQM bit#0 |
| M15 | MA15 | I/O , IPU | Flash/SRAM Address bit #15 or SDRAM BA bit#1 |
| N17 | MA14 | I/O , IPU | Flash/SRAM Address bit #14 or SDRAM BA bit#0 |
| N16 | MA13 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #13<br>This pin is shared with NAND flash ALE |
| P17 | MA12 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #12 |
| M16 | MA11 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #11 |
| M17 | MA10 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #10 |
| L16 | MA9 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #9 |
| L17 | MA8 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #8 |
| K16 | MA7 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #7 |
| K17 | MA6 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #6 |
| K15 | MA5 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #5 |
| H15 | MA4 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #4 |
| F16 | MA3 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #3 |
| F17 | MA2 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #2 |
| G16 | MA1 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #1 |
| H16 | MA0 | I/O , IPD | SDRAM/Flash/SRAM Address bit #0 |
| T16 | SDRAM_RAS_N | O | SDRAM Row Address Select |
| U17 | SDRAM_CS_N | O | SDRAM Chip Select |
| R16 | SDRAM_CLK | O | SDRAM Clock |
| C13 | WE_N | O | Flash/SRAM Write Enable and SDRAM Write Enable (SDRAM_WE_N) |
| B13 | OE_N | O | Flash/SRAM Write Output Enable and SDRAM Column Address Select (SDRAM_CAS_N) |
| B14 | FLASH_CS_N | O | Flash Chip Select or NAND Flash CS_N if boot from NAND is selected. |
| A14 | SRAM_CS_N | O | SRAM Chip Select |
| RF interface, related LDO and power pins : 47 pins | | | |
| A4 | RF0_2G_INP | I | 2.4GHz RX0 input (positive) |
| A3 | RF0_2G_INN | I | 2.4GHz RX0 input (negative) |
| A2 | RF0_2G_OUTP | O | 2.4GHz TX0 output (positive) |
| B1 | RF1_2G_INP | I | 2.4GHz RX1 input (positive) for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| C1 | RF1_2G_INN | I | 2.4GHz RX1 input (negative) |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| D1 | RF1_2G_OUTP | O | 2.4GHz TX1 output (positive) for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| D2 | RF0_PA_PE | O | 0~3.3V control for external PA0 (20mA) |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| E1 | RF1_PA_PE | O | 0~3.3V control for external PA1 (20mA) for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| C10 | RF0_LNA_PE | O | External LNA0 3.3V power (50mA) |
| B12 | RF1_LNA_PE | O | External LNA1 3.3V power (50mA) for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| B8 | RF0_TSSI_IN | I | TX signal strength monitor input0 (0 ~3.3V) |
| D7 | RF1_TSSI_IN | I | TX signal strength monitor input1 (0 ~3.3V) for RT3052F |
| | NC | | For RT3050F |
| B3 | RF_BB1_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for analog baseband |
| A8 | RF_BB2_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for analog baseband |
| D3 | RF0_LO_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for LO & IF |
| E3 | RF1_LO_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for LO & IF |
| A1 | RF0_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for RF channel 0 |
| C2 | RF1_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for RF channel 1 |
| E2 | RF_V33A | P | 3.3V supply for PA Enable drivers (40mA) |
| B4 | VCO_VCO_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for VCO core |
| A5 | PLL_VC_CAP | I/O | PLL external loop filter |
| B10 | ADC_V12D | P | 1.2V supply for ADC digital logics |
| A12 | ADC_VREF | I/O | Main ADC reference voltage |
| A11 | ADC_VREF025P | I/O | Auxiliary ADC reference voltage (p) |
| B11 | ADC_VREF025N | I/O | Auxiliary ADC reference voltage (n) |
| B9 | ADC_V12A | P | 1.2V supply for ADC analog blocks |
| A10 | ADC_VREFP | O | Auxiliary ADC reference voltage (p) |
| A9 | ADC_VREFN | O | Auxiliary ADC reference voltage (n) |
| C9 | BASE_TRX_QN | I/O | Baseband Q 20Mhz debug I/O (negative) |
| D9 | BASE_TRX_QP | I/O | Baseband Q 20Mhz debug I/O (postive) |
| D8 | BASE_TRX_IN | I/O | Baseband I 20Mhz debug I/O (negative) |
| C8 | BASE_TRX_IP | I/O | Baseband I 20Mhz debug I/O (postive) |
| C12 | LDODIG_IN_VX | I | LDO 1.5-2.0V 600mA input |
| D12 | LDO_V33A | P | 3.3V supply for LDOs |
| A13 | LDODIG_OUT_V12 | O | LDO 1.2V 600mA output for digital core |
| C11 | LDOADC_IN_VX | I | LDO 1.5-2V 200mA input for ADC |
| D11 | LDOADC_OUT_V12 | O | LDO 1.2V 200mA output for ADC |
| B7 | LDORF_IN_VX | I | LDO 1.5~2V 300mA input for RF core and PLL |
| A7 | LDORF_OUT_V12 | O | LDO 1.2V 200mA output for RF core |
| B6 | LDOPLL_OUT_V12 | O | LDO 1.2V 50mA output for RF PLL |
| A6 | BG_RES_12K | I/O | External reference resistor (12K ohm) |
| D6 | BG_V33A | P | 3.3V supply for band gap reference |
| C6 | PLL_X1 | I | Crystal oscillator input |
| C7 | PLL_X2 | O | Crystal oscillator output |
| B5 | PLL_DIV_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for PLL divider |
| C5 | PLL_PRE_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for PLL prescaler |
| C4 | VCO_LO_V12A | P | 1.2V Supply for VCO output buffer |
| Other power pins : 39 pins | | | |
| J15 | BPLL_DVDD_V12D | P | 1.2v PLL digital power supply |
| J16 | BPLL_DVDDA_V12D | P | 1.2v PLL digital power supply |
| J17 | BPLL_AVDD_V12A | P | 1.2v PLL analog power supply |
| H17 | BPLL_POC_V33D | P | 3.3v PLL digital power supply |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| G17 | BPLL_VDD_V12D | P | 1.2v PLL digital power supply |
| N6 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| N7 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| N8 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| N9 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| P8 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| P9 | EPHY_V33A | P | 3.3v 10/100 PHY analog power supply |
| N4 | RGMII_IO_V33D | P | 2.5v/3.3v RGMII I/O power supply |
| N5 | RGMII_IO_V33D | P | 2.5v/3.3v RGMII I/O power supply |
| M6 | RGMII_IO_V33D | P | 2.5v/3.3v RGMII I/O power supply |
| M7 | RGMII_IO_V33D | P | 2.5v/3.3v RGMII I/O power supply |
| H1 | UPHY_VDDA_V33A | P | 3.3v USB PHY analog power supply |
| L4 | UPHY_VDDL_V12D | P | 1.2v USB PHY digital power supply |
| J5 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| M4 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| H5 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| L5 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| P10 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| P11 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| D14 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| E14 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| F14 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| G14 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| L15 | SOC_CO_V12D | P | 1.2v digital core power supply |
| E13 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| H14 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| J14 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| K14 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| L14 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| M14 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| N10 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| N11 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| N12 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| N13 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| M13 | SOC_IO_V33D | P | 3.3v digital I/O power supply |
| Ground pins : 70 pins | | | |
| B2 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| C3 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| D4 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| D5 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| D10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E4 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E5 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| E11 | GND | P | Ground pin |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| E12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F5 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| F13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G5 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| G13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| H13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| J13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K5 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| K13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L6 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L7 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L10 | GND | P | Ground pin |

| Pin | Name | I/O/IPU/IPD | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| L11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| L13 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| M8 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| M9 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| M10 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| M11 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| M12 | GND | P | Ground pin |
| Total: 289 pins | | | |

*Note: IPD means internal pull-down; IPU means internal pull-up; P means power.

## 1.3 Pins Sharing Scheme

Some pins are shared with GPIO to provide maximum flexibility for system designers. The RT3050/52 provides up to 52(RT3052)/22(RT3050) GPIO pins. Users can configure SYSCFG and GPIOMODE registers in the System Control block to specify the pin function. Unless it specified explicitly, all the GPIO pins are in input mode after reset.

RGMII_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | RGMII_GPIO_MODE=0 | RGMII_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| GE0_RXCLK | GE0_RXCLK | GPIO51 |
| GE0_RXDV | GE0_RXDV | GPIO50 |
| GE0_RXD0 | GE0_RXD0 | GPIO49 |
| GE0_RXD1 | GE0_RXD1 | GPIO48 |
| GE0_RXD2 | GE0_RXD2 | GPIO47 |
| GE0_RXD3 | GE0_RXD3 | GPIO46 |
| GE0_TXCLK | GE0_TXCLK | GPIO45 |
| GE0_TXEN | GE0_TXEN | GPIO44 |
| GE0_TXD0 | GE0_TXD0 | GPIO43 |
| GE0_TXD1 | GE0_TXD1 | GPIO42 |
| GE0_TXD2 | GE0_TXD2 | GPIO41 |
| GE0_TXD3 | GE0_TXD3 | GPIO40 |

SDRAM_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | SDRAM_GPIO_MODE=0 | SDRAM_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| {MD31:MD16} | {MD31:MD16} | GPIO39~GPIO24 |

MDIO_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | MDIO_GPIO_MODE=0 | MDIO_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| MDC | MDC | GPIO23 |
| MDIO | MDIO | GPIO22 |

JTAG_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | JTAG_GPIO_MODE=0 | JTAG_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| JTAG_TRST_N | JTAG_TRST_N | GPIO21 |
| JTAG_TCLK | JTAG_TCLK | GPIO20 |
| JTAG_TMS | JTAG_TMS | GPIO19 |
| JTAG_TDI | JTAG_TDI | GPIO18 |
| JTAG_TDO | JTAG_TDO | GPIO17 |

UARTL_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | UARTL_GPIO_MODE=0 | UARTL_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| RXD2 | RXD2 | GPIO16 |
| TXD2 | TXD2 | GPIO15 |

UARTF_SHARE_MODE description

| Pin Name | 3'b000 UARTF | 3'b001 PCM, UARTF | 3'b010 PCM, I2S | 3'b011 I2S UARTF | 3'b100 PCM, GPIO | 3'b101 GPIO, UARTF | 3'b110 GPIO I2S | 3'b111 GPIO |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| RIN | RIN | PCMDTX | PCMDTX | RXD | PCMDTX | GPIO14 | GPIO14 | GPIO14 |
| DSR_N | DSR_N | PCMDRX | PCMDRX | CTS_N | PCMDRX | GPIO13 | GPIO13 | GPIO13 |
| DCD_N | DCD_N | PCMCLK | PCMCLK | TXD | PCMCLK | GPIO12 | GPIO12 | GPIO12 |
| DTR_N | DTR_N | PCMFS | PCMFS | RTS_N | PCMFS | GPIO11 | GPIO11 | GPIO11 |
| RXD | RXD | RXD | REFCLK | REFCLK | REFCLK | RXD | REFCLK | GPIO10 |
| CTS_N | CTS_N | CTS_N | I2SSD | I2SSD | GPIO9 | CTS_N | I2SSD | GPIO9 |
| TXD | TXD | TXD | I2SWS | I2SWS | GPIO8 | TXD | I2SWS | GPIO8 |
| RTS_N | RTS_N | RTS_N | I2SCLK | I2SCLK | GPIO7 | RTS_N | I2SCLK | GPIO7 |

SPI_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | SPI_GPIO_MODE=0 | SPI_GPIO_MODE=1 |
|---|---|---|
| SPI_DIN | SPI_DIN | GPIO6 |
| SPI_DOUT | SPI_DOUT | GPIO5 |
| SPI_CLK | SPI_CLK | GPIO4 |
| SPI_EN | SPI_EN | GPIO3 |

I2C_GPIO_MODE description

| Pin Name | I2C_gpio_mode=0 | I2C_gpio_mode=1 |
|---|---|---|
| I2C_SCLK | I2C_SCLK | GPIO2 |
| I2C_SD | I2C_SD | GPIO1 |

Notes :

1. All given GPIOs are 4mA drive capable.
2. The default direction for GPIO pins are input(i.e. tri-state) except the GPIO pins (GPIO17…GPIO21) shared with the JTAG interface. The default value for JTAG_GPIO_MODE is 1.
3. MII, RvMII and RGMII Interfacing Scenarios:
    a. RT3052 supports MII/RvMII (Reversed MII) for 10/100Mbps mode and RGMII for 10/100/1000Mbps mode. The operation mode is determined by boot strapping settings (please refer to the GE0_MODE in the next session).
        i. For example, when GE0_MODE is set to 2'b10, reserved MII mode is configured during the boot strapping. In this mode, TXCLK becomes an output and TXD [3:0]/TXCTL become inputs; RXCLK becomes an output and RXD [3:0]/RXCTL become outputs. Please refer to the following application scenarios for better understanding.

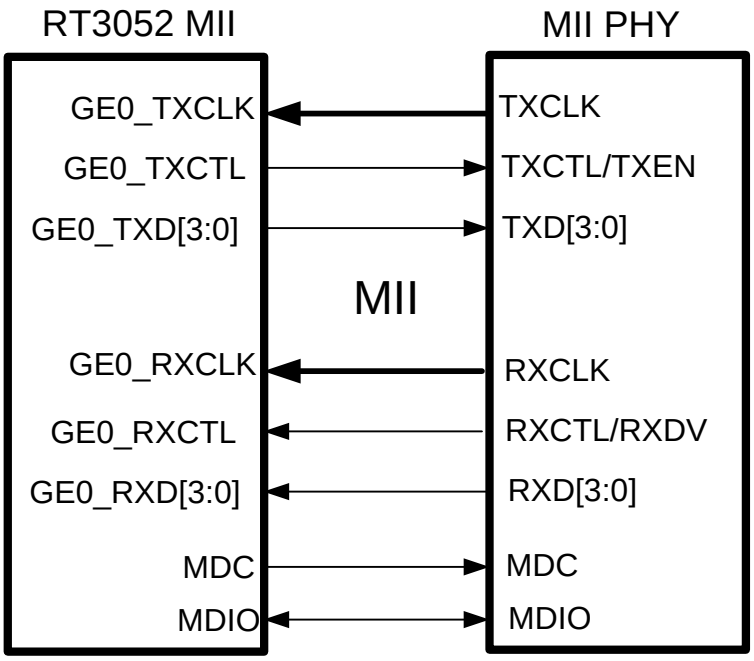



Fig. 1-3-1 RT3052 MII → MII PHY

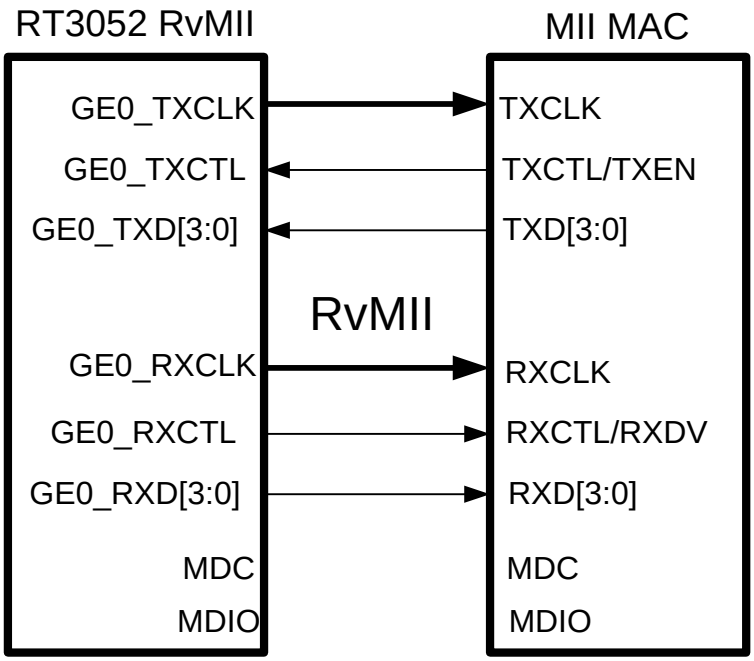



Fig. 1-3-2 RT3052 RvMII → MII MAC

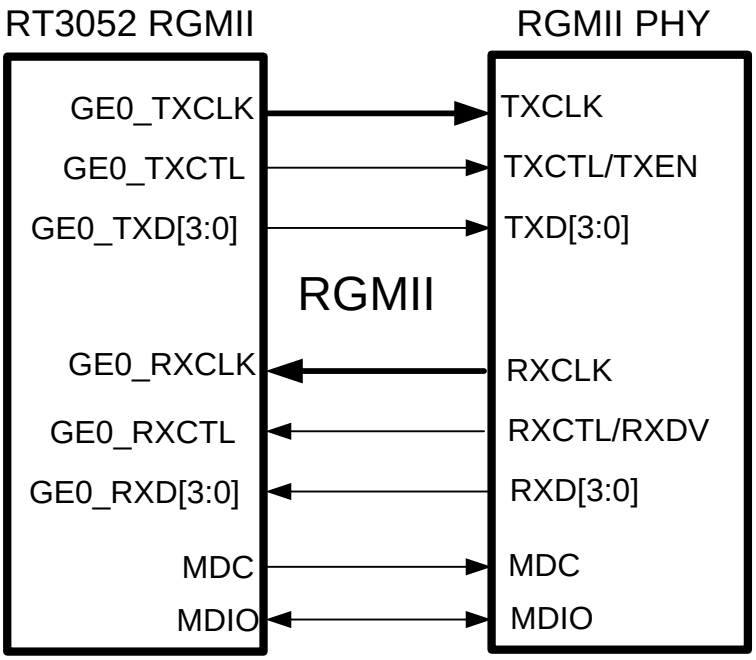



Fig. 1-3-3 RT3052 RGMII → RGMII PHY

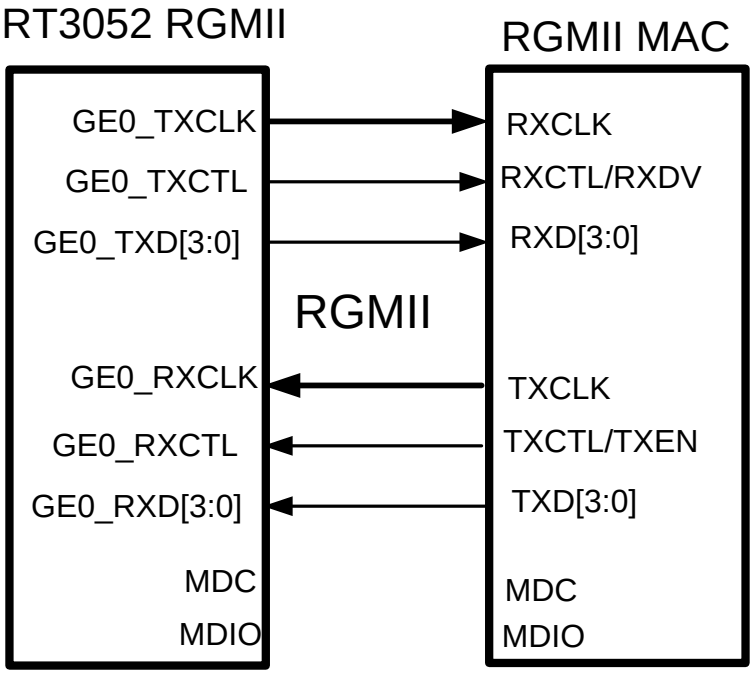



Fig. 1-3-4 RT3052 RGMII → RGMII MAC

## 1.4 Boot strapping Signal description

| Pin Name | Boot Strapping Signal Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| MA7..MA0 | TEST_CODE[7:0] | A vector to set CHIP operation/testing modes.<br>In normal operation, please use the default value :<br>8'b00000000 |
| {MA9, MA8} | BOOT_FROM | 2'b00 : boot from external 16-bit flash (default)<br>2'b01 : boot from external 8-bit flash<br>2'b10 : boot from external NAND flash<br>2'b11 : boot from internal ROM |
| MA10 | CPU_CLK_SEL | 1'b0 : Low (320Mhz)<br>1'b1 : High (384Mhz, default) |
| MA12 | BIG_ENDIAN | 0 : Little Endian (default)<br>1 : Big Endian |
| MA13 | BYPASS_PLL | 0 : Do Not Bypass PLL (default)<br>1: Bypass PLL |
| MA14 | BOOT_ADDR | 0 : CPU boots at address 0x1FC00000(default)<br>1 : CPU boots at address 0x1F000000 |
| {MA17,MA16} | GE_MODE | Gigabit Port Mode<br>2'b00 : RGMII Mode (10/100/1000M bps)<br>2'b01 : MII Mode (10/100 Mbps)<br>2'b10 : Reversed MII Mode (10/100 Mbps)<br>2'b11 : Reserve |
| MA20 | INIC_8MB_SDRAM | 0 : INIC SDRAM size is 2MB (default)<br>1 : INIC SDRAM size is 8MB |
| MA21 | INIC_EE_SDRAM | 0 : Take INIC SDRAM size from INIC_8MB setting (default)<br>1 : Take INIC SDRAM size from EEPROM |

# 2. Maximum Ratings and Operating Conditions

## 2.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Supply Voltage ..... 3.6V
Vcc to Vcc Decouple..... –0.3 to +0.3V
Input, Output or I/O Voltage..... GND –0.3V to Vcc+0.3V

## 2.2 Thermal Information

Thermal Resistance $\theta_{JA}$ ($^{o}$C/W) in free air for TFBGA (14x14mm) package..... 32.5°C /W
Thermal Resistance $\theta_{JC}$ (oC/W) in free air for TFBGA (14x14mm) package..... 6°C /W
Maximum Junction Temperature (Plastic Package) ..... 125°C
Maximum Lead Temperature (Soldering 10s)..... 300°C

## 2.3 Operating Conditions

Temperature Range ..... -10 to 55°C
Core Supply Voltage..... 1.2V +/- 5%
I/O Supply Voltage ..... 3.3V +/- 10%

## 2.4 Storage Condition

The calculated shelf life in sealed bag is 12 months if stored between 0°C and 40°C at less than 90% relative humidity (RH). After the bag is opened, devices that are subjected to solder reflow or other high temperature processes must be handled in the following manner:

a) Mounted within 168-hours of factory conditions < 30°C /60%RH
b) Storage humidity needs to maintained at <10% RH
c) Backing is necessary if customer expose the component to air over 168 hrs, backing condition: 125°C / 8hrs

## 2.5 DC Electrical Characteristics

| Parameters | Sym | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3.3V Supply Voltage | Vcc33 | | 3.0 | 3.3 | 3.6 | V |
| 1.2V Supply Voltage | Vcc12 | | 1.14 | 1.2 | 1.26 | V |
| 3.3V Current Consumption | Icc33 | | | 217 mA | | mA |
| 1.5V Current Consumption | Icc12 | | | 656 mA | | mA |
| 2.0V Current Consumption (@transformer center tap) | Icc20 | | | 514 mA | | mA |

## 2.6 AC Electrical Characteristics

### 2.6.1 SDRAM Interface

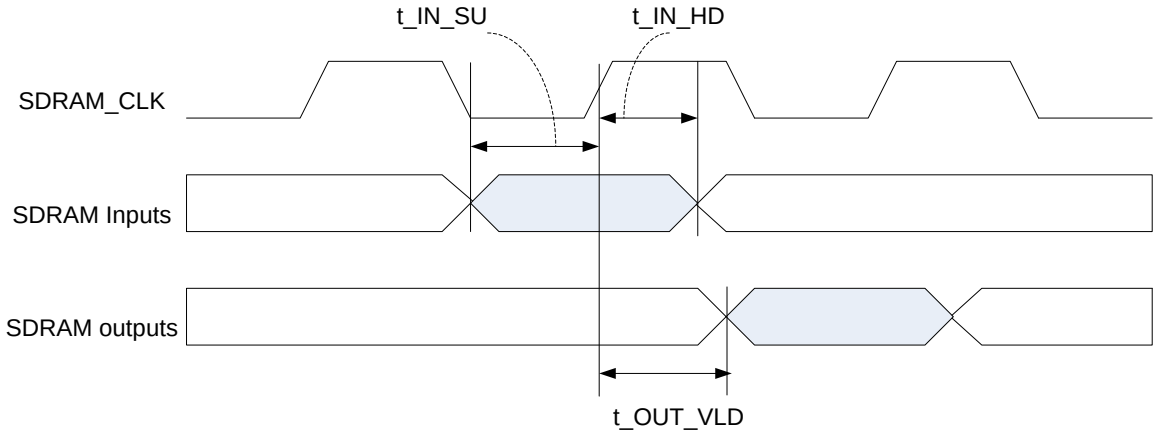
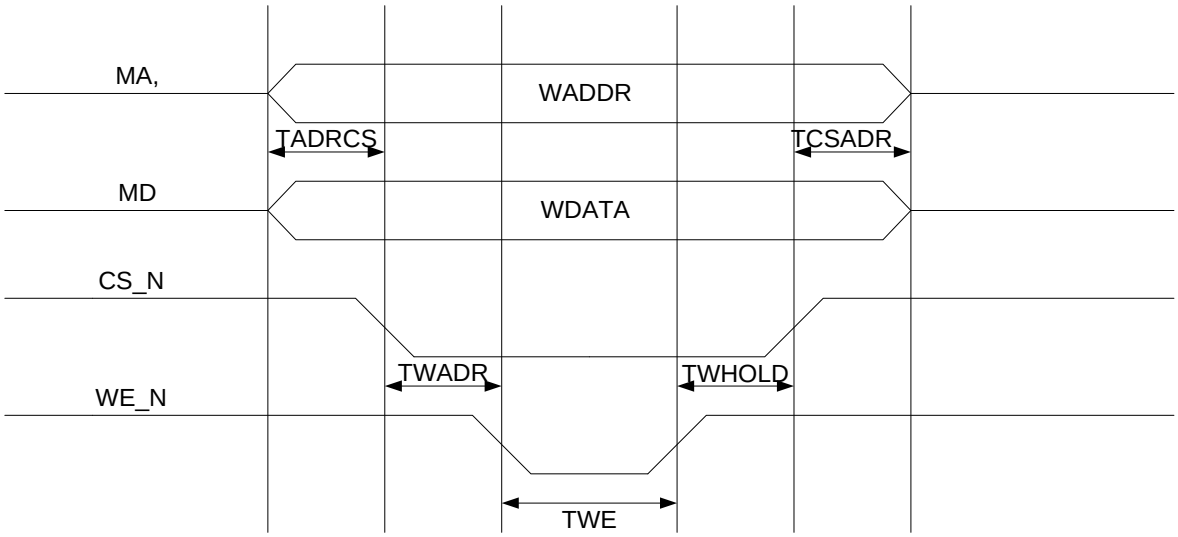



Fig. 2-6-1 SDRAM Interface

| Symbol | Description | Min | Max | Unit | Remark |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| t_IN_SU | Setup time for Input signals (e.g. MD*) | 1.5 | - | ns | |
| t_IN_HD | Hold time for input signals | 1.7 | - | ns | |
| t_OUT_VLD | SDRAM_CLK to output signals (MA*, MD*, SDRAM_RAS_N,...) valid | 0.8 | 5 | ns | output load : 8pF |

### 2.6.2 Flash/SRAM Interface

Flash, Async. SRAM Write Timing




Flash, Async. SRAM Read Timing

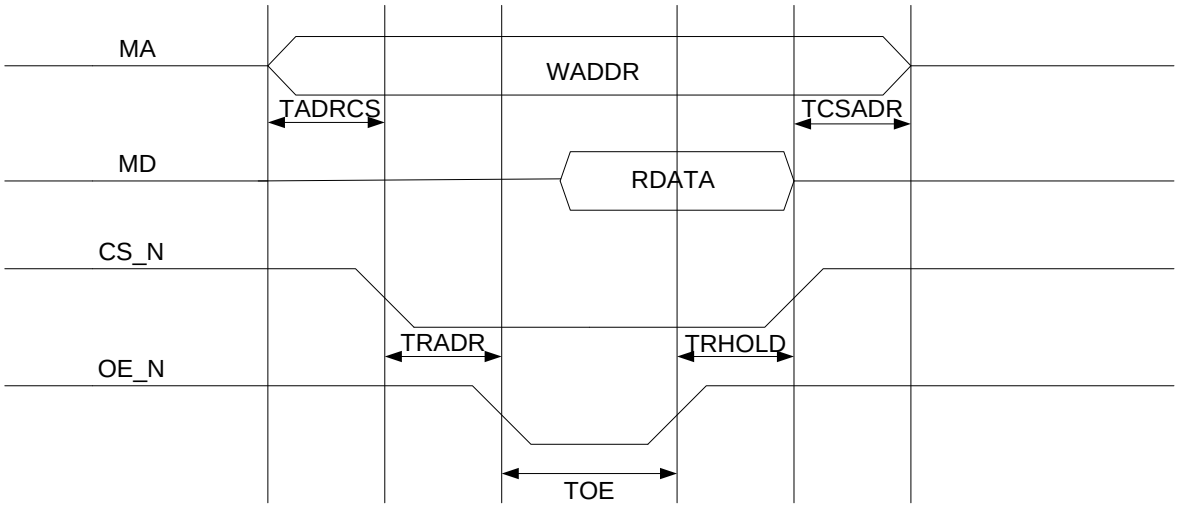



Fig. 2-6-2 Flash/SRAM Interface

Please refer to the "Memory Controller" section for more information about the timing setting on the Flash/SRAM interface.

### 2.6.3 RGMII Interface

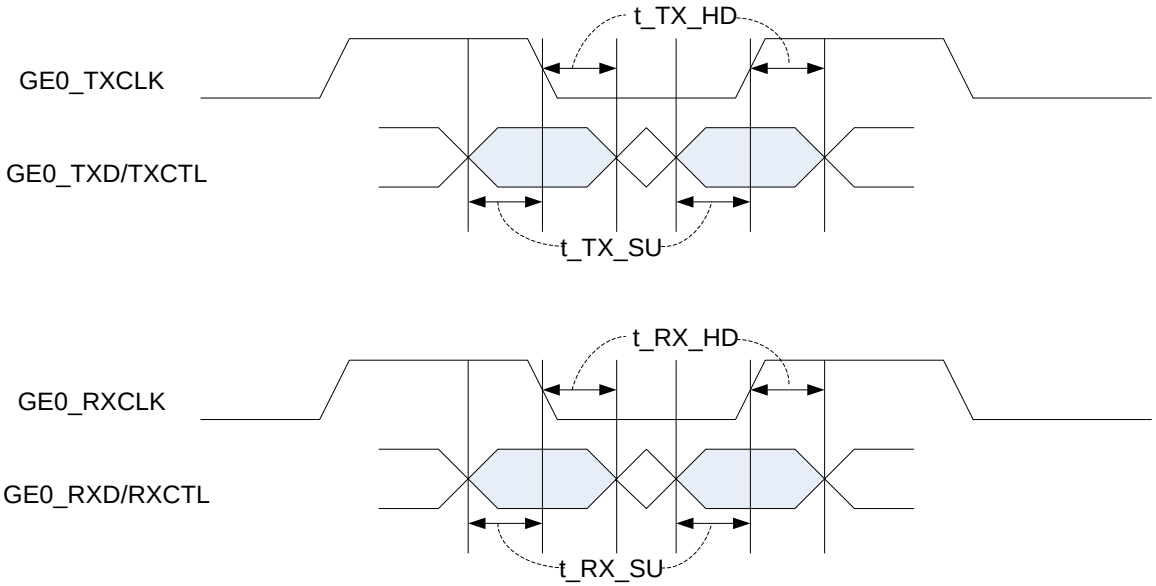



Fig. 2-6-3 RGMII Interface

| Symbol | Description | Min | Max | Unit | Remark |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| t_TX_SU | Setup time for output signals (e.g. GE0_TXD*, GE0_TXEN) | 1.2 | - | ns | output load : 5pF |
| t_TX_HD | Hold time for output signals | 1.2 | - | ns | output load : 5pF |
| t_RX_SU | Setup time for input signals (e.g. GE0_RXD*, GE0_RXDV) | 1.0 | - | ns | |
| t_RX_HD | Hold time for input signals | 1.0 | - | ns | |

### 2.6.4 Power On Sequence

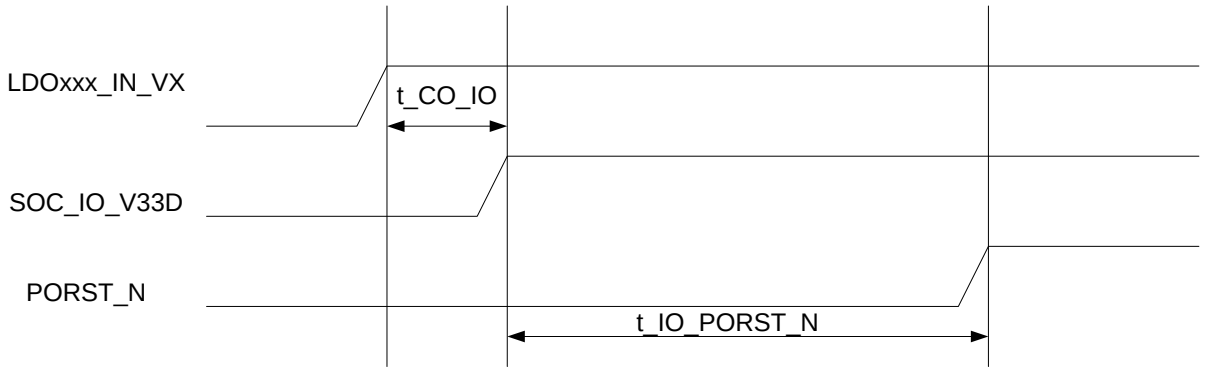



Fig. 2-6-4 Power ON Sequence

| Symbol | Description | Min | Max | Unit | Remark |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| t_CO_IO | Time between core power on to I/O power on | 0 | - | ms | |
| t_IO_PORST_N | Time between I/O power on to PORST_N de-assertion | 10 | - | ms | |

# 3. Function Description

## 3.1 Overview

The RT3050/52 SOC combines Ralink's 802.11n compliant 2T2R MAC/BBP/RF, a high performance 384-MHz MIPS24KEc CPU core, USB OTG controller/PHY, and 5(FE)+1(GE) port Ethernet switch and a 5-port 10/100Mbps Ethernet PHY, to enable a multitude of high performance, cost-effective 802.11n applications.

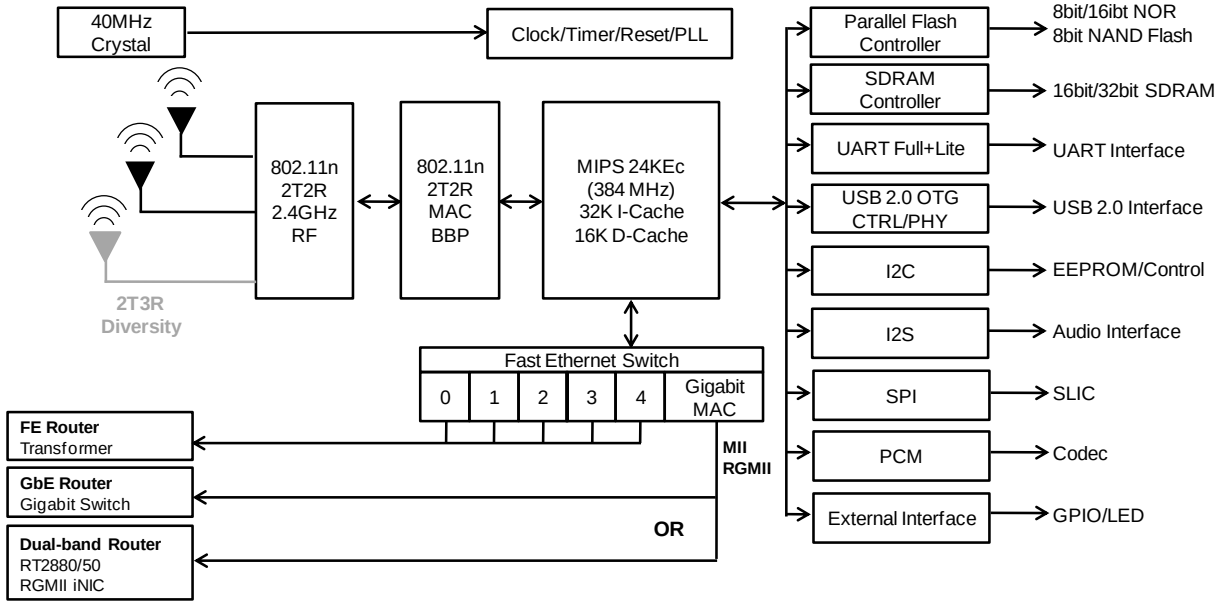



Fig. 3-1-1 RT3052 Block Diagram

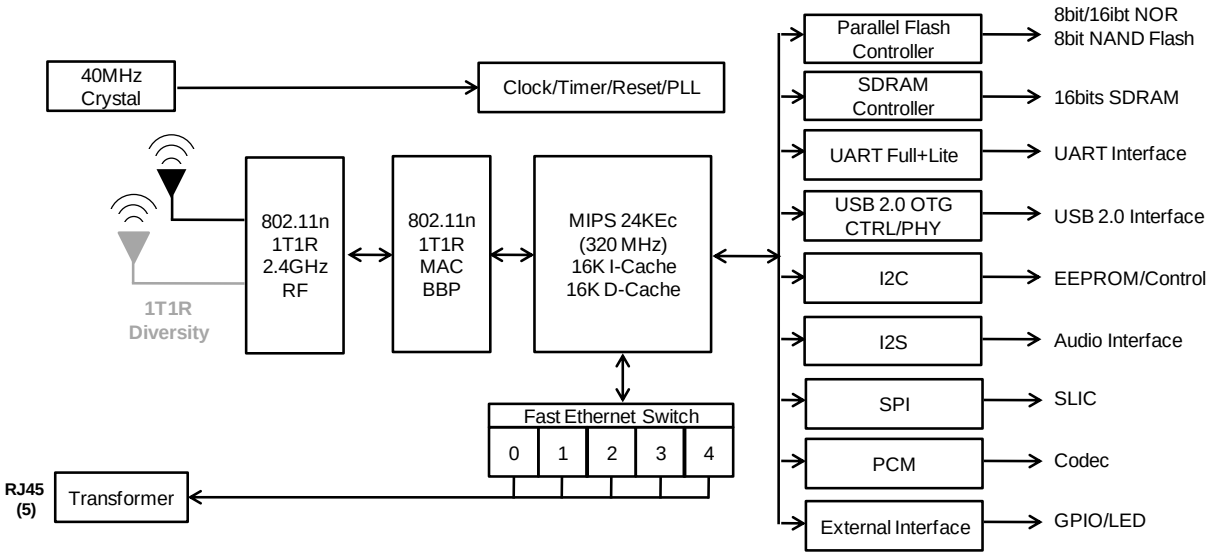



Fig. 3-1-2 RT3050 Block Diagram

There are 4 bus masters (MIPS 24KEc, Ethernet Switch, USB OTG, and 802.11n MAC/BBP/RF) in the RT3050/52 SoC on a high performance, low latency Rbus, (Ralink Bus). In addition, the RT3050/52 SoC supports lower speed peripherals such as UART, Timer, GPIO, I2C, SPI, I2S and PCM via a low speed peripheral bus (Pbus).The Flash/SRAM/SDRAM controller is the only bus slave on the Rbus. It includes an Advanced Memory Scheduler to arbitrate the requests from bus masters, enhancing the performance of memory access intensive tasks such as AP/Router packet processing.

The RT3052 has an embedded 5(FE)+1(GE) port Ethernet switch and a 5-port 10/100. Besides the normal L2 switch function, it also embeds Ralink's patent pending packet processing engine (PPE) to offload AP/Router packet forwarding tasks such as firewall, NAT, NAPT and layer 2 bridging from the MIPS CPU. It also features a high performance PDMA (packet DMA) which not only sorts and retrieves packets to and from the SDRAM but also supports CPU offloading packet functions such as IP/TCP/UDP checksum checking/generation, PPPoE session ID insertion and VLAN tag insertion. Ralink's packet processing engine technology enables the RT3052 to perform at the level of higher MHz CPU's.

The RT3050/52 SoC embeds Ralink's market proven 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP/RF to provide a 300Mbps PHY rate on the wireless LAN interface. The MAC design employs a highly efficient DMA engine and hardware data processing accelerators, which free the CPU for user applications. The 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP/RF is designed to support standards based features in the area of security, quality of service and international regulation resulting in an enhanced end user experience.

## 3.2 Memory Map Summary

| Start | | End | Size | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0000.0000 | - | 03FF.FFFF | 64M | SDRAM |
| 0400.0000 | - | 0FFF.FFFF | | <<Reserved>> |
| 1000.0000 | - | 1000.00FF | 256 | SYSCTL |
| 1000.0100 | - | 1000.01FF | 256 | TIMER |
| 1000.0200 | - | 1000.02FF | 256 | INTCTL |
| 1000.0300 | - | 1000.03FF | 256 | MEM_CTRL (SDRAM & Flash/SRAM) |
| 1000.0400 | - | 1000.04FF | 256 | PCM |
| 1000.0500 | - | 1000.05FF | 256 | UART |
| 1000.0600 | - | 1000.06FF | 256 | PIO |
| 1000.0700 | - | 1000.07FF | 256 | Generic DMA |
| 1000.0800 | - | 1000.08FF | 256 | NAND Flash Controller |
| 1000.0900 | - | 1000.09FF | 256 | I2C |
| 1000.0A00 | - | 1000.0AFF | 256 | I2S |
| 1000.0B00 | - | 1000.0BFF | 256 | SPI |
| 1000.0C00 | - | 1000.0CFF | 256 | UARTLITE |
| 1000.0D00 | - | 100F.FFFF | | <<Reserved>> |
| 1010.0000 | - | 1010.FFFF | 64K | Frame Engine |
| 1011.0000 | - | 1011.7FFF | 32K | Ethernet Switch |
| 1011.8000 | | 1011.9FFF | 8K | ROM |
| 1011_a000 | | 1011_FFFF | | <<Reserved>> |
| 1012.0000 | - | 1012.7FFF | 32K | <<Reserved>> |
| 1012.8000 | | 1012.FFFF | 32K | <<Reserved>> |
| 1013.0000 | - | 1013.7FFF | 32K | <<Reserved>> |
| 1013.8000 | - | 1013.FFFF | 32K | <<Reserved>> |
| 1014.0000 | - | 1017.FFFF | 256K | <<Reserved>> |
| 1018.0000 | - | 101B.FFFF | 256K | 802.11n MAC/BBP |
| 101C.0000 | - | 101F.FFFF | 256K | USB OTG |
| 1020.0000 | - | 1AFF.FFFF | | <<Reserved>> |
| 1B00.0000 | - | 1BFF.FFFF | 16MB | External SRAM/Flash |
| 1C00.0000 | - | 1EFF.FFFF | | <<Reserved>> |
| 1F00.0000 | - | 1FFF.FFFF | 16MB(flash)<br>or<br>4KB(ram)<br>or<br>8KB(rom) | When BOOT_FROM = 2'b00,<br>up-to 16MB external 16-bit flash is mapped.<br>When BOOT_FROM = 2'b01,<br>up-to 8MB external 8-bit flash is mapped.<br>When BOOT_FROM = 2'b10,<br>4KB internal boot RAM is mapped for boot from NAND application.<br>When BOOT_FROM = 2'b11,<br>8KB internal boot ROM is mapped for iNIC application. |

Note :

When boot from NAND option is enabled (set boot strapping signal: BOOT_FROM = 2'b10), the accessing to the external flash will be remapped to the internal 4KB boot SRAM located in USB OTG (0x101E_0000 – 0x101E_3FFF). Accesses to original flash memory region outside of the 4KB boot SRAM are invalid in this boot from NAND mode. The 4KB SRAM is also accessible from 0x101E_0000 – 0x101E_3FFF memory space.

When the boot from ROM option is enabled (set boot strapping signal: BOOT_FROM = 2'b11), the accessing to the external flash will be remapped to the internal 8KB boot ROM located in (0x1011_8000 – 0x1011_9FFF). Accesses to original flash memory region outside of the 8KB boot ROM is invalid in this boot from ROM mode. The 8KB ROM is also accessible from 0x1011_8000 – 0x1011_9FFF memory space.

## 3.3 MIPS 24KEc Processor

### 3.3.1 Features

- 8-stage pipeline
- 32-bit address paths
- 64-bit data paths to caches and external interface
- MIPS32-Compatible Instruction Set
- Multiply-Accumulate and Multiply-Subtract Instructions (MADD, MADDU, MSUB, MSUBU)
- Targeted Multiply Instruction (MUL)
- Zero/One Detect Instructions (CLZ, CLO)
- Wait Instruction (WAIT)
- Conditional Move Instructions (MOVZ, MOVN)
- Prefetch Instruction (PREF)
- MIPS32 Enhanced Architecture (Release 2) Features
- Vectored interrupts and support for external interrupt controller
- Programmable exception vector base
- Atomic interrupt enable/disable
- GPR shadow registers (optionally, one or three additional shadows can be added to minimize latency for interrupt handlers)
- Bit field manipulation instructions
- MIPS32 Privileged Resource Architecture
- MIPS DSP ASE
- Fractional data types (Q15, Q31)
- Saturating arithmetic
- SIMD instructions operate on 2x16b or 4x8b simultaneously
- 3 additional pairs of accumulator registers
- Programmable Memory Management Unit
- 32 dual-entry JTLB with variable page sizes
- 4-entry ITLB
- 8-entry DTLB
- Optional simple Fixed Mapping Translation (FMT) mechanism
- MIPS16e™ Code Compression
- 16 bit encodings of 32 bit instructions to improve code density
- Special PC-relative instructions for efficient loading of addresses and constants
- SAVE & RESTORE macro instructions for setting up and tearing down stack frames within subroutines
- Improved support for handling 8 and 16 bit datatypes
- Programmable L1 Cache Sizes
- Instruction cache size : 32KB
- Data cache size : 16KB
- 4-Way Set Associative
- Up to 8 outstanding load misses
- Write-back and write-through support
- 32-byte cache line size

### 3.3.2 Block Diagram

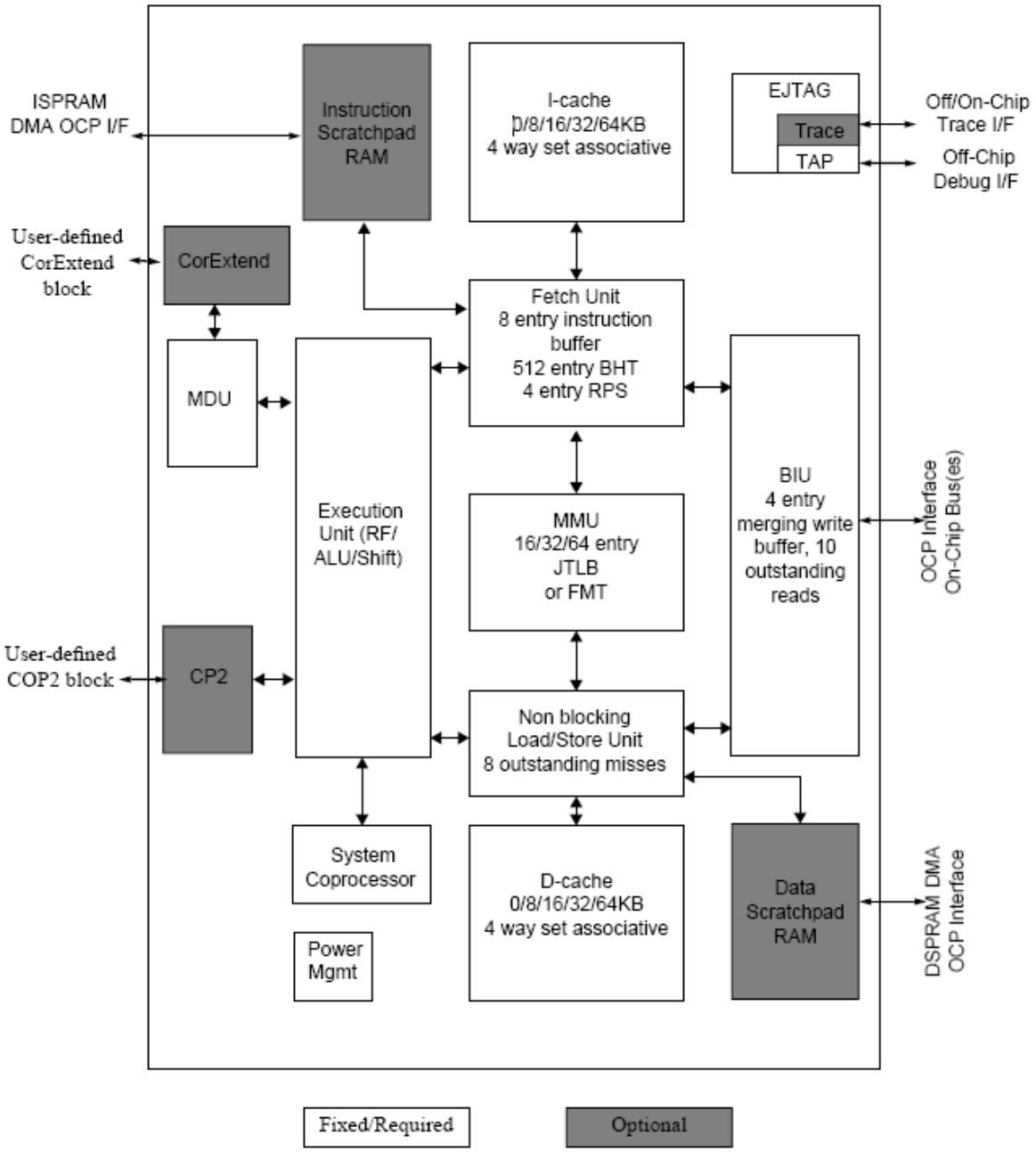



Fig. 3-3-1 MIPS 24KEc Processor Diagram

## 3.4 System Control

### 3.4.1 Features

- Provide read-only chip revision registers
- Provide a window to access boot-strapping signals
- Support memory remapping configurations
- Support software reset to each platform building block
- Provide registers to determine GPIO and other peripheral pin muxing schemes
- Provide some power-on-reset only test registers for software programmers
- Combine miscellaneous registers (such as clock skew control, status register, memo registers,...etc)

### 3.4.2 Block Diagram

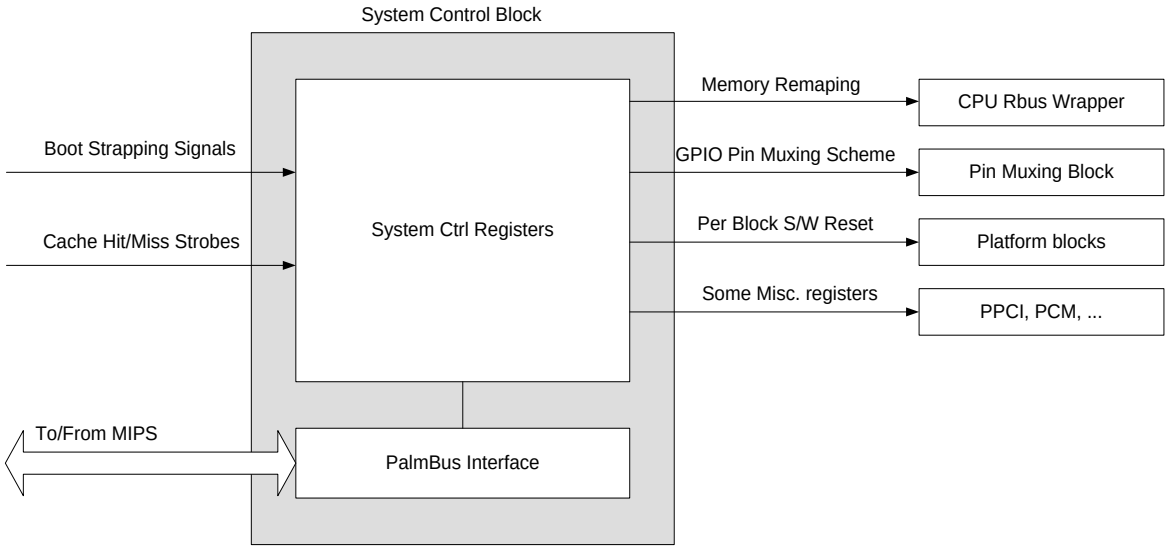



Fig. 3-4-1 System Control Block Diagram

### 3.4.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0000)

CHIPID0_3: Chip ID ASCII Character 0-3 (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | CHIP_ID3 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 3 | 8'h30 ('0') |
| 23:16 | RO | CHIP_ID2 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 2 | 8'h 33 ('3') |
| 15:8 | RO | CHIP_ID1 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 1 | 8'h 54 ('T') |
| 7:0 | RO | CHIP_ID0 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 0 | 8'h 52 ('R') |

CHIPID4_7: Chip Name ASCII Character 4-7 (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | CHIP_ID7 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 7 | 8'h 20 (' ') |
| 23:16 | RO | CHIP_ID6 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 6 | 8'h 20 (' ') |
| 15:8 | RO | CHIP_ID5 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 5 | 8'h 32 ('2') |
| 7:0 | RO | CHIP_ID4 | ASCII CHIP Name Identification Character 4 | 8'h 35 ('5') |

SYSCFG: System Configuration Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 29 | RO | INIC_EE_SDRAM | 0: Don't care EEPROM SDRAM configuration for iNIC<br>1: Take SDRAM configuration for iNIC form EEPROM if available | Bootstrap |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Note: There is no special H/W function related to the setting of this bit. That means the firmware could use it for other purposes (as a general purpose bootstrapping). | |
| 28 | RO | INIC_8MB_SDRAM | 0: SDRAM configuration is 2MB for iNIC<br>1: SDRAM configuration is 8MB for iNIC<br>Note : There is no special H/W function related to the setting of this bit. That means the firmware could use it for other purposes (as a general purpose bootstrapping). | Bootstrap |
| 27:26 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 25:24 | RO | GE0_MODE | Gigabit Port Mode<br>2'b00 : RGMII Mode (10/100/1000M bps)<br>2'b01 : MII Mode (10/100 Mbps)<br>2'b10 : Reversed MII Mode (10/100 Mbps)<br>2'b11 : Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 23 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 22 | RO | BOOT_ADDR | 0 : CPU boots at address 0x1FC00000<br>1 : CPU boots at address 0x1F000000 | 1'b0 |
| 21 | RO- | BYPASS_PLL | 0: Not bypass PLL<br>1: Bypass PLL | Bootstrap |
| 20 | RO | BIG_ENDIAN | 0: Little endian<br>1: Big endian | Bootstrap |
| 19 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 18 | RO | CPU_CLK_SEL | 0: 320Mhz<br>1: 384 Mhz<br>Note : System clock is 1/3 of the CPU CLK | Bootstrap |
| 17:16 | RO | BOOT_FROM | 2'b00 : boot from external 16-bit flash (default)<br>2'b01 : boot from external 8-bit flash<br>2'b10 : boot from external NAND flash<br>2'b11 : boot from internal ROM | Bootstrap |
| 15:8 | R/W | TEST_CODE[7:0] | Probe signals selection<br>Default value is from bootstrap and can by modify by software | Bootstrap |
| 7:4 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 3:2 | WO | SRAM_CS_MODE | 2'b00: Normal SRAM chip select output (active low)<br>2'b01: Watch dog reset output (active low for 3 system clocks)<br>2'b10: BT coexistence signal "WLAN_ACT" output<br>2'b11: Reserved.<br><br>Note : These two bits are write only. The read value is always 2'b00. | 2'b00 |
| 1 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 0 | WO | SDRAM_CLK_DRV | 1'b0 : 8mA SDRAM_CLK driving<br>1'b1 : 12mA SDRAM_CLK driving<br><br>Note : This bit is write only. The read value is always 1'b0. | 1'b0 |

Reserved register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | - | - | Reserved | 32'b0 |

TESTSTAT: Firmware Test Status Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TSETSTAT[31:0] | Firmware Test Status<br>Note: This register is reset only by power on reset. | 32'b0 |

TESTSTAT2 ：Firmware Test Status Register 2 (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TSETSTAT2[31:0] | Firmware Test Status 2<br>Note: This register is reset only by power on reset. | 32'b0 |

Reserved register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | - | - | Reserved | 32'b0 |

Reserved register (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | - | - | Reserved | 32'b0 |

Reserved register (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | - | - | Reserved | 32'b0 |

CLKCFG0: Clock Configuration Register 0 (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | R/W | SDRAM_CLK_SKEW | 0 : zero delay<br>1: delay 1ns<br>2 : delay 2ns<br>3 : delay 3ns | 2'b01 |
| 29:0 | - | - | Reserved | 30'b0 |

CLKCFG1: Clock Configuration Register 1 (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | PBUS_DIV2 | 0 : Pbus clock is running at the same frequency as System clock<br>1 : Pbus clock is running at 1/2 frequency of System clock | 1'b0 |
| 29:19 | - | - | Reserved | 11'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | OTG_CLK_EN | 0 : USB OTG clock is gated<br>1 : USB OTG clock is enabled | 1'b1 |
| 17:16 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | I2S_CLK_EN | 0 : I2S clock is gated<br>1 : I2S clock is enabled | 1'b0 |
| 14 | R/W | I2S_CLK_SEL | I2S reference select<br>1'b0 : internal 15.625Mhz reference clock<br>1'b1 : external reference clock | 1'b0 |
| 13:8 | R/W | I2S_CLK_DIV | I2S clock divider<br>The source of this divider comes from two sources. One is from REF_CLK (see 2.2 Pin sharing scheme-UARTF share mode ) and the other is from internal 15.625 Mhz reference clock.<br>The I2S clock divider will divide the reference clock by (I2S_CLK_DIV+1).<br>The final I2S_CLK is obtained from the divided reference clock or external REF_CLK clock, depending on I2S_CLK_SEL setting. | 6'h28 |
| 7 | R/W | PCM_CLK_EN | 0 : PCM clock is gated<br>1 : PCM clock is enabled | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | PCM_CLK_SEL | PCM reference select<br>1'b0 : internal 15.625Mhz reference clock<br>1'b1 : external reference clock | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5:0 | R/W | PCM_CLK_DIV | PCM clock divider<br>The source of this divider comes from two places. One is from REF_CLK (see 2.2 Pin sharing scheme-UARTF share mode) and the other is from internal 15.625Mhz reference clock.<br>The PCM clock divider will divide the reference clock by (PCM_CLK_DIV+1).<br>The final PCM_CLK is obtained from the divided reference clock or external REF_CLK clock depending on the PCM_CLK_SEL setting. | 6'h3c |

RSTCTRL: Reset Control Register (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23 | W1C | SW_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Ethernet Switch block | 1'b0 |
| 22 | W1C | OTG_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset USB OTG block | 1'b0 |
| 21 | W1C | FE_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Frame Engine block | 1'b0 |
| 20 | W1C | WLAN_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset WLAN block | 1'b0 |
| 19 | W1C | UARTL_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset UART Lite block | 1'b0 |
| 18 | W1C | SPI | Write 1 to this bit will reset SPI block | 1'b0 |
| 17 | W1C | I2S | Write 1 to this bit will reset I2S block | 1'b0 |
| 16 | W1C | I2C | Write 1 to this bit will reset I2C block | 1'b0 |
| 15 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14 | W1C | DMA | Write 1 to this bit will reset DMA block | 1'b0 |
| 13 | W1C | PIO | Write 1 to this bit will reset PIO block | 1'b0 |
| 12 | W1C | UART_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset UART block | 1'b0 |
| 11 | W1C | PCM_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset PCM block | 1'b0 |
| 10 | W1C | MC_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Memory Controller block | 1'b0 |
| 9 | W1C | INTC_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Interrupt Controller block | 1'b0 |
| 8 | W1C | TIMER_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Timer block | 1'b0 |
| 7:1 | - | - | Reserved | 6'b0 |
| 0 | W1C | SYS_RST | Write 1 to this bit will reset Whole SoC | 1'b0 |

RSTSTAT: Reset Status Register (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | - | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3 | R/C | SWCPURST | A Software CPU reset has occurred<br>This bit will be set if software reset the CPU by writing to the RSTCPU bit in RSTCTL. Writing a '1' will clear this bit. Writing a '0' has not effect.<br>Note: This register is resete only by power on reset. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/C | SWSYSRST | Software system reset occurred<br>This bit will be set if software reset the chip by writing to the RSTSYS bit in RSTCTL. Writing a '1' will clear this bit. Writing a '0' has not effect.<br>Note: This register is resete only by power on reset. | 1' b0 |
| 1 | R/C | WDRST | Watchdog reset occurred<br>This bit will be set if the watchdog timer reset the chip. Writing a '1' will clear this bit. Writing a '0' has not effect.<br>Note : This register is reset only by power on reset. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

GPIOMODE: GPIO Purpose Select (offset: 0x60)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:10 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | RGMII_GPIO_ MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[51:40] | 1'b1 |
| 8 | RW | SDRAM_GPIO_ MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[39:24] | 1'b1 |
| 7 | R/W | MDIO_GPIO_MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[23:22] | 1'b1 |
| 6 | R/W | JTAG_GPIO_MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[21:17] | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | UARTL_GPIO_ MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[16:15] | 1'b1 |
| 4:2 | R/W | UARTF_ SHARE_MODE | UARF Full interface is shared with PCM, REFCLK, I2S, GPIO [14:7].<br>The detailed UARTF Mode Pin Sharing is shown in previous session. | 3'b111 |
| 1 | R/W | SPI_GPIO_MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[6:3] | 1'b1 |
| 0 | R/W | I2C_GPIO_MODE | 0:Normal Mode<br>1:GPIO Mode<br>Control GPIO[2:1] | 1'b1 |

MEMO0: Firmware Memo Register1 (offset: 0x68)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | MEMO1[31:0] | Firmware Memo register 1<br>Note: This register is reset only by power on reset. | 32'b0 |

MEMO1: Firmware Memo Register 2 (offset: 0x6C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | MEMO2[31:0] | Firmware Memo register 0<br>Note : This register is reset only by power on reset. | 32'b0 |

## 3.5 Timer

### 3.5.1 Features

- Independent clock pre-scale for each timer
- Independent interrupts for each timer
- Two General-purpose timers
- Periodic mode
- Free-running mode
- Time-out mode
- Second timer may be used as watchdog timer
- Watchdog timer resets system on time-out

### 3.5.2 Block Diagram

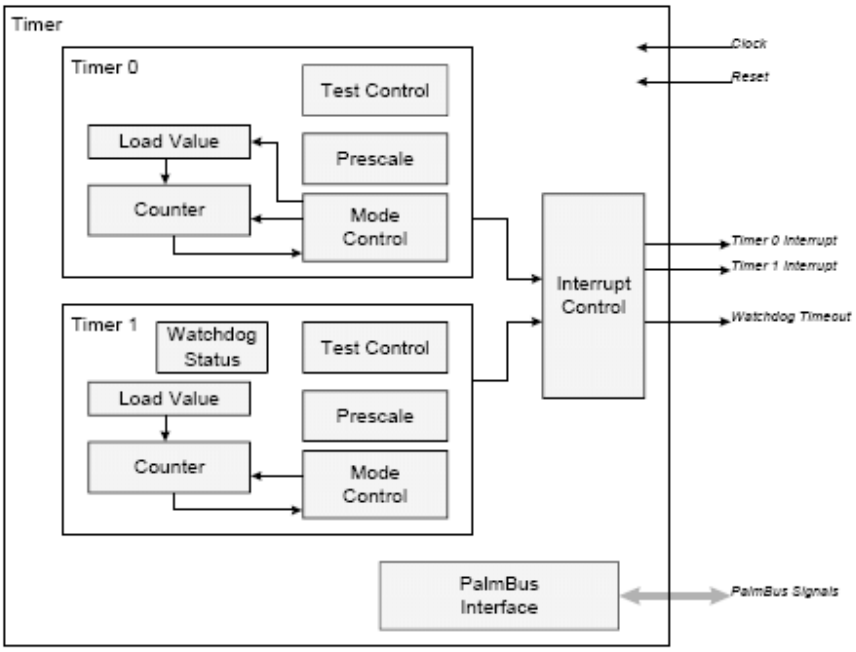



Fig. 3-5-1 Timer Block Diagram

### 3.5.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0100)

TMRSTAT: Timer Status Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:6 | - | - | Reserved | 26'b0 |
| 5 | W | TMR1RST | Timer 1 Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will reset the Timer 1 to 0xFFFF if in free-running mode, or the value specified in the TMR1LOAD register in all other modes.<br>Writing a '0' to this bit has no effect. Reading this bit will return a '0'. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | W | TMR0RST | Timer 0 Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will reset Timer 0 to 0xFFFF if in free-running mode, or the value specified in the | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | TMR0LOAD register in all other modes.<br>Writing a '0' to this bit has no effect. Reading this bit will return a '0'. | |
| 3:2 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 1 | R/C | TMR1INT | Timer 1 Interrupt Status<br>This bit is set if Timer 1 has expired. The Timer 1 interrupt to the processor is set when this bit is '1'. Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the interrupt. Writing a '0' has no effect. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/C | TMR0INT | Timer 0 Interrupt Status<br>This bit is set if Timer 0 has expired. The Timer 0 interrupt to the processor is set when this bit is '1'. Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the interrupt. Writing a '0' has no effect. | 1'b0 |

TMR0LOAD: Timer 0 Load Value (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R- | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TMRLOAD[15:0] | Timer Load Value<br>This register contains the load value for the timer. In all modes, this value is loaded into the timer counter when this register is written. In all modes except free-running mode, this value is reloaded into the timer counter after the timer counter reaches 0. It may be updated at any time; the new value will be written to the counter immediately. Writing a load value of 0 will disable the timer, except in free-running mode. | 16'b0 |

TMR0VAL: Timer 0 Counter Value (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | TMRVAL[15:0] | Timer Counter Value<br>This register contains the current value of the timer. During functional operation, writes have no effect. | 16'hffff |

TMR0CTL: Timer 0 Control (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | TESTEN | Reserved for Test<br>This bit should be written with a zero | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | - | - | Reserved | 15'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | ENABLE | Timer Enable<br>0: Disable the timer. The timer will stop counting and will retain its current value.<br>1: Enable the timer. The timer will begin counting from its current value. | 1'b0 |
| 6 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 5:4 | R/W | MODE[1:0] | Timer Mode<br>0: Free-running<br>1: Periodic<br>2: Time-out<br>3: Time-out | 1'b0 |
| 3:0 | R/W | PRESCALE[3:0] | Timer Clock Pre-scale<br>These bits are used to scale the timer clock in order to achieve higher resolution or longer timer periods. Their definitions are below. | 4'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | <table><tr><th>Value</th><th>Timer Clock Frequency</th></tr><tr><td>0<br>1<br>2<br>3<br>.<br>.<br>14<br>15</td><td>System clock<br>System clock / 4<br>System clock / 8<br>System clock / 16<br>.<br>.<br>System clock / 32768<br>System clock /65536</td></tr></table>**Note:** The pre-scale value should not be changed unless the timer is disabled. | |

TMR1LOAD: Timer 1 Load Value (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TMRLOAD[15:0] | Timer Load Value<br>This register contains the load value for the timer. In all modes, this value is loaded into the timer counter when this register is written. In all modes except free-running mode, this value is reloaded into the timer counter after the timer counter reaches 0. It may be updated at any time; the new value will be written to the counter immediately. Writing a load value of 0 will disable the timer, except in free-running mode. | 16'b0 |

TMR1VAL: Timer 1 Counter Value (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | TMRVAL[15:0] | Timer Counter Value<br>This register contains the current value of the timer. During functional operation, writes have no effect. | 16'hffff |

TMR1CTL: Timer 1 Control (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | TESTEN | Reserved for Test<br>This bit should be written with a zero | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | ENABLE | Timer Enable<br>0: Disable the timer. The timer will stop counting and will retain its current value.<br>1: Enable the timer. The timer will begin counting from its current value. | 1'b0 |
| 6 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 5:4 | R/W | MODE[1:0] | Timer Mode<br>0: Free-running<br>1: Periodic<br>2: Time-out<br>3: Watchdog | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | PRESCALE[3:0] | Timer Clock Pre-scale<br>These bits are used to scale the timer clock in order to achieve higher resolution or longer timer periods. Their definitions are below. | 3'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Value: Timer Clock Frequency<br>0: System clock<br>1: System clock / 4<br>2: System clock / 8<br>3: System clock / 16<br>.: .<br>.: .<br>14: System clock / 32768<br>15: System clock / 65536<br>Note: The pre-scale value should not be changed unless the timer is disabled. | |

## 3.6 Interrupt Controller

### 3.6.1 Features

- Support a central point for interrupt aggregation for platform related blocks
- Separated interrupt enable and disable registers
- Support global disable function
- 2-level Interrupt priority selection
- Each interrupt source can be directed to IRQ#0 or IRQ#1

Note : RT3052 supports MIPS 24KEc's vector interrupt mechanism.
There are 6 hardware interrupts supported by MIPS 24KEc. The interrupt allocation is shown below:

| MIPS H/W interrupt pins | Connect to | Remark |
|---|---|---|
| HW_INT#5 | Timer interrupt | Highest priority |
| HW_INT#4 | 802.11n NIC | |
| HW_INT#3 | Frame Engine | |
| HW_INT#2 | Reserved | |
| HW_INT#1 | Other high priority interrupts (IRQ#1) | |
| HW_INT#0 | Other low priority interrupts (IRQ#0) | Lowest priority |

### 3.6.2 Block Diagram

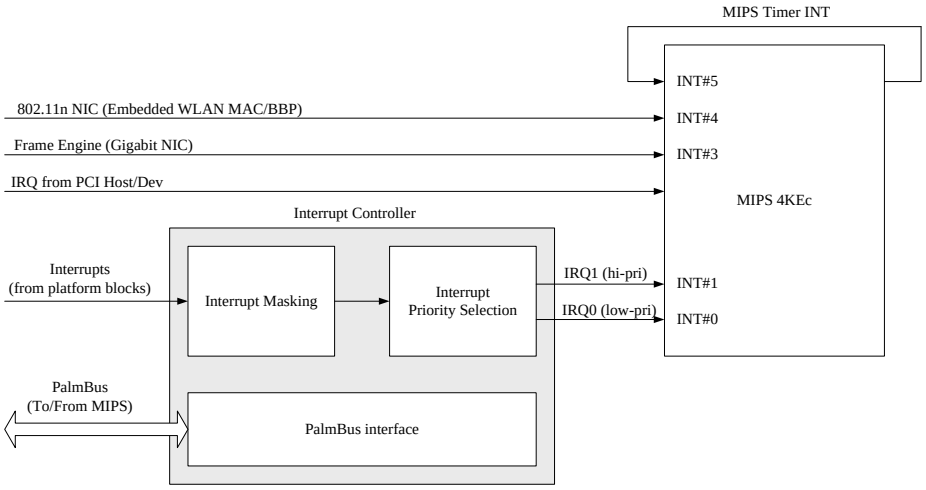



Fig. 3-6-1 Interrupt Controller Block Diagram

### 3.6.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0200)

IRQ0STAT: Interrupt Type 0 Status after Enable Mask (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:19 | - | - | Reserved | 13'b0 |
| 18 | RO | OTG | OTG interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 17 | RO | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | RO | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 11 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | RO | I2S | I2S interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 9 | RO | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | RO | DMA | DMA interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RO | PIO | PIO interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 5 | RO | UART | UART interrupt status after mask | |
| 4 | RO | PCM | PCM interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RO | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RO | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | SYSCTL | System control interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |

These bits are set if the corresponding interrupt is asserted from the source and with following two conditions

- The interrupt is not masked (bit not set in the INTDIS register)
- The interrupt type is set to INT0 (in the INTTYPE register).

Note that write to these bits are ignored and each bit cannot be simultaneously active in both the IRQ0STAT and IRQ1STAT registers.

IRQ1STAT: Interrupt Type 1 Status after Enable Mask (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:19 | - | - | Reserved | 13'b0 |
| 18 | RO | OTG | OTG interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 17 | RO | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | RO | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | RO | I2S | I2S interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 9 | RO | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RO | DMA | DMA interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RO | PIO | PIO interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 5 | RO | UART | UART interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 4 | RO | PCM | PCM interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RO | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RO | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | SYSCTL | System control interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |

These bits are set if the corresponding interrupt is asserted from the source and with following two conditions

- The interrupt is not masked (bit not set in the INTDIS register)
- The interrupt type is set to INT1 (in the INTTYPE register).

Note that writing to these bits is ignored and each bit cannot be simultaneously active in both the IRQ0STAT and IRQ1STAT registers.

INTTYPE: Interrupt Type (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:19 | - | - | Reserved | 13'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | OTG | OTG interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | R/W | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | I2S | I2S interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt status type | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | R/W | DMA | DMA interrupt status after type | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | PIO | PIO interrupt status after type | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | UART | UART interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | PCM | PCM interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt status type | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | SYSCTL | System control interrupt status type | 1'b0 |

These bits control whether an interrupt is IRQ0 or IRQ1. The interrupt type may be changed at any time; if the interrupt type is changed while the interrupt is active, the interrupt is immediately redirected.

INTRAW: Raw Interrupt Status before Enable Mask (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:19 | - | - | Reserved | 13'b0 |
| 18 | RO | OTG | OTG interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 17 | RO | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | RO | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 11 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | RO | I2S | I2S interrupt status before r mask | 1'b0 |
| 9 | RO | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RO | DMA | DMA interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RO | PIO | PIO interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 5 | RO | UART | UART interrupt status before mask | |
| 4 | RO | PCM | PCM interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RO | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RO | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | SYSCTL | System control interrupt status before mask | 1'b0 |

These bits are set if the corresponding interrupt is asserted from the source. The status bit is set if the interrupt is active, even if it is masked, and regardless of the interrupt type. This provides a single-access snapshot of all active interrupts for implementation of a polling system.

INTENA: Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | GLOBAL | Global interrupt enable<br>Writing a '1' to this bit allows interrupt masking to be performed based on each interrupt's individual enable mask.<br>A read returns the global status ('1' if enabled). | 1'b0 |
| 30:19 | - | - | Reserved | 12'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | OTG | OTG interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | R/W | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt status after mask | 1'b0 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | I2S | I2S interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RW | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RW | DMA | DMA interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RW | PIO | PIO interrupt enable | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | RW | UART | UART interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 4 | RW | PCM | PCM interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RW | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RW | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RW | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt enable | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RW | SYSCTL | System control interrupt enable | 1'b0 |

Writing a '1' to these bits (except the GLOBAL bit) will enable the mask for the corresponding interrupt. The interrupt is asserted and the bit is set in the IRQ0STAT or IRQ1STAT registers if an interrupt is enabled. Writes of '0' are ignored. Reading either the INTENA or INTDIS register will return the current mask, where an interrupt is masked (disabled) if the bit is 'zero', and unmasked (enabled) if the bit is 'one'.

INTDIS: Interrupt Disable (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | GLOBAL | Global interrupt disable<br>Writing a '1' to this bit allows interrupt masking to be performed based on each interrupt's individual Disable mask. A read returns the global status ('1' if Disabled). | 1'b0 |
| 30:19 | - | - | Reserved | 12'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | OTG | OTG interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | ESW | Ethernet switch interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 12 | R/W | UARTLITE | UARTLITE interrupt s disable | 1'b0 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | I2S | I2S interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | PC | MIPS performance counter interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RW | NAND | NAND flash controller interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RW | DMA | DMA interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RW | PIO | PIO interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 5 | RW | UART | UART interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 4 | RW | PCM | PCM interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RW | ILL_ACC | Illegal access interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RW | WDTIMER | Watch dog timer interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RW | TIMER0 | Timer 0 interrupt disable | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RW | SYSCTL | System control interrupt enable | 1'b0 |

Writing a '1' to these bits (except the GLOBAL bit) will disable the mask for the corresponding interrupt. The interrupt is asserted and the bit is set in the IRQ0STAT or IRQ1STAT registers if an interrupt is enabled. Writing '0' is ignored. Reading either the INTENA or INTDIS register will return the current mask, where an interrupt is masked (disabled) if the bit is 'zero', and unmasked (enabled) if the bit is 'one'.

## 3.7 UART

### 3.7.1 Features

- 16550-compatible register set, except for Divisor Latch register
- 5-8 data bits
- 1-2 stop bits (1 or 2 stop bits are supported with 5 data bits)
- Even, odd, stick or no parity
- All standard baud rates from 40 b/s to 2.5 Mb/s
- 16-byte receive buffer
- 16-byte transmit buffer
- Receive buffer threshold interrupt
- Transmit buffer threshold interrupt
- False start bit detection in asynchronous mode
- Internal diagnostic capabilities
- Break simulation

### 3.7.2 Loop-back control for communications link fault isolation Block Diagram

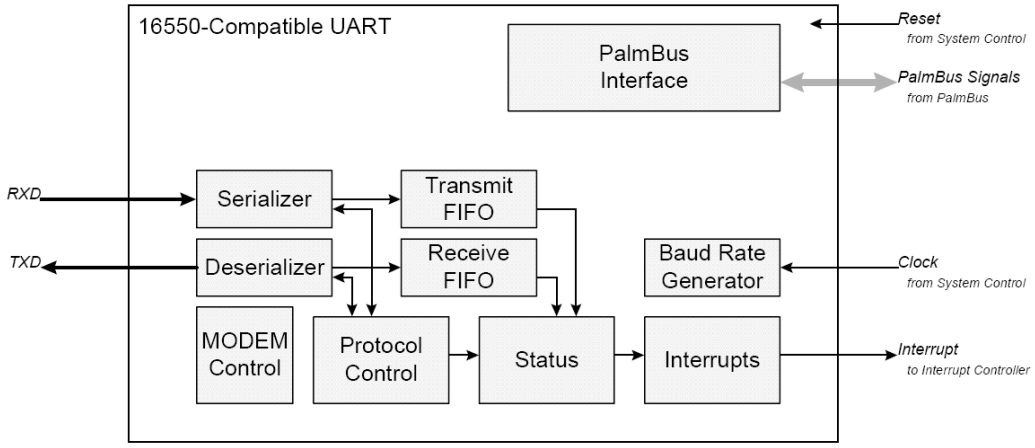



Fig. 3-7-1 UART Block Diagram

### 3.7.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0500)

RBR: Receive Buffer Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | RO | RXD[7:0] | Receive Buffer Data<br>Receive data. Data is transferred to this register from the receive shift register after a full character is received. The OE bit in the LSR register is set, indication a receive buffer overrun, if the contents of this register has not been read before another character is received. | 1'b0 |

TBR: Transmit Buffer Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | RO | TXD[7:0] | Transmit Buffer Data<br>Transmit data. When a character is written to this register, it is stored in the transmitter holding register; if the transmitter | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | register is empty, the character is moved to the transmitter register, starting transmission. | |

IER: Interrupt Enable Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | - | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | EDSSI | Enable Modem Interrupt<br>1: modem status (DCD, RI, DSR, CTS, DDCD, TERI, DDSR, and DCTS) interrupts.<br>0: Disable modem status (DCD, RI, DSR, CTS, DDCD, TERI, DDSR, DCTS) interrupts. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | ELSI | Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt<br>1: Enable line status (OE, PE, FE, and BI) interrupts.<br>0: Disable line status (OE, PE, FE, and BI) interrupts. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | ETBEI | Enable Transmitter Buffer Line Status Interrupt<br>1: Enable transmit buffer empty (THRE) interrupt.<br>0: Disable transmit buffer empty (THRE) interrupt. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | ERBFI | Enable Receiver Buffer Empty Interrupt<br>1: Enable data ready (DR) or character time-out interrupt.<br>0: Disable data ready (DR) or character time-out interrupt. | 1'b0 |

IIR: Interrupt Identification Register (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:6 | RO | FIFOENA[1:0] | FIFOs Enabled<br>FIFOs Enabled. These bits reflect the FIFO enable bit setting in the FIFO Control Register. When the FIFO enable bit is set, both of these bits will be set high to a value of '11'. When the FIFO enable bit is cleared, both of these bits will be set low to a value of '00'. | 1'b0 |
| 5:4 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 3:1 | RO | INTID[2:0] | Interrupt Identifier<br>Interrupt ID. These bits provide a snapshot of the interrupt type, and may be used as the offset into an interrupt vector table. The interrupt encoding is given below. | 3'b1 |

| ID | Priority | Type | Source |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | | Undefined | |
| 6 | | Undefined | |
| 5 | | Undefined | |
| 4 | | Undefined | |
| 3 | 1 | Receiver Line | OE,PE,FE,BI |
| 2 | 2 | Status | DR |
| 1 | 3 | Receiver Buffer Full | THRE |
| 0 | | Transmit buffer Empty | |
| | | Undefined | |

If more than one category of interrupt is asserted, only the highest priority ID will be given. The line and Modem status interrupts are cleared by reading the corresponding status register (LSR, MSR). The Receive Buffer Full interrupt will be cleared when all of the data is read from the receiver buffer. The Transmitter Buffer empty will be cleared when data is written to the TBR register.
See also "Interrupt Priorities".

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | RO | INTPEND | Interrupt Pending<br>0: An interrupt bit is set and is not masked.<br>1: No interrupts are pending. | 1'b0 |

FCR: FIFO Control Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:6 | R/W | RXTRIG[1:0] | Receiver Trigger Level<br>The data ready interrupt (DR) will be asserted when the receiver buffer depth is equal to the number of characters programmed in the trigger register. The trigger level encoding is as follows:<br>RXTRIG / Trigger Level<br>0 / 1<br>1 / 4<br>2 / 8<br>3 / 14<br>Note: This register is not used if the receive FIFO is disabled. | 2'b0 |
| 5:4 | R/W | TXTRIG[1:0] | Transmitter Trigger Level<br>The THRE interrupt will be asserted if the transmitter buffer depth is less than or equal to the number of characters programmed in the trigger register. The trigger level encoding is as follows:<br>TXTRIG / Trigger Level<br>0 / 1<br>1 / 4<br>2 / 8<br>3 / 12 | 2'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | DMAMODE | Enable DMA transfers<br>This bit is writeable and readable, but has no other hardware function. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | W | TXRST | Transmitter Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the transmit FIFO and reset the transmitter status. The shift register is not cleared. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | W | RXRST | Receive Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the receive FIFO and reset the receiver status. The shift register is not cleared. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | FIFOENA | 0: The Transmit and Receive FIFOs have the effective depth of one character.<br>1: The Transmit and Receive FIFOs are enabled.<br>Note: The FIFO status and data are automatically cleared when this bit is changed. | 1'b0 |

LCR: Line Control Register (offset: 0x 14, 0x00000000, 0xffffff00, 00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | DLAB | Divisor Latch Access Bit<br>This bit has no functionality, and is retained for compatibility only | 2'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | SETBRK | Set Break Condition<br>0: Normal functionality.<br>1: Force TXD pin to '0'. Transmitter otherwise operates normally. | 2'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | R/W | FORCEPAR | Force Parity Bit<br>0: Normal functionality.<br>1: If even parity is selected, the (transmitted and checked) parity is forced to '0'; if odd parity is selected, the (transmitted and checked) parity if forced to '1'. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | EPS | Even Parity Select<br>0: Odd parity selected (checksum, including parity is '1').<br>1: Even parity selected (checksum, including parity is '0').<br>Note: This bit is ignored if the PEN bit is '0'. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | PEN | Parity Enable<br>0: Parity is not transmitted or checked.<br>1: Parity is generated (transmit), and checked (receive). | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | STB | Stop Bit Select<br>0: 1 stop bit is transmitted and received.<br>1: 1.5 stop bits are transmitted and received if WLS is '0'; 2 stop bits are transmitted and received if WLS is '1', '2', or '3'. | 1'b0 |
| 1:0: | R/W | WLS[1:0] | Word Length Select<br>0: Each character is 5 bits in length<br>1: Each character is 6 bits in length<br>2: Each character is 7 bits in length<br>3: Each character is 8 bits in length | 2'b0 |

MCR: Modem Control Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:5 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | LOOP | Loop-back Mode Enable<br>0: Normal Operation.<br>1: The UART is put into loop-back mode, used for self-test: The TXD pin is driven high; the TXD signal connections are made internally | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | OUT2 | Out2 Value<br>0: OUT2N pin is driven to a high level.<br>1: OUT2N pin is driven to a low level.<br>Note: This bit is only functional in loop-back mode. | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | OUT1 | Out1 Value<br>0: OUT1N pin is driven to a high level.<br>1: OUT1N pin is driven to a low level.<br>Note: This bit is only functional in loop-back mode. | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | RTS | Out1 Value<br>0: RTSN pin is driven to a high level.<br>1: RTSN pin is driven to a low level. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | DTR | Reserved<br>0: DTRN pin is driven to a high level.<br>1: DTRN pin is driven to a low level. | 1'b0 |

| Signal | Wrapped back through… |
|---|---|
| TXD | RXD |
| DTRN | DSRN |
| RTSN | CTSN |
| OUT1N | RIN |
| OUT2N | DCDN |

LSR: Line Status Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | R/C | ERINFIFO | The FIFO contains data which had a parity or framing error<br>This bit is set when the FIFO contains data that was received with a parity error, framing error or break condition. | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/C | TEMT | Transmitter Empty<br>This bit is set when the transmitter shift register is empty, it will clear as soon as data is written to the **TBR** register. | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/C | THRE | Transmitter Holding Register Empty<br>This bit is set when the transmitter holding register is empty, it will clear as soon as data is written to the **TBR** register. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/C | BI | Break Interrupt<br>This bit is set if a break is received, that is when the RXD signal is at a low state for more than one character transmission time (from start bit to stop bit). Under this condition, a single 'zero' is received. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/C | FE | Framing Error<br>This bit is set if a valid stop bit is not detected. If a framing error occurs, the receiver will attempt to re-synchronize by sampling the Start Bit twice and then takes the data. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/C | PE | Parity Error<br>This bit is set if the received parity is different from the expected value. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/C | OE | Overrun Error<br>This bit is set when a receive overrun occurs. This will happen if a character is received before the previous character has been read by firmware. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/C | DR | Data Ready<br>This bit is set when a character is received, and has been transferred in to the receiver buffer register. This bit will reset when all the characters are read from the receiver buffer register. | 1'b0 |

MSR: Modem Status Register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | R/C | DCD | Data Carrier Detect<br>This bit is set when the DCDN (Data Carrier Detect) pin is at a low value. | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/C | RI | Ring Indicator<br>This bit is set when the RIN (Ring Indicator) pin is at a low value. | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/C | DSR | Data Set Ready<br>This bit is set when the DSRN (Data Set Ready) pin is at a low value. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/C | CTS | Clear to Send<br>This bit is set when the CTSN (Clear to Send) pin is at a low value. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/C | DDCD | Delta Data Carrier Detect<br>This bit is set when the DCDN (Data Carrier Detect) pin changes. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/C | TERI | Trailing Edge Ring Indicator<br>This bit is set when the RIN (Ring Indicator) pin changes from a low to a high value. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/C | DDSR | Delta Data Set Ready<br>This bit is set when the DSRN (Data Set Ready) pin changes. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/C | DCTS | Delta Clear to Send<br>This bit is set when the CTSN (Clear to Send) pin changes. | 1'b0 |

SCRATCH: Scratch Register (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | SCRATCH[7:0] | Scratch<br>This register is defined as a scratch register in 16550 applications. It has no hardware function, and is retained for compatibility only. | 8'b0 |

DL: Clock Divider Divisor Latch (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | DL[15:0] | Divisor Latch<br>This register is used in the clock divider to generate the baud clock. The baud rate (transfer rate in bits per second) is defined a<br>Baud rate = system clock frequency / (CLKDIV * 16).<br>Note: In a standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. In this implementation, the DL register is accessible as a single 16-bit entity only. | 16'h0001 |

DLLO: Clock Divider Divisor Latch Low (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLLO[7:0] | This register is the equivalent to the lower 8 bits of the DL register. It is provided for16550 compatibility.<br>Note: In a standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. For convenience, the divisor latch is accessible as a single 16-bit entity via the DL register. | 8'b1 |

DLHI: Clock Divider Divisor Latch High (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLHI[7:0] | This register is the equivalent to the upper 8 bits of the DL register. It is provided for 16550 compatibility.<br>Note: In a standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. For convenience, the divisor latch is accessible as a single 16-bit entity via the DL register. | 8'b0 |

## 3.8 UART Lite

### 3.8.1 Features

- 2-pin UART
- 16550-compatible register set, except for Divisor Latch register
- 5-8 data bits
- 1-2 stop bits (1 or 2 stop bits are supported with 5 data bits)
- Even, odd, stick or no parity
- All standard baud rates from 40 b/s to 2.5 Mb/s
- 16-byte receive buffer
- 16-byte transmit buffer
- Receive buffer threshold interrupt
- Transmit buffer threshold interrupt
- False start bit detection in asynchronous mode
- Internal diagnostic capabilities
- Break simulation
- Loop-back control for communications link fault isolation

### 3.8.2 Block Diagram

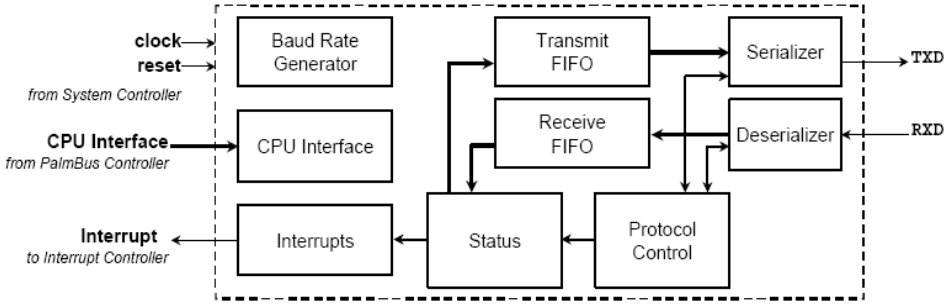



Fig. 3-8-1 UART Lite Block Diagram

### 3.8.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0C00)

RBR: Receive Buffer Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | RXD[7:0] | Receive Buffer Data<br>Receive data. Data is transferred to this register from the receive shift register after a full character is received. The OE bit in the LSR register is set, indication a receive buffer overrun, if the contents of this register has not been read before another character is received. | 8'b0 |

TBR: Transmit Buffer Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | TXD[7:0] | Transmit Buffer Data<br>Transmit data. When a character is written to this register, it is stored in the transmitter holding register; if the transmitter register is empty, the character is moved to the transmitter register, starting transmission. | 8'b0 |

IER : Interrupt Enable Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:3 | - | - | Reserved | 29'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | ELSI | Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt<br>1: Enable line status (OE, PE, FE, and BI) interrupts.<br>0: Disable line status (OE, PE, FE, and BI) interrupts. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | ETBEI | Enable Transmitter Buffer Line Status Interrupt<br>1: Enable transmit buffer empty (THRE) interrupt.<br>0: Disable transmit buffer empty (THRE) interrupt. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | ERBFI | Enable Receiver Buffer Empty Interrupt<br>1: Enable data ready (DR) or character time-out interrupt.<br>0: Disable data ready (DR) or character time-out interrupt. | 1'b0 |

IIR: Interrupt Identification Register (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:6 | RO | FIFOENA [1:0] | FIFOs Enabled<br>FIFOs Enabled. These bits reflect the FIFO enable bit setting in the FIFO Control Register. When the FIFO enable bit is set, both of these bits will be set high to a value of '11'. When the FIFO enable bit is cleared, both of these bits will be set low to a value of '00'. | 1'b0 |
| 5:4 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 3:1 | RO | INTID[2:0] | Interrupt Identifier<br>Interrupt ID. These bits provide a snapshot of the interrupt type, and may be used as the offset into an interrupt vector table. The interrupt encoding is given below.<br>ID / Priority / Type / Source<br>7 / / Undefined / /<br>6 / / Undefined / /<br>5 / / Undefined / /<br>4 / / Undefined / /<br>3 / 1 / Receiver Line Status / OE,PE,FE,BI<br>2 / 2 / Receiver Buffer Full / DR<br>1 / 3 / Transmit buffer / THRE<br>0 / 4 / Empty / DCTD,DDSR, RI,<br>/ / Modem Status / DCD<br>If more than one category of interrupt is asserted, only the highest priority ID will be given. The line and Modem status interrupts are cleared by reading the corresponding status register (LSR, MSR). The Receive Buffer Full interrupt will be cleared when all of the data is read from the receiver buffer. The Transmitter Buffer empty will be cleared when data is written to the TBR register.<br>See also "Interrupt Priorities". | 3'b0 |
| 0 | RO | INTPEND | Interrupt Pending<br>0: An interrupt bit is set and is not masked.<br>1: No interrupts are pending. | 1'b0 |

FCR: FIFO Control Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:6 | R/W | RXTRIG [1:0] | Receiver Trigger Level<br>The data ready interrupt (DR) will be asserted when the receiver buffer depth is equal to the number of characters | 2'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | programmed in the trigger register. The trigger level encoding is as follows:<br>RXTRIG / Trigger Level<br>0 / 1<br>1 / 4<br>2 / 8<br>3 / 14<br>Note: This register is not used if the receive FIFO is disabled. | |
| 5:4 | R/W | TXTRIG[1:0] | Transmitter Trigger Level<br>The THRE interrupt will be asserted if the transmitter buffer depth is less than or equal to the number of characters programmed in the trigger register. The trigger level encoding is as follows:<br>TXTRIG / Trigger Level<br>0 / 1<br>1 / 4<br>2 / 8<br>3 / 12 | 2'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | DMAMODE | Enable DMA transfers<br>This bit is writeable and readable, but has no other hardware function. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | W | TXRST | Transmitter Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the transmit FIFO and reset the transmitter status. The shift register is not cleared. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | W | RXRST | Receive Reset<br>Writing a '1' to this bit will clear the receive FIFO and reset the receiver status. The shift register is not cleared. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | FIFOENA | 0: The Transmit and Receive FIFOs have the effective depth of one character.<br>1: The Transmit and Receive FIFOs are enabled.<br>Note: The FIFO status and data are automatically cleared when this bit is changed. | 1'b0 |

LCR: Line Control Register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | DLAB | Divisor Latch Access Bit<br>This bit has no functionality, and is retained for compatibility only | 2'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | SETBRK | Set Break Condition<br>0: Normal functionality.<br>1: Force TXD pin to '0'. Transmitter otherwise operates normally. | 2'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | FORCEPAR | Force Parity Bit<br>0: Normal functionality.<br>1: If even parity is selected, the (transmitted and checked) parity is forced to '0'; if odd parity is selected, the (transmitted and checked) parity if forced to '1'. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | EPS | Even Parity Select<br>0: Odd parity selected (checksum, including parity is '1').<br>1: Even parity selected (checksum, including parity is '0').<br>Note: This bit is ignored if the PEN bit is '0'. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | PEN | Parity Enable<br>0: Parity is not transmitted or checked. | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1: Parity is generated (transmit), and checked (receive). | |
| 2 | R/W | STB | Stop Bit Select<br>0: 1 stop bit is transmitted and received.<br>1: 1.5 stop bits are transmitted and received if WLS is '0'; 2 stop bits are transmitted and received if WLS is '1', '2', or '3'. | 1'b0 |
| 1:0: | R/W | WLS[1:0] | Word Length Select<br>0: Each character is 5 bits in length<br>1: Each character is 6 bits in length<br>2: Each character is 7 bits in length<br>3: Each character is 8 bits in length | 2'b0 |

MCR: Modem Control Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:5 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | LOOP | Loop-back Mode Enable<br>0: Normal Operation.<br>1: The UART is put into loop-back mode, used for self-test: The TXD pin is driven high; the TXD signal are connected to RXD internally. | 1'b0 |
| 3:0 | RO | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |

LSR: Line Status Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7 | R/C | ERINFIFO | The FIFO contains data which had a parity or framing error<br>This bit is set when the FIFO contains data that was received with a parity error, framing error or break condition. | 2'b0 |
| 6 | R/C | TEMT | Transmitter Empty<br>This bit is set when the transmitter shift register is empty, it will clear as soon as data is written to the **TBR** register. | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/C | THRE | Transmitter Holding Register Empty<br>This bit is set when the transmitter holding register is empty, it will clear as soon as data is written to the **TBR** register. | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/C | BI | Break Interrupt<br>This bit is set if a break is received, that is when the RXD signal is at a low state for more than one character transmission time (from start bit to stop bit). Under this condition, a single 'zero' is received. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/C | FE | Framing Error<br>This bit is set if a valid stop bit is not detected. If a framing error occurs, the receiver will attempt to re-synchronize by sampling the Start Bit twice and then takes the data. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/C | PE | Parity Error<br>This bit is set if the received parity is different from the expected value. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/C | OE | Overrun Error<br>This bit is set when a receive overrun occurs. This will happen if a character is received before the previous character has been read by firmware. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/C | DR | Data Ready<br>This bit is set when a character is received, and has been transferred in to the receiver buffer register. This bit will reset when all the characters are read from the receiver buffer register. | 1'b0 |

DL: Clock Divider Divisor Latch (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | DL[15:0] | Divisor Latch<br>This register is used in the clock divider to generate the baud clock. The baud rate (transfer rate in bits per second) is defined as:<br>Baud rate = system clock frequency / (CLKDIV * 16).<br>Note: In standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. In this implementation, the register is accessible as a single 16-bit entity only. | 16'h0001 |

DLLO: Clock Divider Divisor Latch Low (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLLO[7:0] | This register is the equivalent to the lower 8 bits of the DL register. It is provided for 16550 compatibility.<br>Note: In a standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. For convenience, the divisor latch is accessible as a single 16-bit entity via the DL register. | 8'b1 |

DLHI：Clock Divider Divisor Latch High (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLHI[7:0] | This register is the equivalent to the upper 8 bits of the DL regis is provided for 16550 compatibility.<br>Note: In a standard 16550 implementation, this register is accessible as two 8-bit halves only. For convenience, the divisor latch is accessible as a single 16-bit entity via the DL register. | 8'b0 |

IFCTL：Interface Control (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:1 | - | - | Reserved | 31'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | IFCTL | Open Collector Mode Control. This register controls if the UART Lite TXD output functions in open collector mode or is always driven. When set to '0', the output is always driven with the value of the transmit data signal. When set to a '1', the TXD output functions in open collector mode, where the TXD output is either driven low (when the transmit data output is active low) or tri-stated (when the transmit data output is active high. | 1'b0 |

## 3.9 Programmable I/O

### 3.9.1 Features

- Support 52 programmable I/Os
- Parameterized numbers of independent inputs, outputs, and inputs
- Independent polarity controls for each pin
- Independently masked edge detect interrupt on any input transition
- Programmable I/O pins are shared pin with SDRAM, PCI, MDIO, JTAG, UART-Lite, UART, SPI, PCM and I2C.

### 3.9.2 Block Diagram

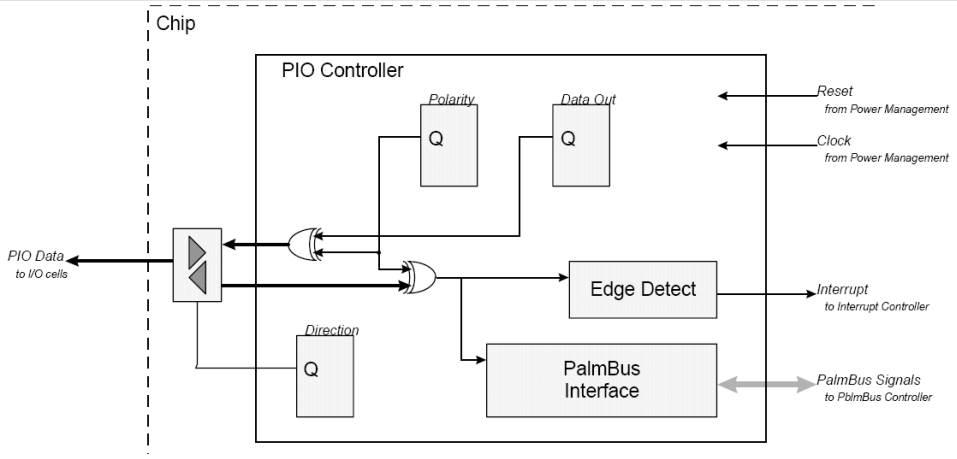



Fig. 3-9-1 Program I/O Block Diagram

### 3.9.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0600)

GPIO23_00_INT: Programmed I/O Interrupt Status (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/C | PIOINT[23:0] | A PIOINT bit is set when its corresponding PIO pin changes value and the edge for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. A pin must be set as an input in the PIODIR register to generate an interrupt. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the PIOEDGE register.<br>Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_EDGE: Programmed I/O Edge Status (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/C | PIOEDGE[23:0] | The PIOEDGE bits have different meanings depending on whether the interrupt for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. If the interrupt is enabled, upon getting an interrupt condition (the corresponding PIOINT bit will be set), the PIOEDGE bit will be '1' if a rising edge triggered the interrupt, or '0' if a falling edge triggered the interrupt. If the interrupt is masked (disabled), the PIOEDGE bit will be set on either a rising or falling edge and remain set until cleared by firmware. Bits corresponding to pins that are not set as inputs will never be set. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the | 24'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | PIOINT register.<br>Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | |

GPIO23_00_RENA: Programmed I/O Rising Edge Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | PIORENA[23:0] | Rising edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '0' to a '1', i.e. a rising edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after the polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_FENA: Programmed I/O Falling Edge Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | PIOFMASK [23:0] | Falling edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '1' to a '0', i.e. a falling edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after the polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_DATA: Programmed I/O Data (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | PIODATA[23:0] | Data Pin for Program I/O<br>These bits are used for driving or sensing static signals on the PIO pins. To drive a value onto a PIO pin, the corresponding bit in the PIODIR register must be set. If the corresponding direction bit is set, the value written to the bit in the PIODATA register will be driven at the pin. A read of this register returns the value of the signals currently on the PIO pins.<br>Note: The value of any bit in this register will be inverted with respect to the pin if the corresponding bit in the PIOPOL register is set, both in input and output modes.<br>Note: The values read from the PIO pins are not synchronized; the user should be sure that the data will not be changing when this register is read, or should be aware that the bits which are not static at that time may be inaccurate. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_DIR: Programmed I/O Direction (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | PIODIR[23:0] | Program I/O Pin Direction<br>These bits are used for selecting the data direction of the PIO pins. To configure any pin as an output, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; to configure any pin as an input, the corresponding bit should be set to '0'. The value driven onto the PIO pins, are controlled by the PIOPOL, and PIODATA registers. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_POL: Programmed I/O Pin Polarity (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | PIOPOL[23:0] | Program I/O Pin Polarity<br>These bits are used for controlling the polarity of the data driven on or read from the PIO pins. To invert the polarity of the data at any PIO pin, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; a value of '0' will not modify the pin data.<br>Note: The polarity controls affect both input and output modes. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_SET: Set PIO Data Bit (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/C | PIOSET[23:0] | These bits are used for setting bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will set the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_RESET: Clear PIO Data bit (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/C | PIORESET[23:0] | These bits are used for clearing bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will clear the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 24'b0 |

GPIO23_00_TOG: Toggle PIO Data bit (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:0 | R/C | PIOTOG[23:0] | These bits are used for toggling bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will invert the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 24'b0 |

GPIO39_24_INT：Program I/O Interrupt (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/C | PIOINT[15:0] | A PIOINT bit is set when its corresponding PIO pin changes value and the edge for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. A pin must be set as an input in the PIODIR register to generate an interrupt. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the PIOEDGE register.<br>Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_EDGE：Program I/O Edge Status (offset: 0x3c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/C | PIOEDGE [15:0] | The PIOEDGE bits have different meanings depending on whether the interrupt for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. If the interrupt is enabled, upon getting an interrupt condition (the corresponding PIOINT bit will be set), the PIOEDGE bit will be '1' if a rising edge triggered the interrupt, or '0' if a falling edge triggered the interrupt. If the interrupt is masked (disabled), the PIOEDGE bit will be set on either a rising or falling edge and remain set until cleared by firmware. Bits corresponding to pins that are not set as inputs | 16'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | will never be set. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the PIOINT register.<br>Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | |

GPIO39_24_RENA：Program I/O Rising Edge Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x40)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PIORENA[15:0] | Rising edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '0' to a '1', i.e. a rising edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_FENA：Program I/O Falling Edge Interrupt Enable(offset: 0x44)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PIOFENA[15:0] | Falling edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '1' to a '0', i.e. a falling edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_DATA：Program I/O Data (offset: 0x48 )

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PIODATA[15:0] | Data Pin for Program I/O<br>These bits are used for driving or sensing static signals on the PIO pins. To drive a value onto a PIO pin, the corresponding bit in the PIODIR register must be set. If the corresponding direction bit is set, the value written to the bit in the PIODATA register will be driven at the pin. A read of this register returns the value of the signals currently on the PIO pins.<br>Note: The value of any bit in this register will be inverted with respect to the pin if the corresponding bit in the PIOPOL register is set, both in input and output modes.<br>Note: The values read from the PIO pins are not synchronized; the user should be sure that the data will not be changing when this register is read, or should be aware that the bits which are not static at that time may be inaccurate. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_DIR：Program I/O Direction (offset: 0x4c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PIODATA[15:0] | Program I/O Pin Direction<br>These bits are used for selecting the data direction of the PIO pins. To configure any pin as an output, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; to configure any pin as an input, the corresponding bit should be set to '0'. The value driven onto the PIO pins, are controlled by the PIOPOL, and PIODATA registers. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_POL：Program I/O Pin Polarity (offset: 0x50)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PIOPOL[15:0] | Program I/O Pin Polarity<br>These bits are used for controlling the polarity of the data driven on or read from the PIO pins. To invert the polarity of the data at any PIO pin, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; a value of '0' will not modify the pin data.<br>Note: The polarity controls affect both input and output modes. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_SET：Set PIO Data Bit (offset: 0x54)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/C | PIOSET[15:0] | These bits are used for clearing bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will clear the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_RESET：Clear PIO Data bit [39:24](offset: 0x58)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/C | PIORESET[15:0] | These bits are used for setting bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will set the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 16'b0 |

GPIO39_24_TOG：Toggle PIO Data bit (offset: 0x5c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/C | PIOTOG[15:0] | These bits are used for toggling bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will invert the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 16'b0 |

GPIO51_40_INT：Program I/O Interrupt Status (offset: 0x60)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/C | PIOINT[11:0] | A PIOINT bit is set when its corresponding PIO pin changes value and the edge for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. A pin must be set as an input in the PIODIR register to generate an interrupt. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the PIOEDGE register.<br>Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_EDGE：Program I/O Edge Status (offset: 0x64)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/C | PIOEDGE[11:0] | The PIOEDGE bits have different meanings depending on whether the interrupt for that pin is enabled via the PIORMSK or PIOFMSK register. If the interrupt is enabled, upon getting an interrupt condition (the corresponding PIOINT bit will be set), the PIOEDGE bit will be '1' if a rising edge triggered the interrupt, or '0' if a falling edge triggered the interrupt. If the interrupt is masked (disabled), the PIOEDGE bit will be set on either a rising or falling edge and remain set until cleared by firmware. Bits corresponding to pins that are not set as inputs will never be set. All bits are cleared by writing "1" to either this register or the PIOINT register. | 12'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Note: Changes to the PIO pins can only be detected when the clock is running. | |

GPIO51_40_RENA：Program I/O Rising Edge Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x68)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | PIORENA[11:0] | Rising edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '0' to a '1', i.e. a rising edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_FENA：Program I/O Falling Edge Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x6C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | PIORENA[11:0] | Falling edge mask for individual Programmed I/O pin<br>The bits in this register enable the PIO interrupt to be set when the data on the corresponding PIO pin transitions from a '1' to a '0', i.e. a falling edge. A '1' will allow the interrupt to be set; a '0' will not allow the interrupt so that it will not be set.<br>Note: Edge detection is done after polarity is adjusted according to the PIOPOL register. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_DATA：Program I/O Data (offset: 0x70 )

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | PIODATA[11:0] | Data Pin for Program I/O<br>These bits are used for driving or sensing static signals on the PIO pins. To drive a value onto a PIO pin, the corresponding bit in the PIODIR register must be set. If the corresponding direction bit is set, the value written to the bit in the PIODATA register will be driven at the pin. A read of this register returns the value of the signals currently on the PIO pins.<br>Note: The value of any bit in this register will be inverted with respect to the pin if the corresponding bit in the PIOPOL register is set, both in input and output modes.<br>Note: The values read from the PIO pins are not synchronized; the user should be sure that the data will not be changing when this register is read, or should be aware that the bits which are not static at that time may be inaccurate. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_DIR：Program I/O Direction (offset: 0x74)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | PIODIR [11:0] | Program I/O Pin Direction<br>These bits are used for selecting the data direction of the PIO pins. To configure any pin as an output, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; to configure any pin as an input, the corresponding bit should be set to '0'. The value driven onto the PIO pins, are controlled by the PIOPOL, and PIODATA registers. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_POL：Program I/O Pin Polarity(offset: 0x78)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11:0 | R/W | PIOPOL [11:0] | Program I/O Pin Polarity<br>These bits are used for controlling the polarity of the data driven on or read from the PIO pins. To invert the polarity of the data at PIO pin, the corresponding bit should be set to '1'; a value of '0' will not modify the pin data.<br>Note: The polarity controls affect both input and output modes. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_SET：Set PIO Data Bit (offset: 0x7C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/C | PIOSET [11:0] | These bits are used for clearing bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will clear the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_RESET：Clear PIO Data bit (offset: 0x80)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/C | PIORESET [11:0] | These bits are used for setting bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will set the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 12'b0 |

GPIO51_40_TOG：Toggle PIO Data bit (offset: 0x84)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/C | PIOTOG [11:0] | These bits are used for toggling bits in the PIODATA output register. Writing a '1' will invert the corresponding bit in the PIODATA register. Writing a '0' will have no effect. | 12'b0 |

## 3.10 I2C Controller

### 3.10.1 Features

- Two I2C Host Controllers
- Programmable I2C bus clock rate
- Supports the Synchronous Inter Integrated Circuits (I2C) serial protocol
- Bi-directional data transfer
- Programmable address width up to 8 bits
- Sequential byte read or write capability
- Device address and data address can be transmitted for device, page and address selection
- Supports Standard mode and Fast mode

### 3.10.2 Block Diagram

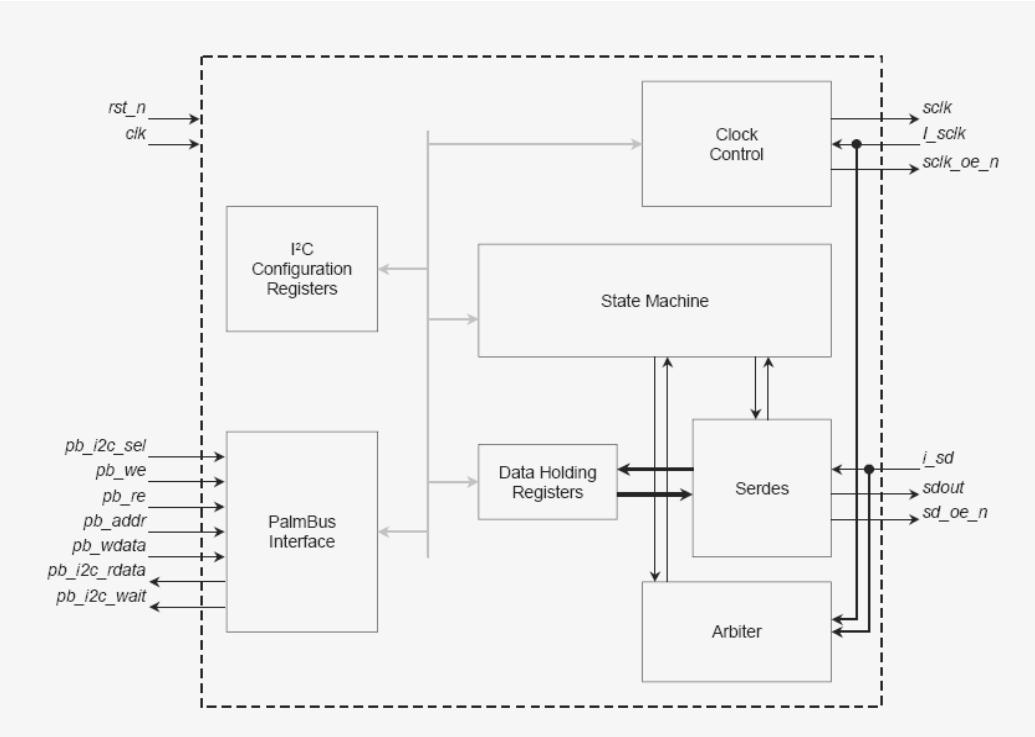



Fig. 3-10-1 I2C controller Block Diagram

### 3.10.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0900)

CONFIG: I2C Configuration Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:5 | R/W | ADDRLEN [2:0] | Address Length<br>The value written to this register plus one will indicate the number of address bits to be transferred from the I2C **ADDR** register. Program '0' for a 1-bit address, '1' for a 2-bit address, etc.) | 3'b0 |
| 4:2 | R/W | DEVADLEN [2:0] | Device Address Length<br>The value written to this register plus one indicates the number of device address bits to be transferred from the **DEVADDR** register. This field should be programmed to '6' for compliance with I2C bus protocol. | 3'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | R/W | ADDRDIS | 0: Normal transfers will occur with the address being Transmitted, followed by read or write data.<br>1: The controller will read or write serial data without transferring the address. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | DEVADDIS | 0: The device address will be transmitted before the data address.<br>1: The controller will not transfer the device address.<br>Note: if this bit is set, the ADDRDIS bit is ignored, and an address is always transmitted.<br>Note: most I2C slave devices require a device address to be transmitted; this bit should typically be set to '0'. | 1'b0 |

CLKDIV: I2C Clock Divisor Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | CLKDIV[15:0] | Clock Divisor<br>The value written to this register is used to generate the I2C bus SCLK signal by applying the following equation:<br>SCLK frequency = pb_clk frequency / ( 2 x CLKDIV )<br>Note: pb_clk frequency = 1/3 CPU clock frequency<br>Note: Only values of 8 and above are valid.<br>Note: Due to synchronization between the I2C internal clock and the system clock, the exact equation is actually<br>SCLK frequency = pb_clk frequency / ((2 x CLKDIV) + 5).<br>For most systems, CLKDIV is usually programmed to very larger numbers since the system clock frequency should be orders of magnitude faster than the I2C bus clock. These results in the synchronization errors being insignificant and the exact equation approximating the simpler one given above. | 16'b0 |

DEVADDR: I2C Device Address Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:7 | - | - | Reserved | 25'b0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | DEVADDR[6:0] | I2C Device Address<br>This value is transmitted as the device address, if **DEVADDIS** bit in the **CONFIG** register is not set to '1'. | 7'b0 |

ADDR: I2C Address Register (offset: 0x0c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | ADDR[7:0] | I2C Address<br>These bits store the 8-bits of address to be sent to the external I2C slave devices when the **ADDRDIS** bit is '0'. | 8'b0 |

DATAOUT: I2C Data Out Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DATAOUT [7:0] | I2C Data Out<br>These bits store the 8-bits of data to be written to the external I2C slave devices during a write transfer. | 8'b0 |

DATAIN: I2C Data In Register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7:0 | RO | DATAIN[7:0] | I2C Data In<br>These bits store the 8-bits of data received from the external I2C slave devices during a read transaction. The **DATARDY** bit in the **STATUS** register is set to '1' when data is valid in this register. | 8'b0 |

STATUS: I2C Status Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:5 | - | - | Reserved | 27'b0 |
| 4 | RO | STARTERR | Start Overflow Error<br>This bit is set when the **STARTXFR** register is written and a transfer is in progress. When this occurs, the write to the **STARTXFR** register is ignored. This bit is automatically cleared if firmware writes to the **STARTXFR** register when the **BUSY** bit cleared. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RO | ACKERR | I2C Acknowledge Error Detect<br>This bit is set when the Host controller did not receive a proper acknowledge from the I2C slave device after the transmission of a device address, address, or data out. This bit is automatically cleared when firmware writes to the **STARTXFR** register. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | RO | DATARDY | I2C Data Ready for Read<br>This bit indicates that the receive buffer contains valid data. It is set when data is received from an I2C slave device and is transferred from the interface shift register to the **DATAIN** register. This bit is automatically cleared when firmware reads the **DATAIN** register. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | SDOEMPTY | I2C Serial Data Out Register Empty<br>This bit indicates that the transmit data buffer is empty. It is cleared when the **DATAOUT** register is written to by software, and set to '1' when transmit data is transferred from the **DATAOUT** register to the interface shift register. Firmware may write to the **DATAOUT** register when this bit is '1'. | 1'b1 |
| 0 | RO | BUSY | I2C State Machine Busy<br>This bit is '1' when the I2C interface is active, and '0' when it is idle. Firmware may initiate an I2C transfer when this bit is '0', and should not modify any I2C host controller registers while it is '1'. | 1'b0 |

STARTXFR: I2C Transfer Start Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:2 | - | - | Reserved | 30'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | NODATA | Initiate transfer without transferring data<br>When this register is written with this bit set, an address-only transaction is initiated. If **DEVADDIS** is '0', the device address, direction, address and stop condition are transmitted to the I2C slave device. If **DEVADDIS** is '1', the address and stop condition are transmitted to the I2C slave device. This bit should be written with a '0' for normal I2C bus accesses.<br>Note: **ADDRDIS** is ignored if this bit is set for a transaction. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | RWDIR | Read/Write Direction<br>When this register is written with this bit set, a read transaction is initiated; when written with this bit reset, a write transaction is initiated.<br>Note: this bit is shifted out to the I2C slave device after the | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | device address; if **DEVADDIS** is '1', this bit is not shifted out to the device. | |

BYTECNT: I2C Byte Counter Register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:6 | - | - | Reserved | 26'b0 |
| 5:0 | R/W | BYTCNT[5:0] | Byte Count used for sequential reads/writes<br>The value written to this register plus one indicates the number of data bytes to be written to or read from the external I2C slave device. If its value is non-zero, multiple sequential read or write cycles will be issued with a single address (and/or device address). | 6'b0 |

## 3.11 SPI Controller

### 3.11.1 Features

- Supports SPI master operations
- Programmable clock polarity
- Programmable interface clock rate
- Programmable bit ordering
- Firmware-controlled SPI enable
- Programmable payload (address + data) length

### 3.11.2 Block Diagram

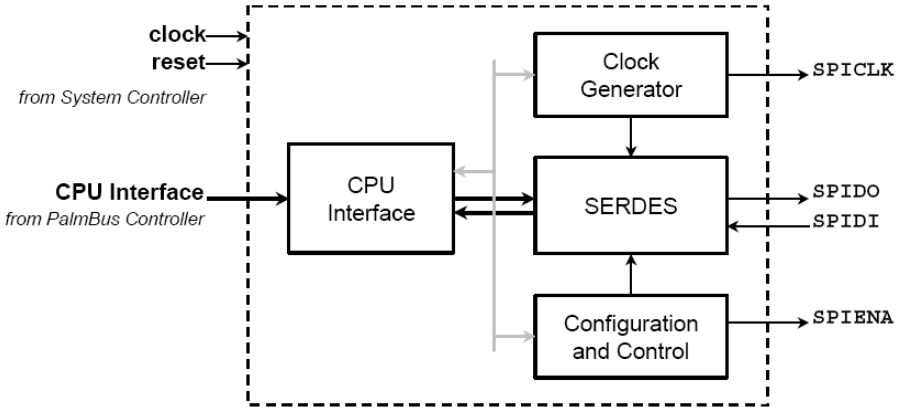



Fig. 3-11-1 SPI controller Block Diagram

### 3.11.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0B00)

SPISTAT: SPI Interface Status (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:2 | - | - | Reserved | 30'b0 |
| 0 | RO | BUSY | SPI transfer in progress<br>0: The SPI interface is inactive.<br>1: An SPI transfer is in progress.<br>Note: This bit must be '0' before initiating a transfer. Any attempt to start a data transfer will be ignored if this bit is a '1'. | 1'b0 |

SPICFG: SPI Interface Configuration (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:9 | - | - | Reserved | 23'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | MSBFIRST | Bit transfer order<br>0: LSB bits of data sent/received first.<br>1: MSB bits of data sent/received first.<br>Note: This bit applies to both the command and data. | 1'b1 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | SPICLKPOL | SPI clock default state<br>0: The default state of the SPICLK is logic '0'.<br>1: The default state of the SPICLK is logic '1'.<br>Note: This bit is ignored if the SPI interface block is a slave (SPISLAVE bit is set). | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | RXCKEDGE | SPI clock default state<br>0: Data is captured on the rising edge of the SPICLK signal.<br>1: Data is captured on the falling edge of the SPICLK signal. | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | R/W | TXCKEDGE | SPI clock default state<br>0: Data is transmitted on the rising edge of the SPICLK signal.<br>1: Data is transmitted on the falling edge of the SPICLK signal. | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | HIZSPI | Tri-state all SPI pin<br>0: SPICLK and SPIENA pin are driven.<br>1: SPICLK and SPIENA pin are tri-stated.<br>Note: This bit overrides all normal functionality. | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | SPICLK[2:0] | SPI clock divide control<br>(the rate in following table should be change in the future)<br>0: SPICLK rate is system clock rate/ 2<br>1: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 4<br>2: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 8<br>3: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 16<br>4: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 32<br>5: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 64<br>6: SPICLK rate is system clock rate / 128<br>7: SPICLK is disabled | 3'b0 |

SPICTL: SPI Interface Control (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | - | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | HIZSDO | Tri-state data out<br>0: The SPIDO pin remains driven after the cycle is complete.<br>1: The SPIDO pin is tri-stated after the cycle is complete.<br>Note: This bit applies to write transfers only; for read transfers the SPIDO pin is tri-stated during the transfer. | 1'b0 |
| 2 | W | STARTWR | Start SPI write transfer<br>When this bit is written with a '1', the contents of the SPIDATA register are transferred to the SPI slave device. Writing a '0' to this register has no effect.<br>Note: The BUSY bit in the SPISTAT register is set when this bit is set and is cleared when the data transfer is complete. This bit is only meaningful if the SPI interface block is configured as a master. | 1'b0 |
| 1 | W | STARTRD | When this bit is written with a '1', a read from the SPI slave is started; the read data is placed in the SPIDATA register. Writing a '0' to this register has no effect.<br>Note: The BUSY bit in the SPISTAT register is set when a this bit is set and is cleared when the data transfer is complete. This bit is only meaningful if the SPI interface block is configured as a master. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | SPIENA | 0: The SPIENA pin is negated.<br>1: The SPIENA pin is asserted. | 1'b0 |

SPIDATA: SPI Interface Data (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | SPIDATA[7:0] | This register is used for command/data transfers on the SPI interface. The use of this register is given below:<br>Write: the bits to be transferred are written here, including both command and data bits. If values are transmitted MSB (most significant bit) first, the command is placed in the upper bits and the data in the lower bits. Bit 0 of the data is written to SPIDATA | 8'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | [0];bit 0 of the command follows the MSB of the data. If data is transmitted LSB (least significant bit) first, the command is placed in the lower bits and the data is placed in the upper bits.<br>Read: the command bits are written here. Bit 0 of the command is written to SPIDATA[0]. When the transfer is complete, the data transferred from the slave may be read from the lower bits of this register. | |

## 3.12 Generic DMA Controller

### 3.12.1 Features

- Support 8 DMA channels
- Support 8 DMA requests
- Programmable hardware channel priority
- Programmable DMA Burst Size (1,2,4,8,16 burst transfer)
- Support 32 bit wide transaction
- Big-endian and Little-endian support
- Support memory to memory, memory to peripheral, peripheral to memory, peripheral to peripheral transfers.
- Interrupts for each channel. They also can be masked, independently.
- Each channel transaction can be masked temporarily by the software, and released by the hardware automatically.

### 3.12.2 Block Diagram

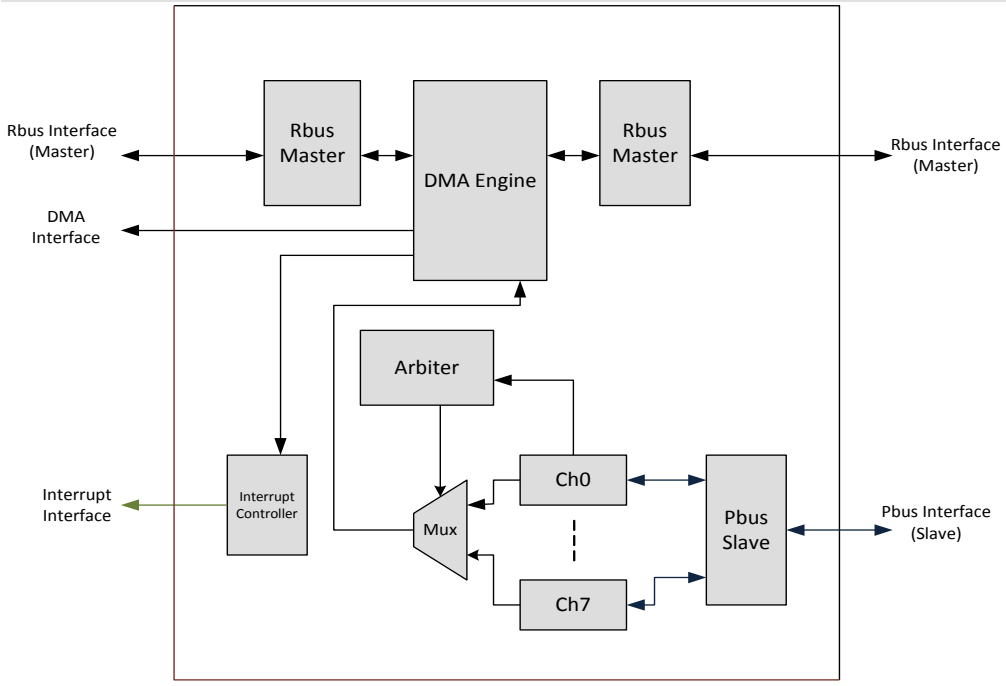



Fig. 3-12-1 Generic DMA controller Block Diagram

### 3.12.3 Register Description (base: 0x10000700)

GDMASAn: GDMA Channel n Source Address (offset: 0x00, 0x10, 0x20, 0x30, 0x40, 0x50, 0x60, 0x70 ) (n:0~7)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | CHANNEL SOURCE ADDRESS | Channel Source Address:<br>This register contains the source address information | 32'b0 |

GDMADAn: GDMA Channel n Destination Address (offset: 0x04, 0x14, 0x24, 0x34, 0x44, 0x54, 0x64, 0x74 ) (n:0~7)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | CHANNEL DESTINATION ADDRESS | Channel Destination Address:<br>This register contains the destination address information | 32'b0 |

GDMACT0n: GDMA Channel n Control Register 0 (offset: 0x08, 0x18, 0x28, 0x38, 0x48, 0x58, 0x68, 0x78)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | Transfer Count | These registers contain the number of the data bytes needed to be transfer. | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | R/W | Source DMA Request | The value represents the source DMA request.<br>'b0000: DMA_REQ0<br>'b0001: DMA_REQ1 (NAND-flash)<br>'b0010: DMA_REQ2 (I2S)<br>'b0011: DMA_REQ3 (PCM0-RX)<br>'b0100: DMA_REQ4 (PCM1-RX)<br>'b0101: DMA_REQ5 (PCM0-TX)<br>'b0110: DMA_REQ6 (PCM1-TX)<br>'b0111: DMA_REQ7<br>'b1000: The source of the transfer is memory | 4'b0 |
| 11:8 | R/W | Destination DMA Request | The value represents the destination DMA request.<br>'b0000: DMA_REQ0<br>'b0001: DMA_REQ1 (NAND-flash)<br>'b0010: DMA_REQ2 (I2S)<br>'b0011: DMA_REQ3 (PCM0-RX)<br>'b0100: DMA_REQ4 (PCM1-RX)<br>'b0101: DMA_REQ5 (PCM0-TX)<br>'b0110: DMA_REQ6 (PCM1-TX)<br>'b0111: DMA_REQ7<br>'b1000: The destination of the transfer is memory | 4'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | Source Burst Mode | The value represents the source burst mode<br>'b0: incremental mode<br>'b1: fix mode | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | Destination Burst Mode | The value represents the destination burst mode<br>'b0: incremental mode<br>'b1: fix mode | 1'b0 |
| 5:3 | R/W | Burst Size | The number of the transfer for burst transaction.<br>'b000: 1 transfer<br>'b001: 2 transfer<br>'b010: 4 transfer<br>'b011: 8 transfer<br>'b100: 16 transfer<br>others: undefined | 3'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | Transmit Done Interrupt Enable | Transmit done interrupt enable.<br>'b1:Enable<br>'b0:Disable | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | Channel Enable | Enable the channel<br>'b1: Enable<br>'b0: Disable<br>This bit will be de-asserted by the hardware when the transaction is done. | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | Hardware/Software Mode Select | Hardware/Software Mode Select<br>'b1: Software Mode<br>'b0: Hardware Mode<br>In software mode, the data transfer will start when the Channel Enable bit is set.<br>In hardware mode, the data transfer will start when the DMA Request is asserted. | 1'b0 |

GDMACT1n: GDMA Channel n Control Register 1 (offset: 0x0C, 0x1C, 0x2C, 0x3C, 0x4C, 0x5C, 0x6C, 0x7C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:5 | -- | - | Reserved | -- |
| 4 | R/W | Channel Unmasked Interrupt Enable | Channel unmasked interrupt enable.<br>'b1:Enable<br>'b0:Disable<br>When this bit is set, an interrupt will be asserted when the hardware wants to clear the Channel Mask bit and the Channel Mask bit is 0 originally. | 1'b0 |
| 3:1 | R/W | Next Unmasked Channel | The value represents the next unmasked channel. When the transaction is done, the hardware will clear the Channel Mask bit of the next unmasked channel.<br>'b000: Channel 0<br>'b001: Channel 1<br>'b010: Channel 2<br>'b011: Channel 3<br>'b100: Channel 4<br>'b101: Channel 5<br>'b110: Channel 6<br>'b111: Channel 7<br>If the hardware doesn't need to clear any Channel Mask bit, these bits must be set to their own channel. | 4'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | Channel Mask | Channel Mask<br>'b1: This channel is masked<br>'b0: This channel is not masked<br>When this channel mask is set, the GDMA transaction will not start until this bit is clear by the hardware. | 1'b0 |

GDMAISTS: GDMA Interrupt Status Register (offset: 0x80)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 23:16 | R/W1C | Unmasked Interrupt Status | This register contains the unmasked interrupt status. This bit will be set when the hardware wants to clear the Channel Mask bit and the Channel Mask bit is 0 originally.<br>Bit23~bit16 is for channel 7 ~ channel 0, respectively. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 7:0 | R/W1C | Transmit Done Interrupt Status | This register contains the transmit-done interrupt status.<br>Bit7~bit0 is for channel 7 ~ channel 0, respectively. | 8'b0 |

GDMASSTS: GDMA Signal Status Register (offset: 0x84)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 23:16 | R | GDMA Request Signal Status | This register contains the GDMA Request Signals status<br>Bit7~bit0 is for GDMA_REQ7 ~ GDMA_REQ0, respectively. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | R | GDMA ACK Signal Status | This register contains the GDMA ACK signals status<br>Bit7~bit0 is for GDMA_ACK7 ~ GDMA_ACK0, respectively. | 8'b0 |
| 7:0 | R | GDMA Finish Signal Status | This register contains the GDMA Finish signals status<br>Bit7~bit0 is for GDMA_Finish7 ~ GDMA_Finish0, respectively. | 8'b0 |

GDMAGCT: GDMA Global Control Register (offset: 0x88)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:1 | - | - | Reserved | - |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | R/W | Arbitration Selection | Select the channel arbitration method.<br>1'b0: Channel 0 has the highest priority. Channel 1~ Channel7 are round-robin.<br>1'b1: Channel 0 doesn't have the highest priority. Channel0~Channel7 are round-robin. | 1'b0 |

## 3.13 PCM Controller

### 3.13.1 Features

- PCM module provides PBUS interface for register configuration and data transfer
- Two clock sources are reserved for PCM circuit. (From internal clock generator, int_pcm_clk, and from external clock source, ext_pcm_clk)
- PCM module can drive a clock out to external codec (out_clk_freq = int_pcm_clk/n, n = configurable by register, 1<=n<=64).
- 2 channels PCM are available. 4~128 slots are configurable.
- Each channel supports a-law(8-bits)/u-law(8-bits)/raw-PCM(16-bits) transfer.
- Hardware converter of a-law⇔raw-16 and u-law ⇔ raw-16 are implemented in design.
- Support long/short FSYNC.
- All signals are driven by rising edge and latched by falling edge.
- Last bit of DTX will be tri-stated on falling edge.
- Begin of slot is configurable by 10 bits registers each channel.
- 32 bytes FIFO are available for each channel

### 3.13.2 Block Diagram

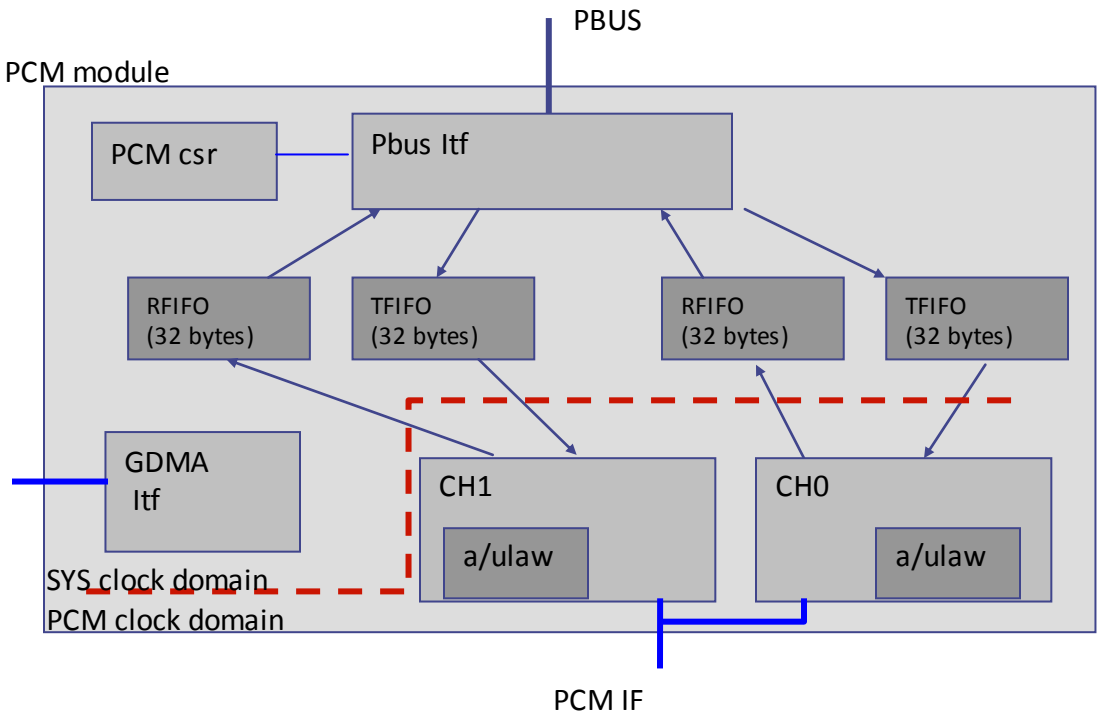



Fig. 3-13-1 PCM Controller Block Diagram

Two clocks domains are partitioned in this design. PCM converter (ulaw⇔raw-16bit and alaw⇔raw-16bit) are implemented in PCM mxDmx. The threshold of FIFO is configurable.

As the threshold reachs, PCM will (a) trigger the DMA interface to notify external DMA engine to transfer data. (b) trigger the interrupts to host.

The interrupt sources include :

- threshold is reached
- FIFO under run or overrun.
- fault is detected at DMA interface.

The A-law and u-law converter is implemented base on ITU-G.711 A-law and u-law table. In this design, support a-law/u-law(8-bits) ⇔ linear PCM(16-bits) only. A-law ⇔ u-law isn't available now.

The data-flow from codec to PCM-controller (RX-flow) is shown as below:
PCM-controller latches the data from DRX at indicated time slot and then writes it to FIFO. If FIFO full, the data will be lost.
As the RX-FIFO reach the threshold, two actions may be taken
As DMA_ENA=1, DMA_REQ will be asserted to request a burst transfer. And it will re-check the FIFO threshold after DMA_END is asserted by GDMA. (GDMA should be configured before channel is enabled.)
Assert the Interrupt source to notify HOST. HOST can check RFIFO_AVAIL information then get back the data from FIFO.

The data-flow from PCM-controller to codec (TX-flow) is shown as below:
After GDMA is configured, software should configure and enable the PCM channel.
The empty FIFO should
As DMA_ENA=1, DMA_REQ will be triggered to request a burst transfer. And it will re-check the FIFO threshold after DMA_END is asserted by GDMA (a burst is completed.).
Assert the Interrupt source to notify HOST. HOST will write down the data to TX-FIFO. After that, HOST will recheck TFIFO_EMPTY information then write more data if available.
NOTICE: As DMA_ENA=1, the burst size of GDMA should less than the threshold value.

### 3.13.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0400)

GLB_CFG: GLB_CFG Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | PCM_EN | PCM enable,<br>1: enable<br>0: disable, all FSM and control register of PCM_mxDmx will be clear to default value. | 0 |
| 30 | RW | DMA_EN | DMA enable<br>1: enable DMA interface, transfer data with DMA<br>0: disable DMA interface, transfer data with software. | 0 |
| 29:23 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 22:20 | RW | RFF_THRES | RXFIFO threshold, As threshold reach, host/dma will be notified to fill FIFO. (unit = word)<br>It should be >2 and <6<br>As data in FIFO under the threshold, interrupt & DMA will be triggered. | 4 |
| 19 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 18:16 | RW | TFF_THRES | TXFIFO threshold, As threshold reach, host/dma will be notified to fill FIFO. (unit = word)<br>It should be >2 and <6.<br>As data in FIFO over the threshold, interrupt & DMA will be triggered. | 4 |
| 15:10 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 9 | RW | CH1-TX_EN | Channel-1 TX enable | 0 |
| 8 | RW | CH0-TX_EN | Channel-0 TX enable | 0 |
| 7:2 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 1 | RW | CH1-RX_EN | Channel-1 RX enable | 0 |
| 0 | RW | CH0-RX_EN | Channel-0 RX enable<br>1: enable<br>0:disable | 0 |

PCM_CFG: PCM_CFG Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | EXT_CLK_EN | PCM_CLK is generated by external source.<br>1: PCM_CLK is provided by external<br>0: PCM_CLK is generated by internal clock divider | 0 |
| 30 | RW | CLKOUT_EN | Enable the PCM_CLK_OUT<br>1: PCM_CLK_OUT should be free run<br>0: PCM_CLK_OUT should be pull-low forever.<br>(NOTE: Normally, the register should be asserted to '1'. And it should be asserted after divider cfg & divider clock enable) | 0 |
| 29:28 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 27 | RW | EXT_FSYNC | FSYNC is provided by external.<br>1: FSYNC is provided by external<br>0: FSYNC is generated by internal circuit. | 0 |
| 26 | RW | LONG_FSYNC | FSYNC mode:<br>1: long FSYNC<br>0: short FSYNC | 0 |
| 25 | RW | FSYNC_POL | Polarity of FSYNC<br>1: FSYNC is high active<br>0: FSYNC is low active | 1 |
| 24 | RW | DRX_TRI | Tristate the DRX as fall edge as LSB bit.<br>1: Tristate the DRX<br>0: non- Tristate the DRX | 1 |
| 23:3 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 2:0 | RW | SLOT_MODE | How many slot each PCM frame<br>0: 4 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 256KHz.<br>1: 8 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 512KHz.<br>2:16 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 1.024MHz.<br>3:32 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 2.048MHz.<br>4:64 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 4.096MHz.<br>5:128 slots, PCM clock out/in should be 8.192MHz.<br>other: reserved.<br>Note: When using the external clock, the frequency clock should be equal to PCM_clock out. Otherwise, the PCM_CLKin should be 8.192 MHz. | 0 |

INT_STATUS: INT_STATUS Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15 | RW | CH1T_DMA_ FAULT | Found any fault of the CH1-TX's DMA signals. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 14 | RW | CH1T_OVRUN | The FIFO of CH1-TX overrun(Write '1' to clear) | |
| 13 | RW | CH1T_UNRUN | The FIFO of CH1-TX underrun(Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 12 | RW | CH1T_THRES | The FIFO of CH1-TX lower than the defined threshold. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 11 | RW | CH1R_DMA_ FAULT | Found any fault of the CH1-RX's DMA signals. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 10 | RW | CH1R_OVRUN | The FIFO of CH1-RX overrun(Write '1' to clear) | |
| 9 | RW | CH1R_UNRUN | The FIFO of CH1-RX underrun(Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 8 | RW | CH1R_THRES | The FIFO of CH1-RX lower than the defined threshold. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 7 | RW | CH0T_DMA_ FAULT | Found any fault of the CH0-TX's DMA signals. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 6 | RW | CH0T_OVRUN | The FIFO of CH0-TX overrun(Write '1' to clear) | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | RW | CH0T_UNRUN | The FIFO of CH0-TX underrun(Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 4 | RW | CH0T_THRES | The FIFO of CH0-TX lower than the defined threshold. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 3 | RW | CH0R_DMA_FAULT | Found any fault of the CH0-RX's DMA signals. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 2 | RW | CH0R_OVRUN | The FIFO of CH0-RX overrun(Write '1' to clear) | |
| 1 | RW | CH0R_UNRUN | The FIFO of CH0-RX underrun(Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 0 | RW | CH0R_THRES | The FIFO of CH0-RX lower than the defined threshold. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |

INT_EN: INT_EN Register (offset: 0x0c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15 | RW | INT15_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[15] | 0 |
| 14 | RW | INT14_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[14] | 0 |
| 13 | RW | INT13_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[13] | 0 |
| 12 | RW | INT12_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[12] | 0 |
| 11 | RW | INT11_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[11] | 0 |
| 10 | RW | INT10_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[10] | 0 |
| 9 | RW | INT9_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[9] | 0 |
| 8 | RW | INT8_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[8] | 0 |
| 7 | RW | INT7_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[7] | 0 |
| 6 | RW | INT6_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[6] | 0 |
| 5 | RW | INT5_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[5] | 0 |
| 4 | RW | INT4_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[4] | 0 |
| 3 | RW | INT3_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[3] | 0 |
| 2 | RW | INT2_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[2] | 0 |
| 1 | RW | INT1_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[1] | 0 |
| 0 | RW | INT0_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[0] | 0 |

FF_STATUS: FF_STATUS Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:12 | RO | CH1RFF_AVCNT | CH1, Available FIFO space can be read (unit=word) | 0 |
| 11:8 | RO | CH1TFF_EPCNT | CH1, Available FIFO space can be written (unit=word) | 8 |
| 7:4 | RO | CH0RFF_AVCNT | CH0, Available FIFO space can be read (unit=word) | 0 |
| 3:0 | RO | CH0TFF_EPCNT | CH0, Available FIFO space can be written (unit=word) | 8 |

CH0_CFG: CH0_CFG Register (offset: 0x020)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | LBK_EN | Loopback enable<br>1: loopback<br>(Asyn-TXFIFO➔DTX➔DRX➔Asyn-RXFIFO)<br>0: normal mode | 0 |
| 30 | RW | EXT_LBK_EN | External loopback enable<br>1: external loopback enable<br>(Ext-Codec➔DRX➔DTX➔Ext-Codec)<br>0: normal mode | 0 |
| 29:28 | RW | CMP_MODE | Compress type select<br>0: disable HW converter, linear raw-data (16-bits)<br>1: disable HW converter, A-law or U-law (8-bits)<br>2: enable HW converter, raw-data(16-bits) ⇔ U-law mode (8-bits)<br>3: enable HW converter, raw-data(16-bits) ⇔ A-law mode (8-bits) | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 27:10 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 9:0 | RW | TS_START | Timeslot Starting location | 1 |

CH1_CFG: CH1_CFG Register (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | LBK_EN | Loopback enable<br>1: loopback<br>(Asyn-TXFIFO➔DTX➔DRX➔Asyn-RXFIFO)<br>0: normal mode | 0 |
| 30 | RW | EXT_LBK_EN | External loopback enable<br>1: external loopback enable<br>(Ext-Codec➔DRX➔DTX➔ Ext-Codec)<br>0: normal mode | 0 |
| 29:28 | RW | CMP_MODE | Compress type select<br>0: disable HW converter, linear raw-data (16-bits)<br>1: disable HW converter, A-law or U-law (8-bits)<br>2: enable HW converter, raw-data(16-bits) ⇔ U-law mode (8-bits)<br>3: enable HW converter, raw-data(16-bits) ⇔ A-law mode (8-bits) | 0 |
| 27:10 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 9:0 | RW | TS_START | Timeslot Starting location | 1 |

RSV_REG16: RSV_REG16 Register (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | RW | SPARE_REG | Spare Register for future | 0 |

CH0_FIFO: CH0_FIFO Register (offset: 0x80)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RW | CH0_FIFO | FIFO access point | 0 |

CH1_FIFO: : CH1_FIFO Register (offset:0x84)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RW | CH1_FIFO | FIFO access point | 0 |

PCM initialization flow:

Step #1: Set PCM_CFG

Step #2: Set CH0/1_CFG

Step #3: Write PCM data to FIFO CH0/1_FIFO

Step #4: Set GLB_CFG to enable the PCM and channel.

Step #5: Monitor FF_STATUS to receive/transmit the other PCM data.

## 3.14 I2S Controller

### 3.14.1 Features

- I2S transmitter, which can be configured as master or slave.
- Support 16-bit data, sample rate 48Khz
- Support stereo audio data transfer.
- 32 bytes FIFO are available for data transmission.
- Support GDMA access

### 3.14.2 Block Diagram

The block diagram of I2S Transmitter is shown as below

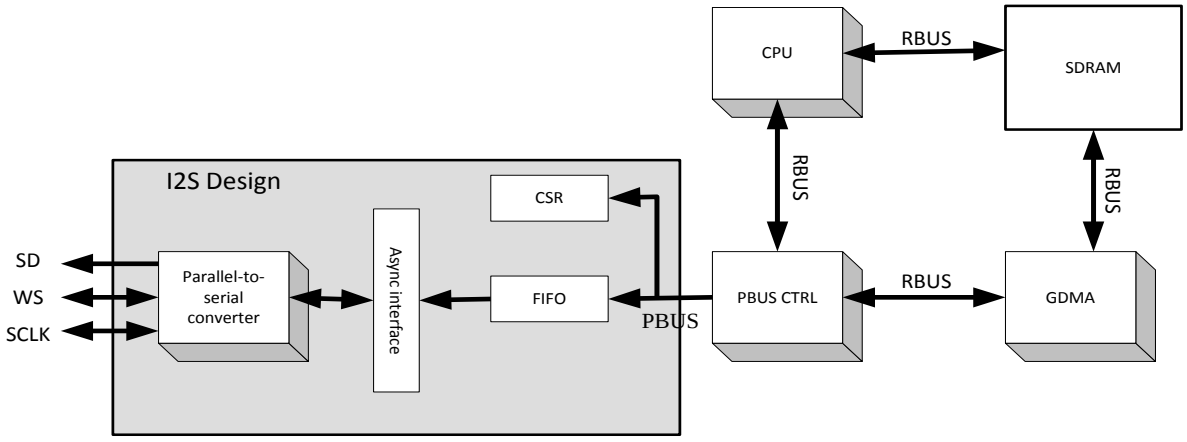



Fig. 3-14-1 I2S Transmitter Block Diagram

The I2S interface consists of two separate cores, a transmitter and a receiver. Both can operate in either master or slave mode. Here we will design only the transmitter in master or slave mode.
I2S signal timing:

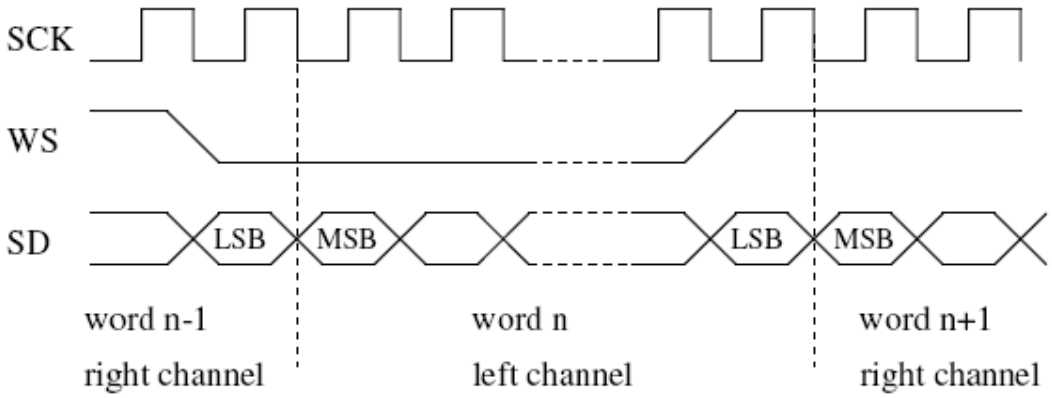



Fig. 3-14-2 I2S Transmitter

Serial data is transmitted in 2's complement with the MSB first. The transmitter always sends the MSB of the next word one clock period after the WS changes. Serial data sent by the transmitter may be synchronized with either the trailing (HIGH-to-LOW) or the leading (LOW-to-HIGH) edge of the clock signal. However, the serial data must

be latched into the receiver on the leading edge of the serial clock signal, and so there are some restrictions when transmitting data that is synchronized with the leading edge.

The word select line indicates the channel being transmitted:

• WS = 0; channel 1 (left);

• WS = 1; channel 2 (right).

WS may change either on a trailing or leading edge of the serial clock, but it doesn't need to be symmetrical. In the slave, this signal is latched on the leading edge of the clock signal. The WS line changes one clock period before the MSB is transmitted. This allows the slave transmitter to derive synchronous timing of the serial data that will be set up for transmission. Furthermore, it enables the receiver to store the previous word and clear the input for the next Word.

### 3.14.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0A00)

I2S_CFG: I2S Configuration Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | I2S_EN | I2S enable,<br>1: enable<br>0: disable, all control registers of $I^2S$ will be clear to default value. | 0 |
| 30 | RW | DMA_EN | GDMA access enable<br>1: DMA enable<br>0: host enable | 0 |
| 29:9 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 8 | RW | CLK_OUT_DIS | Disable I2S clock pad to drive divider clock<br>1: I2S clock out pin be input PAD.<br>0: I2S clock out pin drive clock-signal to external Component.<br>(NOTE: Normally, the register should be asserted to '0'. And it should be asserted after dividor cfg & dividor clock enable) | 1 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 6:4 | RW | FF_THRES | FIFO threshold, As threshold reach, host/dma will notify to fill FIFO. (Unit = word)<br>It should be >2 and <6 | 4 |
| 3 | RW | CH_SWAP | Channel swap control<br>0: No swapping<br>1: Swap CH0 and CH1 | 0 |
| 2 | RW | CH1_OFF | Channel 1 ON/OFF control<br>0: Channel 1 is ON<br>1: Channel 1 is OFF | 0 |
| 1 | RW | CH0_OFF | Channel 0 ON/OFF control<br>0: Channel 0 is ON<br>1: Channel 0 is OFF | 0 |
| 0 | RW | SLAVE_EN | I2S transmitter as master or slave.<br>1: as slave, I2S_CLK_IN is provided by external.<br>0: as master, I2S_CLK_IN is provided by internal circuit | 0 |

INT_STATUS: Interrupt Status Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 3 | RW | DMA_FAULT | Found any fault of the GDMA signals. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 2 | RW | OVRUN | The FIFO is overflow (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 1 | RW | UNRUN | The FIFO is underflow (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |
| 0 | RW | THRES | The FIFO is lower than the defined threshold. (Write '1' to clear) | 0 |

INT_EN: Interrupt Enable Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 3 | RW | INT3_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[3] | 0 |
| 2 | RW | INT2_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[2] | 0 |
| 1 | RW | INT1_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[1] | 0 |
| 0 | RW | INT0_EN | Enable INT_STATUS[0] | 0 |

FF_STATUS: FIFO Status Register (offset: 0xc)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 7:4 | RO | AVCNT | Available FIFO space can be read (Unit=word) | 0 |
| 3:0 | RO | EPCNT | Available FIFO space can be written (Unit=word) | 8 |

FIFO_WREG: FIFO Write Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | W | FIFO_WDATA | Write data buffer | 0 |

## 3.15 Memory Controller

### 3.15.1 Features

- Support 2 SDRAM(16b/32b) chip selects
- Support 2 Flash(SRAM)(8/16b) chip selects with independent timing parameters
- Support 64MB/SDRAM per chip select
- Support 32MB/Flash(SRAM) per chip select
- Support SDRAM transaction overlapping by early active and hidden pre-charge
- Support user SDRAM Init commands
- Support 4 banks per SDRAM chip select
- SDRAM burst length: 4 (fixed)
- Support Wrap-4 transfer
- Support Bank-Raw-Column and Raw-Bank-Column address mapping

### 3.15.2 Block Diagram

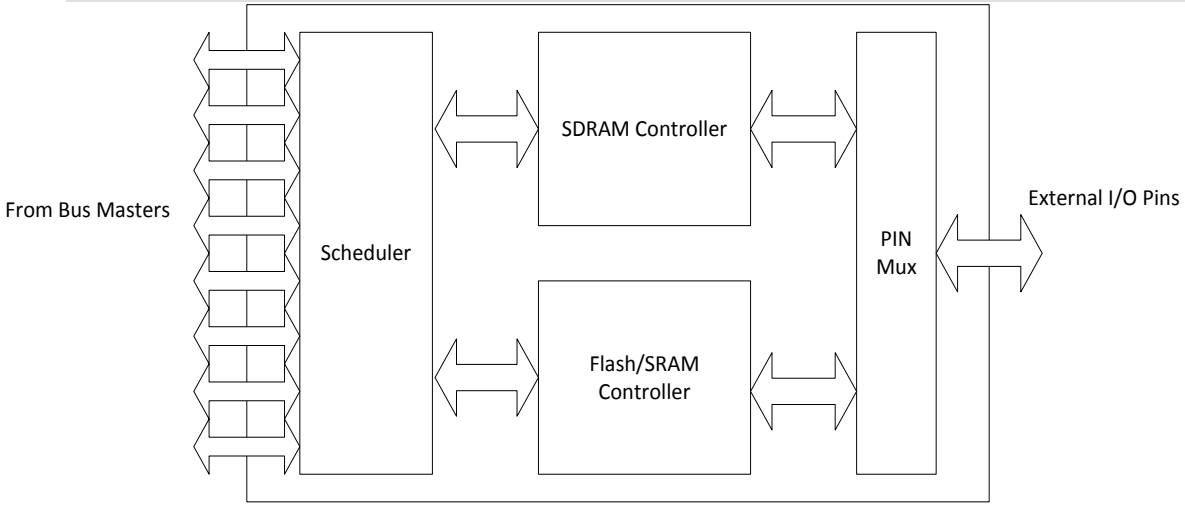



Fig. 3-15-1 Flash/SRAM/SDRAM controller Block Diagram

#### 3.15.2.1 SDRAM Initialization Sequence

SDRAMs require an initialization sequence before they are ready for reading and writing. The initialization sequence is described below.

Step #1: setting SDRAM related timing in SDRAM_CFG0

Step#2: setting SDRAM size and refresh time in SDRAM_CFG1 register with

SDRAM_INIT_START = 1

Step#3: Read SDRAM_INIT_DONE in SDRAM_CFG1 register

Step#4: if SDRAM_INIT_DONE !=1, go to Step#3, else SDRAM initialization sequence finished

### 3.15.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0300)

SDRAM_CFG0: SDRAM Configuration 0 (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO | ALWAYS_ONE | Use as an identification for Rbus controller | 1'b1 |
| 30-29 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b00 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 28 | R/W | TWR | Write Recovery time number of system clock cycles – 1. | 1'b1 |
| 27:24 | R/W | TMRD | LOAD MODE to any other command delay number of system clock cycles – 1. | 4'b0001 |
| 23:20 | R/W | TRFC | AUTO REFRESH period number of system clock cycles – 1. | 4'b1001 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 17:16 | R/W | TCAS | READ command to data valid delay (CAS latency) in number of system clock cycles – 1. | 2'b10 |
| 15:12 | R/W | TRAS | ACTIVE to PRECHARGE command delay in number of system clock cycles – 1. | 4'b0101 |
| 11:10 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 9:8 | R/W | TRCD | ACTIVE to READ or WRITE delay in number of system clock cycles – 1. | 2'b10 |
| 7:4 | R/W | TRC | ACTIVE to ACTIVE command period in number of system clock cycles -1 | 4'b1000 |
| 3:2 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 1:0 | R/W | TRP | PRECHARGE command period in number of system clock cycles –1. | 2'b10 |

SDRAM_CFG1: SDRAM Configuration 1 (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | SDRAM_INIT_START | Write 1 to perform SDRAM initialization sequence.<br>Can not set it to zero after initialization. | 1'b0 |
| 30 | RO | SDRAM_INIT_DONE | 0: SDRAM has not been initialized<br>1: SDRMA has been initialized | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | RBC_MAPPING | 1 : {ROW ADDR, BANK ADDR, COL ADDR}<br>address mapping scheme<br>0 : {BANK ADDR, ROW ADDR, COL ADDR}<br>address mapping scheme | 1'b0 |
| 29:25 | - | - | Reserved | 5'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | SDRAM_WIDTH | Number of SDRAM data bus bits :<br>0 : 16 bits<br>1 : 32 bits (default) | 1'b1 |
| 23:22 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 21:20 | R/W | NUMCOLS | Number of Column address bits :<br>0 : 8 Column address bits<br>1 : 9 Column address bits (default)<br>2 : 10 Column address bits<br>3: 11 Column address bits | 2'b01 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 17:16 | R/W | NUMROWS | Number of Row address bits :<br>0 : 11 Row address bits<br>1 : 12 Row address bits (default)<br>2 : 13 Row address bits<br>3: 14 Row address bits (not allocable if boot from NAND flash is enabled) | 2'b10 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TREFR | AUTO REFRESH period in number of SDRAM clock cycles – 1. | 16'h0600 |

*PS: SDRAM Self Refresh Mode and Power Down will be supported later.

FLASH_CFG0: Flash Bank 0 Configuration (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:26 | RO | FLASH_WIDTH0 | Number of Flash Chip Select0 data bus bits :<br>0 : 8 bits<br>1 : 16 bits (default)<br>2 : reserved | 2'b01 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 3 : reserved<br>Note : This value is from boot strapping. | |
| 25 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | CSADR0 | Address hold time from Chip Select in number of system clock cycles | 1'b1 |
| 23:22 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 21:20 | R/W | TWHOLD0 | Chip select and Data hold time from Write Enable in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | TRHOLD0 | Chip select hold time from Output Enable in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |
| 15:12 | R/W | TWE0 | Write Enable duration in number of system clock cycles | 4'b1111 |
| 11:8 | R/W | TOE0 | Output Enable duration in number of system clock cycles | 4'b1111 |
| 7:6 | R/W | TRADR0 | Read address setup in number of system clock cycles | 2'b10 |
| 5:4 | R/W | TWADR0 | Write address setup in number of system clock cycles | 2'b10 |
| 3:2 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 1:0 | R/W | TADRCS0 | Address setup time prior to Chip Select in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |

*PS: Flash_Width0 (8/16/32 bits) is configured by power on pin capture.

Note: Total of width specified by TADRCS + TWADR/TRADR + TWE/TOE + TWHOLD/TRHOLD + TCSADR may not be fewer than 3 clock cycles.

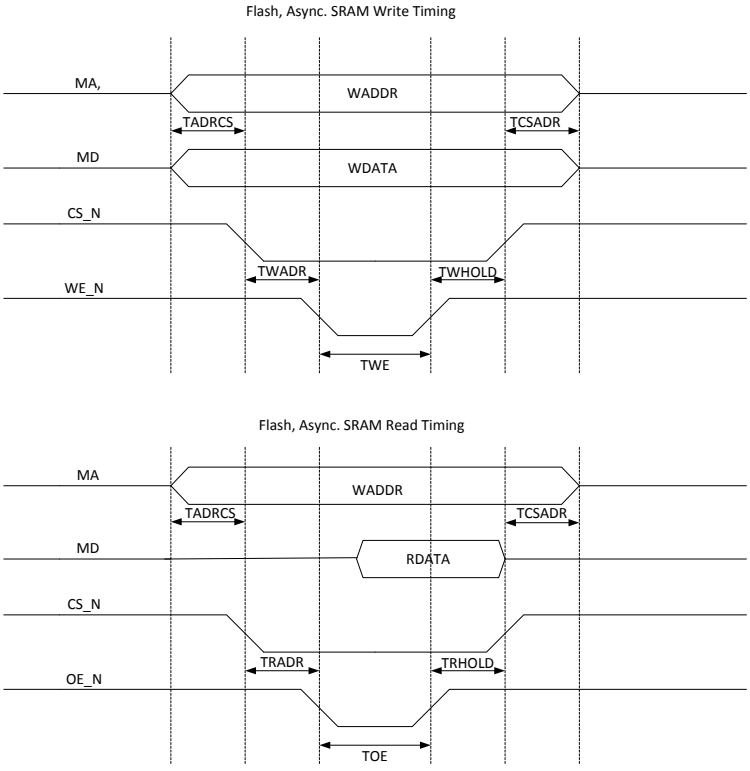



Fig. 3-15-2 Flash/SRAM/SDRAM Controller R/W waveform

Note : Total of width specified by TADRCS + TWADR/TRADR + TWE/TOE + TWHOLD/TRHOLD + TCSADR may not be fewer than 3 clock cycles

FLASH_CFG1: Flash Bank 1 Configuration (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:26 | RW | FLASH_ WIDTH1 | Number of Flash Chip Select1 data bus bits :<br>0 : 8 bits<br>1 : 16 bits (default)<br>2 : 32bits | 2'b01 |
| 25 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | CSADR1 | Address hold time from Chip Select in number of system clock cycles | 1'b1 |
| 23:22 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 21:20 | R/W | TWHOLD1 | Chip select and Data hold time from Write Enable in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | TRHOLD10 | Chip select hold time from Output Enable in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |
| 15:12 | R/W | TWE1 | Write Enable duration in number of system clock cycles | 4'b1111 |
| 11:8 | R/W | TOE10 | Output Enable duration in number of system clock cycles | 4'b1111 |
| 7:6 | R/W | TRADR1 | Read address setup in number of system clock cycles | 2'b10 |
| 5:4 | R/W | TWADR1 | Address setup in number of system clock cycles | 2'b10 |
| 3:2 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 1:0 | R/W | TADRCS1 | Address setup time prior to Chip Select in number of system clock cycles | 2'b01 |

ILL_ACC_ADDR: Illegal Access Address Capture (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31: 0 | RO | ILL_ACC_ADDR | If any bus masters (including CPU) issue illegal accesses (e.g. accessing to reserved memory space, non-double-word accessing to configuration registers), the address of the illegal transaction is captured in this register. An illegal interrupt will generate to indicate this exception. | 32'b0 |

ILL_ACC_TYPE: Illegal Access TYPE Capture (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO, W1C | ILL_INT_STATUS | 1 : Indicate the illegal access interrupt is pending<br>0 : Indicate the illegal access interrupt is cleared<br>Write 1 to this bit will clear both ILL_ACC_ADDR and ILL_ACC_TYPE registers and thus clear the ILL_INT_STATUS. | 1'b0 |
| 30 | RO | ILL_ACC_WR | Indicate the access type of the illegal access<br>1 : illegal access is write<br>0 : illegal access is read<br>This value is reset to 0 when ILL_ACC_ADDR is written | 1'b0 |
| 29:20 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 19:16 | RO | ILL_ACC_BSEL | Indicate the byte select of the illegal access<br>This value is reset to 0 when ILL_ACC_ADDR is written | 1'b0 |
| 15:11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10:8 | RO | ILL_IID | Indicate the initiator ID of the illegal access.<br>0 : CPU<br>1 : DMA<br>2 : Ethernet PDMA<br>3 : PPE<br>4 : Embedded WLAN MAC/BBP<br>5 : USB OTG | 3'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 6-7 : Reserved<br>This value is reset to 0 when ILL_ACC_ADDR is written | |
| 7:0 | RO | ILL_ACC_LEN | Indicate the access size of the illegal access. The unit is byte<br>This value is reset to 0 when ILL_ACC_ADDR is written. | 8'b0 |

## 3.16 NAND Flash Controller

### 3.16.1 Features

- Supports boot from NAND flash memory.
- Supports read / erase / page program NAND flash memory.
- Hardware ECC engine. (Hardware generating and software correcting)
- The internal 4Kbytes boot buffer can be used for another application after booting.
- Only supports NAND flash memory with 512-bytes page size and 8-bits data.
- Indirect access for special command.
- Configurable write protect register.
- Little / bit ending operation.

### 3.16.2 Block Diagram

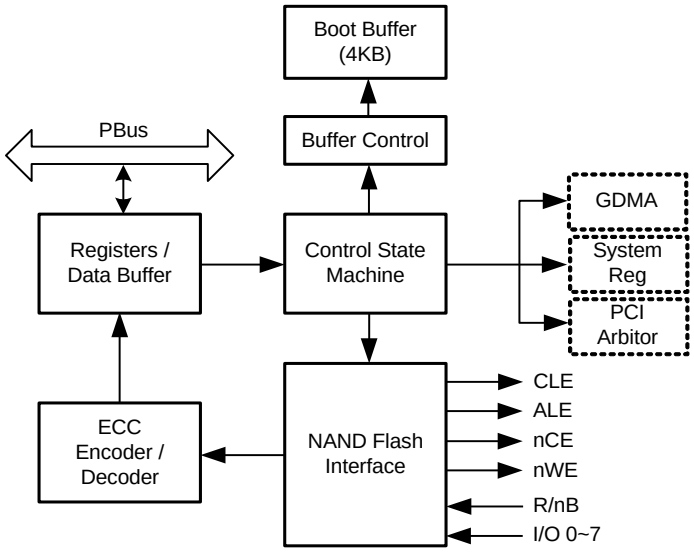



Fig. 3-16-1 NAND Flash Controller Block Diagram

### 3.16.3 Register Description (base: 0x1000.0800)

CTRL: NAND Flash Control Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 23:16 | RW | TWAITB | Dummy time period to wait busy signal = clock * (TWAIT+1) | 0 |
| 15:12 | RW | THOLD | Hold time duration = clock * (THOLD+1) | 0 |
| 11:8 | RW | TPERIOD | Period time duration = clock * (TPERIOD+1) | 0 |
| 7:4 | RW | TSETUP | Setup time duration = clock * (TSETUP+1) | 0 |
| 3:2 | RW | BURST_SIZE | 0: 1 DW<br>1: 2 DW<br>2: 4 DW<br>3: 8 DW | 0 |
| 1 | RW | DBUF_CLR | Clear data buffer | 0 |
| 0 | RW | WP | Write protect | 0 |

TRANS_CFG: Transfer Control Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 29:20 | RW | BNUM_DATA | Byte number of data to be transferred | 528 |
| 19 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 18:16 | RW | BNUM_ADDR | Byte number of address<br>Note: maximum number is 4 | 3 |
| 15:14 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 13:12 | RW | BNUM_CMD3 | Byte number of command 3 | 0 |
| 11:10 | RW | BNUM_CMD2 | Byte number of command 2 | 0 |
| 9:8 | RW | BNUM_CMD1 | Byte number of command 1 | 1 |
| 7 | RW | RESPB_DATA | Respect busy signal after data phase | 0 |
| 6 | RW | RESPB_ADDR | Respect busy signal after address phase | 0 |
| 5 | RW | RESPB_CMD3 | Respect busy signal after command 3 phase | 0 |
| 4 | RW | RESPB_CMD2 | Respect busy signal after command 2 phase | 0 |
| 3 | RW | ECC_ENA | ECC enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable<br>Note: In read transfer, HW ECC check function will be active. In write transfer, HW ECC generate function will be active. | 0 |
| 2 | RW | DMA_ENA | Issue a request to generic DMA when data read/write.<br>0: CPU will get/put data from/to data buffer.<br>1: GDMA will get/put data from/to data buffer. | 0 |
| 1 | RW | WR_TRANS | The transfer is read / write.<br>0: read<br>1: write | 0 |
| 0 | WC | KICK_TRANS | Kick the a NAND flash transfer<br>0: no transfer<br>1: kick a transfer<br>Note: this bit will auto clear | 0 |

CMD1: Command #1 Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 23:16 | RW | CMD1_BYTE3 | 3rd byte of command 1 | 0 |
| 15:8 | RW | CMD1_BYTE2 | 2nd byte of command 1 | 0 |
| 7:0 | RW | CMD1_BYTE1 | 1st byte of command 1 | 0 |

CMD2: Command #2 Register (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 23:16 | RW | CMD2_BYTE3 | 3rd byte of command 2 | 0 |
| 15:8 | RW | CMD2_BYTE2 | 2nd byte of command 2 | 0 |
| 7:0 | RW | CMD2_BYTE1 | 1st byte of command 2 | 0 |

CMD3: Command #3 Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 23:16 | RW | CMD3_BYTE3 | 3rd byte of command 3 | 0 |
| 15:8 | RW | CMD3_BYTE2 | 2nd byte of command 3 | 0 |
| 7:0 | RW | CMD3_BYTE1 | 1st byte of command 3 | 0 |

ADDR: Address Register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RW | ADD_BYTE4 | 4th byte of address | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:16 | RW | ADD_BYTE3 | 3rd byte of address | 0 |
| 15:8 | RW | ADD_BYTE2 | 2nd byte of address | 0 |
| 7:0 | RW | ADD_BYTE1 | 1st byte of address | 0 |

DATA: Data Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RW | DATA | Data for read / write | 0 |

ECC_ENC: ECC Encode Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 23:16 | R | ENC_BYTE2 | 3rd byte of ECC encode | 0 |
| 15:8 | R | ENC_BYTE1 | 2nd byte of ECC encode | 0 |
| 7:0 | R | ENC_BYTE0 | 1st byte of ECC encode | 0 |

STATUS: Status Register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 16:8 | R | DEC_BYTE | ECC decode fail byte address | 0 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 6:4 | R | DEC_BIT | ECC decode fail bit address | 0 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 2 | R | ND_RB_N | NAND flash ready<br>0: busy<br>1: ready | 1 |
| 1 | R | DEC_ERR | ECC decode check status<br>0: no error<br>1: correctable error or ecc error | 0 |
| 0 | R | BUSY | NAND flash controller is in busy.<br>0: idle<br>1: busy | 0 |

INT_STATUS (offset: 0x0c, default: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | - |
| 7 | W1C | RX_KICK_ERR | Rx buffer not empty at host kick | 0 |
| 6 | W1C | TX_KICK_ERR | Tx buffer not empty at host kick | 0 |
| 5 | W1C | RX_TRAS_ERR | Rx buffer not empty at transfer done | 0 |
| 4 | W1C | TX_TRAS_ERR | Tx buffer not empty at transfer done | 0 |
| 3 | W1C | ECC_ERR | ECC error | 0 |
| 2 | W1C | RX_BUF_RDY | Rx buffer read ready | 0 |
| 1 | W1C | TX_BUF_RDY | Tx buffer write ready | 0 |
| 0 | W1C | ND_DONE | Transfer done | 0 |

## 3.17 Frame Engine

### 3.17.1 Features

- Wire-speed (1000Mbps) Ethernet LAN/WAN NAT/NAPT routing
- L1-L7(content aware) policy table
- QoS support for multimedia traffic
- Support per flow/rule accounting/rate limiting
- Checksum/VLAN/PPPoE offload

#### 3.17.1.1 Network Interfaces

- One 10/100/1000Mbps Ethernet MACs with RGMII/MII interfaces
- One Scatter-Gather packet DMA with Rbus master interface
- One special port for packet processing engine

#### 3.17.1.2 PSE (Packet Switch Engine) Features

- Four external ports and one special PPE port (for packet bridging/routing)
- Efficient page-based buffer management
- QoS-aware queue management
- Supports 4 output queues/virtual WAN/LAN port
- WRR/Strict priority scheduling
- Egress rate limiting/shaping
- Non-blocking, wire-speed packet switching
- Flow control for no-packet-loss guarantee
- Emulated multicast support (can mirror a TX packet to CPU)
- Checksum offload, VLAN & PPPOE header insertion (by CDMA)
- Auto-Padding for sub-64B packets

#### 3.17.1.3 PPE Features

- Supports 512 policy rules for ACL, accounting and rate limiting.
- The policy rules can base on pre-route/post-route L1-L7 headers & contents (up-to 16 bytes)
- DDoS avoidance by rate limiting
- Supports stateful packet filtering (SPI)
- Supports IPv4 NAT/NAPT routing
- Supports 1/2/4/8/16K IPv4 NAPT flows
- Supports virtual server, port-triggering & port forwarding
- Supports any kind of IPv4 NAT(NAPT, Twice NAT)
- Supports 16 PPPoE sessions
- Supports cone-NAT, port-restricted NAT & Symmetric NAT
- Supports per rule or per flow accounting or rate limiting
- Patent-pending Flow Offloading technology for flexible/high performance packet L3/L4 packet processing
- Supports double VLAN tagging (Q-in-Q)
- Support VID Swapping
- Support multi-WAN load balancing with H/W S/W cooperation

PS : All the PPE features mentioned above require software porting to enable.

#### 3.17.1.4 QoS Related Features

- Packets can be classified based on L1-L7 headers/content
- Supports 4 TX queues
- Supports WRR scheduling for the two virtual WAN and LAN ports
- Supports egress rate limiting for each network port
- Powerful buffer reservation scheme to reserve packet buffer resources for multi-media traffic.

#### 3.17.1.5 Packet DMA (PDMA) Features

- Supports 4 TX descriptor rings and one RX descriptor ring
- Scatter/Gather DMA
- Delayed interrupt
- Configurable 4/8/16 32-bit word burst length

### 3.17.2 Block Diagram

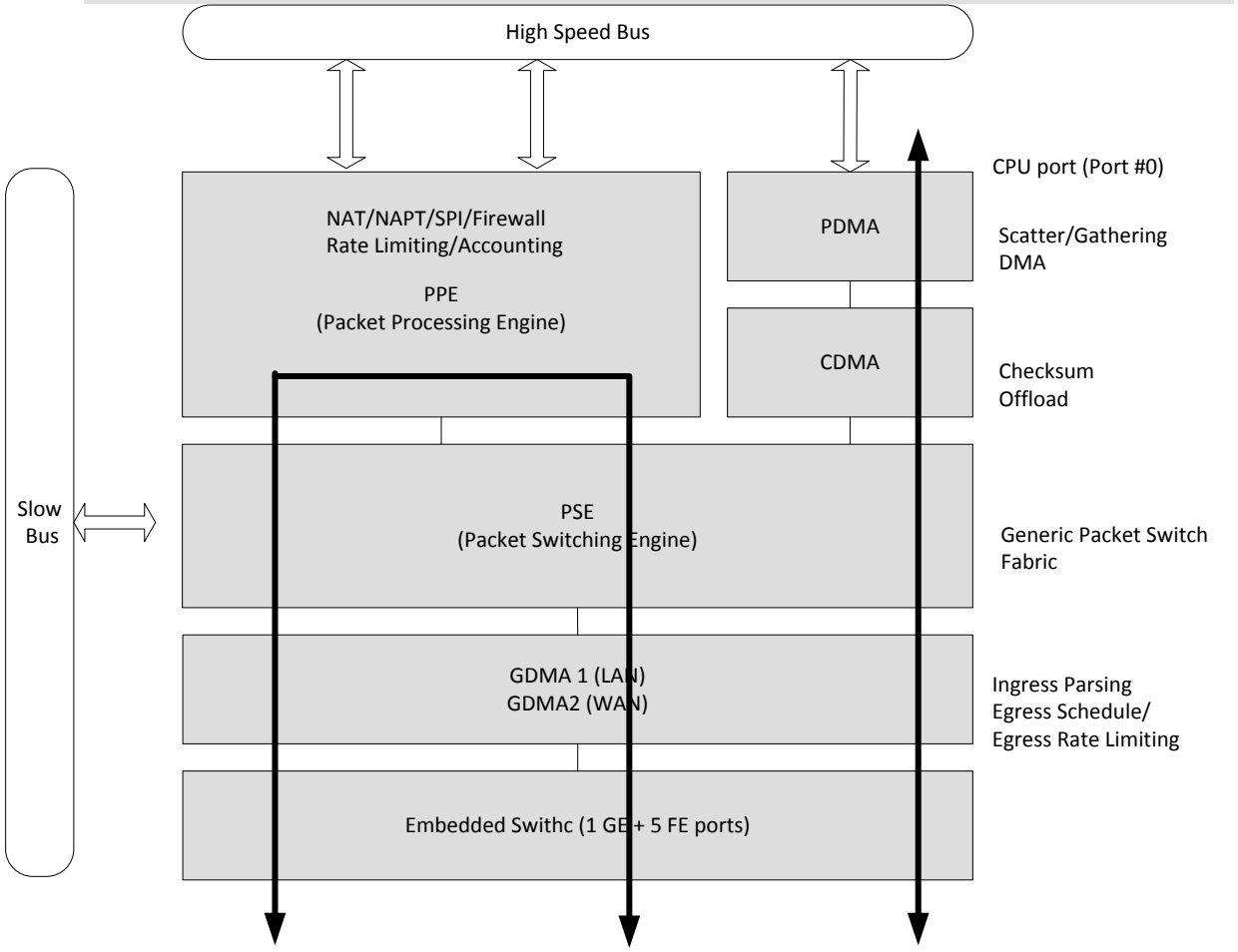



Fig. 3-17-1 Frame Engine Block Diagram

### 3.17.2.1 PDMA FIFO-like Ring Concept

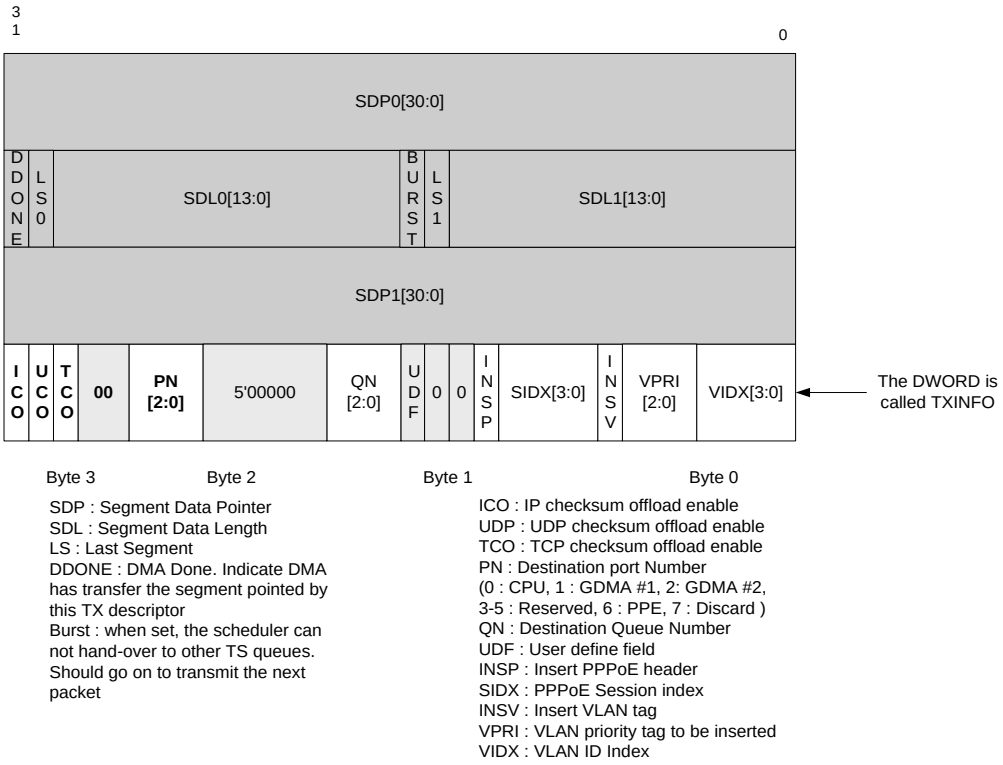
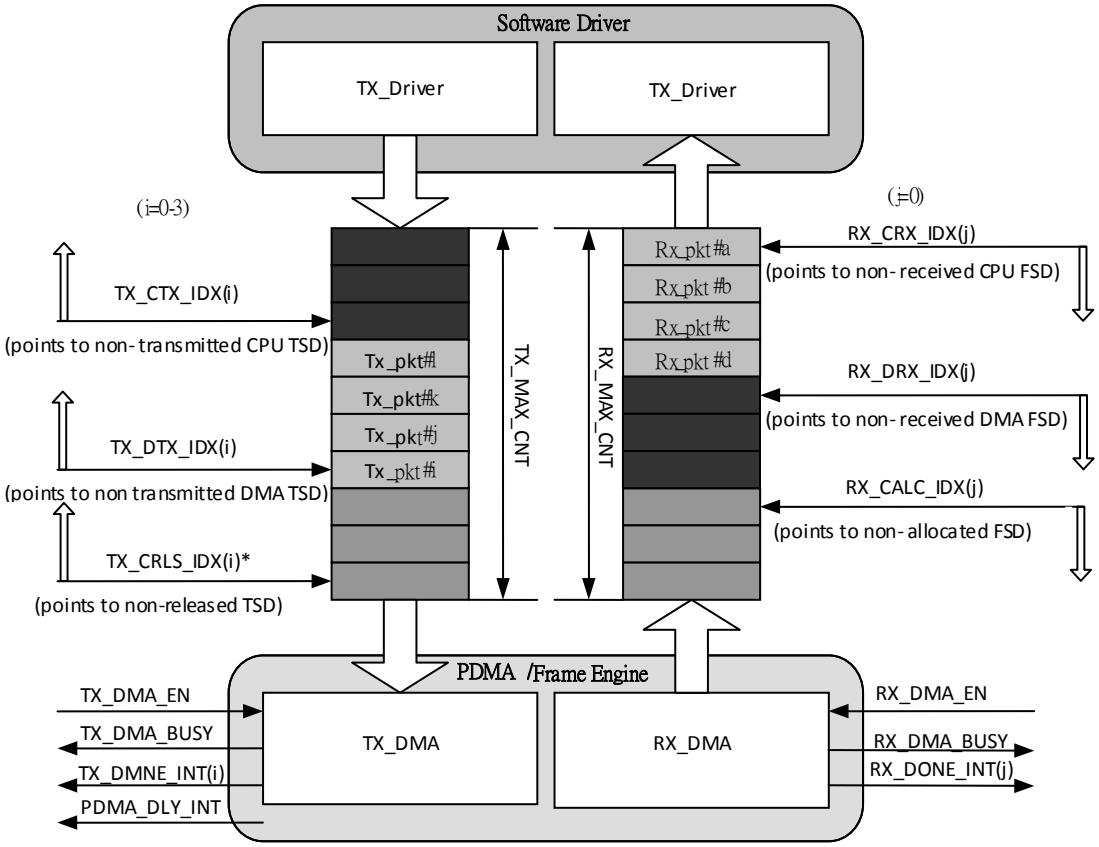



Fig. 3-17-2 PDMA FIFO-like Ring Concept

### 3.17.2.2 PDMA Descriptor Format




Note1: TX_CRLSIDX(i) and RX_CRXIDX(i) are not in
PDMA hardware they are resident in CPUs Local memory
Note2:
TXQ0: GE Mac low queue RXQ0: For GE MAC receive
TXQ1: GE Mac high queue

Fig. 3-17-3 PDMA TX Descriptor Format

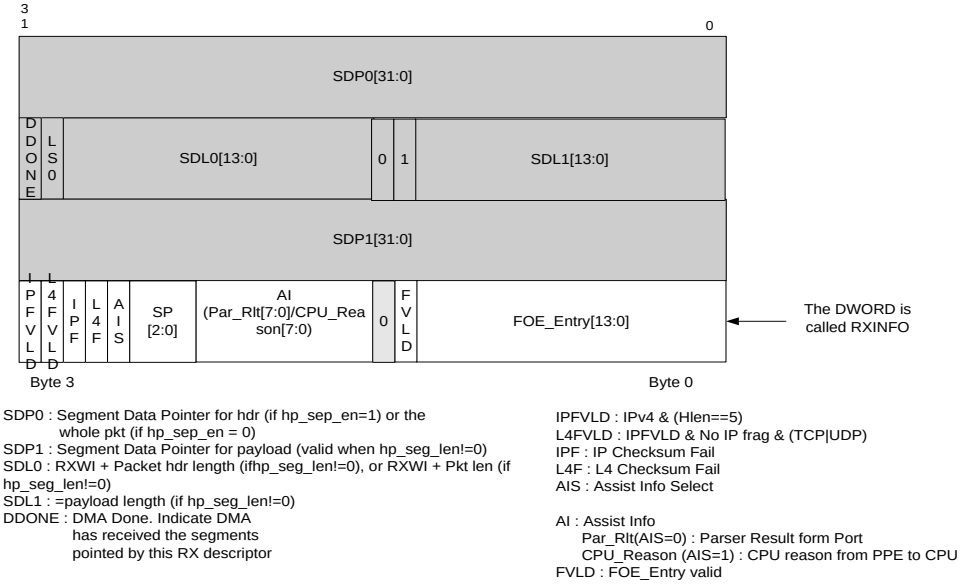



Fig. 3-17-4 PDMA RX Descriptor Format

### 3.17.3 Register Description (base: 0x1010.0000)

#### 3.17.3.1 Register Description -GE Port (base: 0x1010.0000)

MDIO_ACCESS: MDIO Access (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | WSC | MD_CMD_TRG | MDIO command trigger. This bit is cleared by hardware after command is completed.<br>1 : Read/write operation ongoing<br>0 : Read/write operation complete | 1'b0 |
| 30 | WO | MD_WR | When set, this bit tells the PHY that this will be a Write operation using MD_DATA register. If this bit is not set, this will be a Read operation, placing the data in MD_DATA register.<br>1 : Write operation.<br>0 : Read operation. | 1'b0 |
| 29 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 28:24 | R/W | MD_PHY_ADDR | Address of PHY device | 5'b0 |
| 23:21 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 20:16 | R/W | MD_REG_ADDR | Register addresses within PHY device | 5'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | MD_DATA | PHY register read/write data | 16'b0 |

MDIO_CFG1：Reserved (offset: 0x04)

FE_GLO_CFG: Frame Engine Global Configuration (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | EXT_VLAN | Extended VLAN type | 16'h8100 |
| 15:8 | R/W | US_CYC_CNT | 1us timer count in unit of clock cycle. For example, if frame engine is running at 133MHz, set this register to 8'd132. | 8'd132 |
| 7:4 | R/W | L2_SPACE | L2 space. Unit is 8 bytes | 4'h8 |
| 3:0 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

FE_RST_GLO: Frame Engine Global Reset (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | FC_DROP_CNT | Flow control drop packet count. | 16'b0 |
| 15:1 | - | - | Reserved | 15'b0 |
| 0 | WO | PSE_RESET | PSE reset<br>Write 1 to reset PSE<br>Write 0 to disable reset PSE | 1'b0 |

FE_INT_STATUS: Frame Engine Interrupt Status (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | CNT_PPE_AF | PPE Counter Table Almost Full<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 30 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | CNT_GDM_AF | GDMA 1 &2 Counter Table Almost Full<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 28:25 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 26 | R/W | PSE_P2_FC | PSE port2 (GDMA 2) flow control asserted.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 25 | R/W | GDM_CRC_DROP | GDMA 1 & 2 discard a packet due to CRC error<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | PSE_BUF_DROP | PSE discards a packet due to buffer sharing limitation (flow control)<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 23 | R/W | GDM_OTHER_DROP | GDMA 1 & 2 discard a packet due to other reason (e.g. too short, too long, FIFO overflow, checksum error,.., etc.)<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 22 | R/W | PSE_P1_FC | PSE port1 (GDMA 1) flow control asserted.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 21 | R/W | PSE_P0_FC | PSE port0 (CDMA) flow control asserted.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 20 | R/W | PSE_FQ_EMPTY | PSE free Q empty threshold reached & forced drop condition occurred.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | TX_COHERENT | TX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 16 | R/W | RX_COHERENT | RX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT3 | Tx queue#3 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT2 | Tx queue#2 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt. | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Read to get the raw interrupt status | |
| 9 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT1 | Tx queue#1 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT0 | Tx queue#0 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 7:3 | - | - | Reserved | 5'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DONE_INT0 | Packet receive interrupt.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | TX_DLY_INT | Delayed version of TX_DONE_INT0 and TX_DONE_INT1. Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | RX_DLY_INT | Delayed version of RX_DONE_INT0.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |

FE_INT_ENABLE: Frame Engine Interrupt Enable (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | CNT_PPE_AF | PPE Counter Table Almost Full<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 30 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | CNT_GDM_AF | GDMA 1 & 2 Counter Table Almost Full<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 1'b0 |
| 28:27 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 26 | R/W | PSE_P2_FC | PSE port2 (GDMA2) flow control asserted.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 25 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | PSE_BUF_DROP | PSE discards a packet due to buffer sharing limitation (flow control)<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 23 | R/W | GDM_OTHER_DROP | GDMA 1 & 2 discard a packet due to other reason (e.g. too short, too long, FIFO overflow, checksum error,.., etc.)<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 22 | R/W | PSE_P1_FC | PSE port1 (GDMA1) flow control asserted.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 21 | R/W | PSE_P0_FC | PSE port0 (CDMA) flow control asserted.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 20 | R/W | PSE_FQ_EMPTY | PSE free Q empty threshold reached & forced drop condition occurred.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 19-18 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | TX_COHERENT | TX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 16 | R/W | RX_COHERENT | RX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT3 | Tx queue#3 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT2 | Tx queue#2 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT1 | Tx queue#1 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT0 | Tx queue#0 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 7:3 | - | - | Reserved | 5'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DONE_INT0 | Packet receives interrupt.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | TX_DLY_INT | Delayed version of TX_DONE_INT0 and 1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | RX_DLY_INT | Delayed version of RX_DONE_INT0.<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 1'b0 |

MDIO_CFG2：Reserved (offset: 0x 18)

FOE_TS_T: Time Stamp (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R | PSE_FQ_PCNT | PSE free Q page count | 8'hff |
| 23:16 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | FOE_TS_T | Time stamp<br>Note: Time Stamp unit is 1 sec. | 16'b0 |

### 3.17.3.2 Register Description – GDMA 1 & 2 (base: 0x1010.0020)

GDMA_FWD_CFG: GDMA Forwarding Configuration (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23 | R/W | GDM_DROP_256B | A Special mode to drop packets with payload > 256 bytes.<br>0 : Drop packets according to standard Ethernet frame length limitation.<br>1 : Drop packets with payload >256 bytes | 1'b0 |
| 22 | R/W | GDM_ICS_EN | IPv4 header checksum check enable | 1'b1 |
| 21 | R/W | GDM_TCS_EN | TCP checksum check enable | 1'b1 |
| 20 | R/W | GDM_UCS_EN | UDP checksum check enable | 1'b1 |
| 19 | R/W | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | GDM_DISPAD | 0 : Enable GDMA 1 & 2 Tx padding function.<br>1 : Disable GDMA 1 & 2 Tx padding function. | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | GDM_DISCRC | 0 : Enable GDMA 1 & 2 Tx CRC generation.<br>1 : Disable GDMA 1 & 2 Tx CRC generation. | 1'b0 |
| 16 | R/W | GDM_STRPCRC | 0 : Disable GDMA 1 & 2 automatic Rx CRC stripping<br>1 : Enable GDMA 1 & 2 automatic Rx CRC stripping | 1'b1 |
| 15 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14:12 | R/W | GDM_UFRC_P | GDMA1 & 2 My MAC uni-cast frames destination port<br>3'd0 : CPU<br>3'd1 : GDMA1<br>3'd2 : GDMA2<br>3'd6 : PPE<br>3'd7 : Discard<br>Others: Reserved | 3'b111 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10:8 | R/W | GDM_BFRC_P | GDMA1 & 2 broadcast MAC address frames destination port<br>3'd0 : CPU<br>3'd1 : GDMA1<br>3'd2 : GDMA2<br>3'd6 : PPE<br>3'd7 : Discard<br>Others: Reserved | 3'b111 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | GDM_MFRC_P | GDMA1 & 2 multi-cast MAC address frames destination port<br>3'd0 : CPU<br>3'd1 : GDMA1<br>3'd2 : GDMA2<br>3'd6 : PPE<br>3'd7 : Discard<br>Others: Reserved | 3'b111 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | GDM_OFRC_P | GDMA1 & 2 other MAC address frames destination port<br>3'd0 : CPU<br>3'd1 : GDMA1<br>3'd2 : GDMA2<br>3'd6 : PPE<br>3'd7 : Discard<br>Others: Reserved | 3'b111 |

GDMA1_SCH_CFG: GDMA1 Scheduling Configuration (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 25:24 | R/W | GDM1_SCH_MOD | 2'b00 : WRR<br>2'b01 : Strict Priority, Q3>Q2>Q1>Q0<br>2'b10 : Mixed, Q3>WRR(Q2,Q1,Q0)<br>2'b11 : Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 23:15 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:12 | R/W | GDM1_WT_Q3 | Q3's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b011 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10:8 | R/W | GDM1_WT_Q2 | Q2's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b010 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6:4 | R/W | GDM1_WT_Q1 | Q1's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b001 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | GDM1_WT_Q0 | Q0's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b0 |

GDMA1_SHPR_CFG: GDMA1 Output Shaper Configuration (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:25 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | GDM1_SHPR_EN | GDMA1 output shaper enable.<br>0 : Disable<br>1 : Enable | 1'b0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | GDM1_BK_SIZE | GDMA1 output shaper maximum bucket size. Unit is 1kB. | 8'b0 |
| 15:14 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 13:0 | R/W | GDM1_TK_RATE | GDMA1 output shaper token rate. Unit is 8B/ms. | 14'b0 |

GDMA_MAC_ADRL: GDMA 1 & 2 MAC Address LSB (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | GDM1_MY_MAC_L | GDMA 1 & 2 MAC address bit 31-0 | 32'b0 |

GDMA_MAC_ADRH: GDMA 1 & 2 MAC Address MSB (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | GDM1_MY_MAC_H | GDMA 1 & 2 MAC address bit 47-32 | 16'b0 |

### 3.17.3.3 Register Description - PSE (base: 0x1010.0040)

PSE_FQ_CFG: PSE_FQ_CFG Register (offset:0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | FQ_MAX_PCNT | Maximum free Q page count. Please reset PSE after re-programming this register. | 8'h80 |
| 23:16 | R/W | FQ_FC_RLS | Free Q flow control release threshold. | 8'h50 |
| 15:8 | R/W | FQ_FC_ASRT | Free Q flow control assertion threshold. | 8'h40 |
| 7:0 | R/W | FQ_FC_DROP | Free Q empty threshold. If one input port is FC asserted and this threshold is reached, PSE will drop any new coming frame from this port. | 8'h00 |

CDMA_FC_CFG: CDMA_FC_CFG Register (offset:0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:29 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | P0_SHARING | Allows high priority Q to share low priority Q's reserved pages.<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 1'b1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 27:24 | R/W | P0_HQ_DEF | Bit map definition of high priority Q. '1' presents high priority Q, and '0' presents low priority Q.<br>bit 27: Q3 priority definition<br>bit 26: Q2 priority definition<br>bit 25: Q1 priority definition<br>bit 24: Q0 priority definition | 4'b1100 |
| 23:16 | R/W | P0_HQ_RESV | Reserved page count for high priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 15:8 | R/W | P0_LQ_RESV | Reserved page count for low priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 7:0 | R/W | P0_IQ_ASRT | Virtual input Q FC assertion threshold. | 8'h10 |

GDMA1_FC_CFG: GDMA1_FC_CFG Register (offset:0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:29 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | P1_SHARING | Allows high priority Q to share low priority Q's reserved pages.<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 1'b1 |
| 27:24 | R/W | P1_HQ_DEF | Bit map definition of high priority Q. '1' presents high priority Q, and '0' presents low priority Q.<br>bit 27: Q3 priority definition<br>bit 26: Q2 priority definition<br>bit 25: Q1 priority definition<br>bit 24: Q0 priority definition | 4'b1100 |
| 23:16 | R/W | P1_HQ_RESV | Reserved page count for high priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 15:8 | R/W | P1_LQ_RESV | Reserved page count for low priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 7:0 | R/W | P1_IQ_ASRT | Virtual input Q FC assertion threshold. | 8'h10 |

GDMA2_FC_CFG: GDMA2_FC_CFG Register (offset:0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:29 | - | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | P2_SHARING | Allows high priority Q to share low priority Q's reserved pages.<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 1'b1 |
| 27:24 | R/W | P2_HQ_DEF | Bit map definition of high priority Q. '1' presents high priority Q, and '0' presents low priority Q.<br>bit 27: Q3 priority definition<br>bit 26: Q2 priority definition<br>bit 25: Q1 priority definition<br>bit 24: Q0 priority definition | 4'b1100 |
| 23:16 | R/W | P2_HQ_RESV | Reserved page count for high priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 15:8 | R/W | P2_LQ_RESV | Reserved page count for low priority Q. | 8'h10 |
| 7:0 | R/W | P2_IQ_ASRT | Virtual input Q FC assertion threshold. | 8'h10 |

CDMA_OQ_STA: CDMA_OQ_STA Register (offset:0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | P0_OQ3_PCNT | CDMA output Q3 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 23:16 | RO | P0_OQ2_PCNT | CDMA output Q2 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | RO | P0_OQ1_PCNT | CDMA output Q1 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | P0_OQ0_PCNT | CDMA output Q0 page count. | 8'b0 |

GDMA1_OQ_STA: GDMA1_OQ_STA Register (offset:0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | P1_OQ3_PCNT | GDMA1 output Q3 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 23:16 | RO | P1_OQ2_PCNT | GDMA1 output Q2 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | RO | P1_OQ1_PCNT | GDMA1 output Q1 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | P1_OQ0_PCNT | GDMA1 output Q0 page count. | 8'b0 |

GDMA2_OQ_STA: GDMA2_OQ_STA Register (offset:0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | P2_OQ3_PCNT | GDMA2 output Q3 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 23:16 | RO | P2_OQ2_PCNT | GDMA2 output Q2 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | RO | P2_OQ1_PCNT | GDMA2 output Q1 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | P2_OQ0_PCNT | GDMA2 output Q0 page count. | 8'b0 |

PSE_IQ_STA: PSE_IQ_STA Register (offset:0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | P6_OQ0_PCNT | PPE output Q0 page count. | 8'b0 |
| 23:16 | RO | P2_IQ_PCNT | GDMA2 virtual input Q page count. | 8'b0 |
| 15:8 | RO | P1_IQ_PCNT | GDMA1 virtual input Q page count. | 8'b0 |
| 7:0 | RO | P0_IQ_PCNT | CDMA virtual input Q page count. | 8'b0 |

### 3.17.3.4 Register Description – GDMA2 (base: 0x1010.0060)

GDMA2_FWD_CFG: Reserved (offset: 0x00)

GDMA2_SCH_CFG: GDMA2 Scheduling Configuration (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 25:24 | R/W | GDM2_SCH_MOD | 2'b00 : WRR<br>2'b01 : Strict Priority, Q3>Q2>Q1>Q0<br>2'b10 : Mixed, Q3>WRR(Q2,Q1,Q0)<br>2'b11 : Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 23:15 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:12 | R/W | GDM2_WT_Q3 | Q3's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b011 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10:8 | R/W | GDM2_WT_Q2 | Q2's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b010 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | GDM2_WT_Q1 | Q1's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b001 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | GDM2_WT_Q0 | Q0's weight<br>3'd0 : weight = 1<br>3'd1 : weight = 2<br>3'd2 : weight = 4<br>3'd3 : weight = 8<br>3'd4 : weight = 16 | 3'b0 |

GDMA2_SHPR_CFG: GDMA2 Output Shaper Configuration (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:25 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | GDM2_SHPR_EN | GDMA2 output shaper enable.<br>0 : Disable<br>1 : Enable | 1'b0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | GDM2_BK_SIZE | GDMA2 output shaper maximum bucket size. Unit is 1kB. | 8'b0 |
| 15:14 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 13:0 | R/W | GDM2_TK_RATE | GDMA2 output shaper token rate. Unit is 8B/ms. | 14'b0 |

### 3.17.3.5 Register Description - CPU Port (base:0x1010.0080)

CDMA_CSG_CFG: CDMA_CSG_CFG Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | INS_VLAN_ | Inserted VLAN type | 16'h8100 |
| 15:3 | - | - | Reserved | 13'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | ICS_GEN_EN | IPv4 header checksum generation enable | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | TCS_GEN_EN | TCP checksum generation enable | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | UCS_GEN_EN | UDP checksum generation enable | 1'b0 |

CDMA_SCH_CFG: CDMA_SCH_CFG Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | - | - | Reserved | 6'b0 |
| 25:24 | R/W | CDM_SCH_MOD | 2'b00: WRR<br>2'b01: Strict Priority, Q3>Q2>Q1>Q0<br>2'b10: Mixed, Q3>WRR(Q2,Q1,Q0)<br>2'b11: Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 23:15 | - | - | Reserved | 9'b0 |
| 14:12 | R/W | CDM_WT_Q3 | Q3's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b011 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 10:8 | R/W | CDM_WT_Q2 | Q2's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b010 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | CDM_WT_Q1 | Q1's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b001 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2:0 | R/W | CDM_WT_Q0 | Q0's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b000 |

PPPOE_SID_0001: PPPOE_SID_0001 Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID1 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#1 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID0 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#0 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_0203: PPPOE_SID_0203 Register (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID3 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#3 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID2 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#2 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_0405: PPPOE_SID_0405 Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID5 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#5 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID4 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#4 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_0607: PPPOE_SID_0607 Register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID7 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#7 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID6 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#6 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_0809: PPPOE_SID_0809 Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID9 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#9 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID8 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#8 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_1011: PPPOE_SID_1011 Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID11 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#11 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID10 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#10 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_1213: PPPOE_SID_1213 Register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID13 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#13 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID12 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#12 | 16'b0 |

PPPOE_SID_1415: PPPOE_SID_1415 Register (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | PPPOE_SID15 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#15 | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PPPOE_SID14 | PPPoE Session ID for SID INDEX#14 | 16'b0 |

VLAN_ID_0001: VLAN_ID_0001 Register (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID0 | VLAN ID of VLAN1 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID1 | VLAN ID of VLAN0 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_0203: VLAN_ID_0203 Register (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID2 | VLAN ID of VLAN2 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID3 | VLAN ID of VLAN3 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_0405: VLAN_ID_0405 Register (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID4 | VLAN ID of VLAN4 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID5 | VLAN ID of VLAN5 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_0607: VLAN_ID_0607 Register (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID6 | VLAN ID of VLAN6 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID7 | VLAN ID of VLAN7 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_0809: VLAN_ID_0809 Register (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID8 | VLAN ID of VLAN8 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID9 | VLAN ID of VLAN9 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_1011: VLAN_ID_1011 Register (offset: 0x3C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID10 | VLAN ID of VLAN10 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID11 | VLAN ID of VLAN11 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_1213: VLAN_ID_1213 Register (offset: 0x40)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | VLAN_ID12 | VLAN ID of VLAN12 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VLAN_ID13 | VLAN ID of VLAN13 | 12'b0 |

VLAN_ID_14_15: VLAN_ID_14_15 Register (offset: 0x44)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 276 | R/W | VLAN_ID_14 | VLAN ID of VLAN14 | 12'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 110 | R/W | VLAN_ID_15 | VLAN ID of VLAN15 | 12'b0 |

### 3.17.3.6 Register Description - PDMA (base: 0x1010.0100)

PDMA_GLO_CFG: PDMA_GLO_CFG Register (offset:0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 29:16 | R/W | HDR_SEG_LEN | Specify the header segment size in byte to support RX header/ payload scattering function, when set to a non-zero value. When set to zero, the header/payload scattering feature is disabled. | 14'b0 |
| 15:8 | - | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | TX_WB_DDONE | 0 :Disable TX_DMA writing back DDONE into TXD<br>1 : Enable TX_DMA writing back DDONE into TXD | 1'b1 |
| 5:4 | R/W | PDMA_BT_SIZE | Define the burst size of PDMA<br>0 : 4 DWORD (16bytes)<br>1 : 8 DWORD (32 bytes)<br>2 : 16 DWORD (64 bytes)<br>3 : Reserved | 2'd2 |
| 3 | RO | RX_DMA_BUSY | 1 : RX_DMA is busy<br>0 : RX_DMA is not busy | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DMA_EN | 1 : Enable RX_DMA<br>0 : Disable RX_DMA (when disabled, RX_DMA will finish the current receiving packet, then stop.) | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | TX_DMA_BUSY | 1 : TX_DMA is busy<br>0 : TX_DMA is not busy | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | TX_DMA_EN | 1 : Enable TX_DMA<br>0 : Disable TX_DMA (when disabled, TX_DMA will finish the current sending packet, then stop.) | 1'b0 |

PDMA_RST_IDX: PDMA_RST_IDX Register (offset:0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | 15'b0 |
| 16 | W1C | RST_DRX_IDX0 | Write 1 to reset to RX_DRX_IDX0 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 15:4 | - | - | Reserved | 12'b0 |
| 3 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX3 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DTX_IDX3 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 2 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX2 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DTX_IDX2 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 1 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX1 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DTX_IDX1 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 0 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX0 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DTX_IDX0 to 0 | 1'b0 |

PDMA_SCH_CFG: PDMA_SCH_CFG Register (offset: 0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | - | - | Reserved | 7'b0 |
| 25:24 | R/W | PDM_SCH_MOD | 2'b00: WRR<br>2'b01: Strict Priority, Q3>Q2>Q1>Q0<br>2'b10: Mixed, Q3>WRR(Q2,Q1,Q0)<br>2'b11: Reserved | 2'b00 |
| 23:15 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:12 | R/W | PDM_WT_Q3 | Q1's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b011 |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10:8 | R/W | PDM_WT_Q2 | Q0's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b010 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | PDM_WT_Q1 | Q1's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b001 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 2:0 | R/W | PDM_WT_Q0 | Q0's weight<br>3'd0: weight = 1<br>3'd1: weight = 2<br>3'd2: weight = 4<br>3'd3: weight = 8<br>3'd4: weight = 16 | 3'b000 |

DLY_INT_CFG: DLY_INT_CFG Register (offset: 0x0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | TXDLY_INT_EN | 1: Enable TX delayed interrupt mechanism.<br>0: Disable TX delayed interrupt mechanism. | 1'b0 |
| 30:24 | RW | TXMAX_PINT | Specified Max # of pended interrupts.<br>When the # of pended interrupts equal or grater than the value specified here or interrupt pending time reach the limit (See bellow), an Final TX_DLY_INT is generated.<br>Set to 0 will disable this feature | 7'b0 |
| 23:16 | RW | TXMAX_PTIME | Specified Max pending time for the internal TX_DONE_INT0 and TX_DONE_INT1. When the pending time equal or greater TXMAX_PTIME x 20us or the # of pended TX_DONE_INT0 and TX_DONE_I equal or greater than TXMAX_PINT (see above), an Final TX_DLY_INT is generated<br>Set to 0 will disable this feature | 8'b0 |
| 15 | RW | RXDLY_INT_EN | 1: Enable RX delayed interrupt mechanism.<br>0: Disable RX delayed interrupt mechanism. | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | RW | RXMAX_PINT | Specified Max # of pended interrupts.<br>When the # of pended interrupts equal or grater than the value specified here or interrupt pending time reach the limit (See bellow), an Final RX_DLY_INT is generated.<br>Set to 0 will disable this feature | 7'b0 |
| 7:0 | RW | RXMAX_PTIME | Specified Max pending time for the internal RX_DONE_INT.<br>When the pending time equal or grater RXMAX_PTIME x 20us or, the # of pended RX_DONE_INT equal or grater than RXMAX_PCNT (see above), an Final RX_DLY_INT is generated<br>Set to 0 will disable this feature. | 8'b0 |

TX_BASE_PTR0: TX_BASE_PTR0 Register (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TX_BASE_PTR0 | Point to the base address of TX_Ring0 (4-DWORD aligned address) | 32'b0 |

TX_MAX_CNT0: TX_MAX_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_MAX_CNT0 | The maximum number of TXD count in TXD_Ring0. | 12'b0 |

TX_CTX_IDX0: TX_CTX_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_CTX_IDX0 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring0 CPU wants to use | 12'b0 |

TX_DTX_IDX0: TX_DTX_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | RO | TX_DTX_IDX0 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring0 DMA wants to use | 12'b0 |

TX_BASE_PTR1: TX_BASE_PTR1 Register (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TX_BASE_PTR1 | Point to the base address of TX_Ring1 (4-DWORD aligned address) | 32'b0 |

TX_MAX_CNT1: TX_MAX_CNT1 Register (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_MAX_CNT1 | The maximum number of TXD count in TXD_Ring1. | 12'b0 |

TX_CTX_IDX1: TX_CTX_IDX1 Register (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_CTX_IDX1 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring1 CPU wants to use | 12'b0 |

TX_DTX_IDX1: TX_DTX_IDX1 Register (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | RO | TX_DTX_IDX1 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring1 DMA wants to use | 0 |

RX_BASE_PTR0: RX_BASE_PTR0 Register (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | RX_BASE_PTR0 | Point to the base address of RXD Ring #0. It should be a 4-DWORD aligned address | 0 |

RX_MAX_CNT0: RX_MAX_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | R- | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | RX_MAX_CNT0 | The maximum number of RXD count in RXD Ring #0. | 0 |

RX_CALC_IDX0: RX_CALC_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | RX_CALC_IDX0 | Point to the next RXD CPU wants to allocate to RXD Ring #0. | 0 |

RX _DRX_IDX0: RX _DRX_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x3C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | RO | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | RO | RX_DRX_IDX0 | Point to the next RXD DMA wants to use in RXD Ring#0. It should be a 4-DWORD aligned address. | 0 |

TX_BASE_PTR2: TX_BASE_PTR2 Register (offset: 0x40)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TX_BASE_PTR2 | Point to the base address of TX_Ring2 (4-DWORD aligned address) | 32'b0 |

TX_MAX_CNT2: TX_MAX_CNT2 Register (offset: 0x44)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_MAX_CNT2 | The maximum number of TXD count in TXD_Ring2. | 12'b0 |

TX_CTX_IDX2: TX_CTX_IDX2 Register (offset:0x48)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_CTX_IDX2 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring2 CPU wants to use | 12'b0 |

TX_DTX_IDX2: TX_DTX_IDX2 Register (offset: 0x4C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | RO | TX_DTX_IDX2 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring2 DMA wants to use | 0 |

TX_BASE_PTR3: TX_BASE_PTR3 Register (offset: 0x50)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TX_BASE_PTR3 | Point to the base address of TX_Ring3 (4-DWORD aligned address) | 32'b0 |

TX_MAX_CNT3: TX_MAX_CNT3 Register (offset: 0x54)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_MAX_CNT3 | The maximum number of TXD count in TXD_Ring3. | 12'b0 |

TX_CTX_IDX3: TX_CTX_IDX3 Register (offset: 0x58)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_CTX_IDX3 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring3 CPU wants to use | 12'b0 |

TX_DTX_IDX3: TX_DTX_IDX3 Register (offset: 0x5C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | RO | TX_DTX_IDX3 | Point to the next TXD in TXD_Ring3 DMA wants to use | 0 |

PDMA_FC_CFG: PDMA_FC_CFG Register (offset: 0xF0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 29:24 | R/W | PDM_FC_DEF_Q3 | Q3 flow control pause condition<br>Bit[5]: pause Q3 when PSE P2 high Q full<br>Bit[4]: pause Q3 when PSE P2 low Q full<br>Bit[3]: pause Q3 when PSE P1 high Q full<br>Bit[2]: pause Q3 when PSE P1 low Q full<br>Bit[1]: pause Q3 when PSE P0 high Q full<br>Bit[0]: pause Q3 when PSE P0 low Q full | 6'b111111 |
| 23:22 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 21:16 | R/W | PDM_FC_DEF_Q2 | Q2 flow control pause condition<br>Bit[5]: pause Q2 when PSE P2 high Q full<br>Bit[4]: pause Q2 when PSE P2 low Q full<br>Bit[3]: pause Q2 when PSE P1 high Q full<br>Bit[2]: pause Q2 when PSE P1 low Q full<br>Bit[1]: pause Q2 when PSE P0 high Q full | 6'b111111 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Bit[0]: pause Q2 when PSE P0 low Q full | |
| 15:14 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 13:8 | R/W | PDM_FC_DEF_Q1 | Q1 flow control pause condition<br>Bit[5]: pause Q1 when PSE P2 high Q full<br>Bit[4]: pause Q1 when PSE P2 low Q full<br>Bit[3]: pause Q1 when PSE P1 high Q full<br>Bit[2]: pause Q1 when PSE P1 low Q full<br>Bit[1]: pause Q1 when PSE P0 high Q full<br>Bit[0]: pause Q1 when PSE P0 low Q full | 6'b111111 |
| 7:6 | - | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 5:0 | R/W | PDM_FC_DEF_Q0 | Q0 flow control pause condition<br>Bit[5]: pause Q0 when PSE P2 high Q full<br>Bit[4]: pause Q0 when PSE P2 low Q full<br>Bit[3]: pause Q0 when PSE P1 high Q full<br>Bit[2]: pause Q0 when PSE P1 low Q full<br>Bit[1]: pause Q0 when PSE P0 high Q full<br>Bit[0]: pause Q0 when PSE P0 low Q full | 6'b111111 |

### 3.17.3.7 Register Description – Frame Engine Counters (base: 0x1010.0400)

| Counter & Meter Table | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0x000 | PPE_AC_BCNT0 | PPE Accounting Group #0 Byte Counter |
| 0x004 | PPE_AC_PCNT0 | PPE Accounting Group #0 Packet Counter |
| | … | … |
| 0x1F8 | PPE_AC_BCNT63 | PPE Accounting Group #63Byte Counter |
| 0x1FC | PPE_AC_PCNT63 | PPE Accounting Group #63 Packet Counter |
| 0x200 | PPE_MTR_CNT0 | - |
| | … | - |
| 0x2FC | PPE_MTR_CNT63 | - |
| 0x300 | GDMA_TX_GBCNT0 | Transmit good byte count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x304 | GDMA_TX_GPCNT0 | Transmit good pkt count for GDMA port#1&2<br>(not including flow control frames) |
| 0x308 | GDMA_TX_SKIPCNT0 | Transmit skip count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x30C | GDMA_TX_COLCNT0 | Transmit collision count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x310 – 0x31C | Reserved | - |
| 0x320 | GDMA_RX_GBCNT0 | Received good byte count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x324 | GDMA_RX_GPCNT0 | Received good pkt count for GDMA port#1&2<br>(not including flow control frames) |
| 0x328 | GDMA_RX_OERCNT0 | Received overflow error pkt count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x32C | GDMA_RX_FERCNT0 | Received FCS error pkt count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x330 | GDMA_RX_SERCNT0 | Received too short error pkt count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x334 | GDMA_RX_LERCNT0 | Received too long error pkt count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x338 | GDMA_RX_CERCNT0 | Received ip/tcp/udp checksum error pkt count for GDMA port#1&2 |
| 0x33C | Reserved | - |

## 3.18 Ethernet Switch

### 3.18.1 Features

- Support IEEE 802.3 full duplex flow control
- 5 10/100Mbps PHY + 1 10/100/1000Mbps RGMII/MII/Reverse MII
- Support Spanning Tree port states
- Support 1K-MAC address table with direct or XOR hash
- QoS
  - Four priorities queues per port
  - Packet classification based on incoming port, IEEE 802.1p or IP ToS/DSCP
  - Strict-Priority Queue (PQ) and Weighted Round Robin (WRR)
- VLAN
  - Port Base VLAN
  - Double VLAN tagging
  - 802.1q tag VLAN
  - 16 VIDs
- MAC address table read and write-able
- MAC security – Locking a MAC address to a incoming port
- MAC clone support – hash with VID
- IGMP support
- Broadcast storm prevention

### 3.18.2 Block Diagram

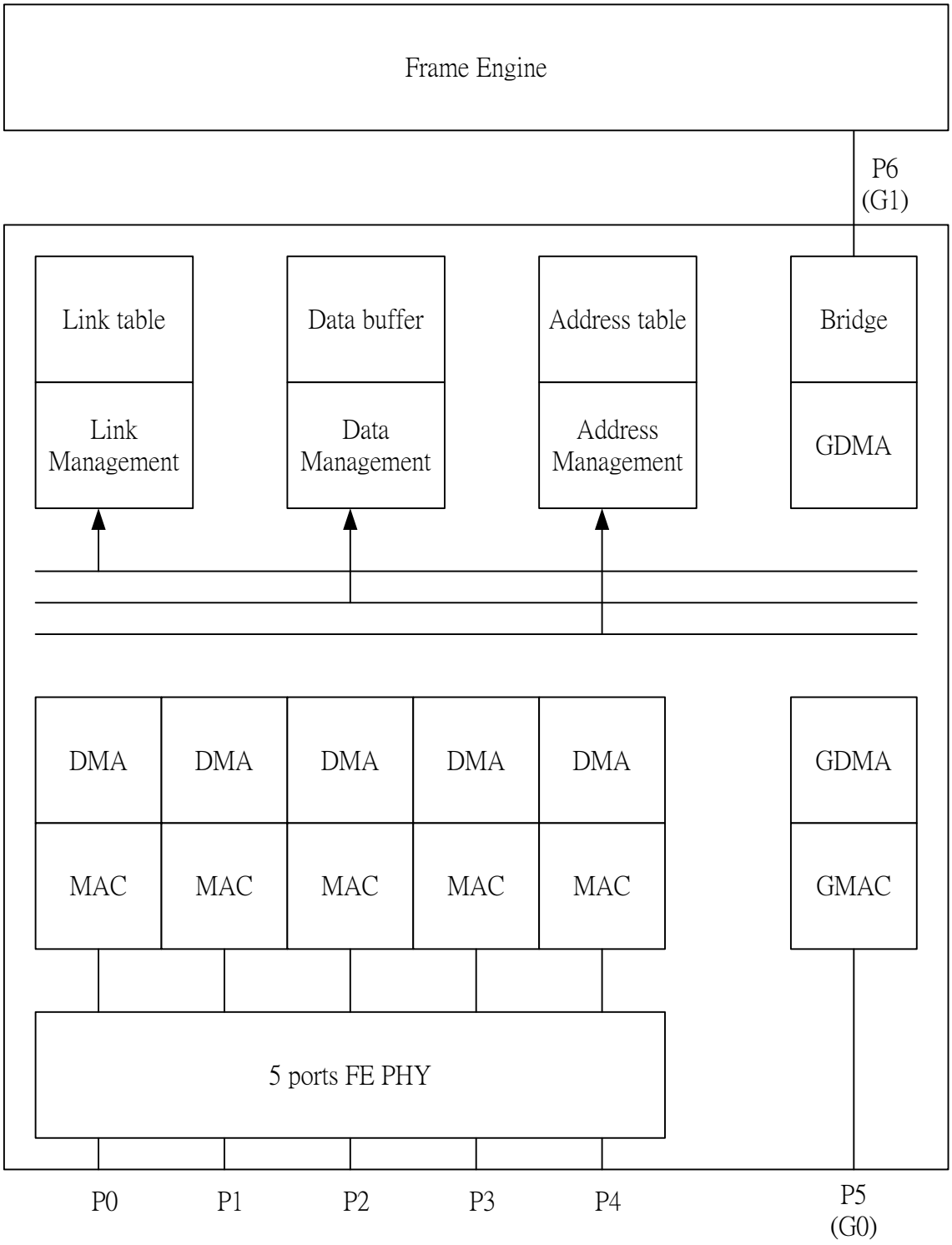



Fig. 3-18-1 Ethernet Switch Block Diagram

### 3.18.3 Register Description (base: 0x1011.0000)

ISR: Interrupt Status Register (offset: 0x00)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 29 | RO | WATCHDOG1_TMR _EXPIRED | P5 no transmit paqcket alert.<br>This bit indicating that P5 don't transmit packet for 3 seconds when P5 need to transmit packet. | 1'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | WATCHDOG0_TMR _EXPIRED | Abnormal Alert<br>This bit indicating that global queue block counts is less than buf_starvation_th for 3 seconds. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 27 | R/W | HAS_INTRUDER | Intruder Alert<br>This bit indicating that an unsecured packet is coming into a secured port. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 26 | R/W | PORT_ST_CHG | Port status change<br>Any port from link status change. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 25 | R/W | BC_STORM | BC storm<br>The device is undergoing broadcast storm. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | MUST_DROP_LAN | Queue exhausted<br>The global queue is used up and all packets are dropped. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 23 | R/W | GLOBAL_QUE_ FULL | Global Queue Full.<br>Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 22:21 | RO | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 20 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[6] | Port6 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 19 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[5] | Port5 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[4] | Port4 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[3] | Port3 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 16 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[2] | Port2 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[1] | Port1 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 14 | R/W | LAN_QUE_FULL[0] | Port0 out queue full. Write one clear. | 1'b0 |
| 13:0 | RO | - | Reserved | 14'b0 |

IMR: Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x04)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_30 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 29 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_29 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 28 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_28 | Abnormal Alert<br>This bit indicating that global queue block counts is less than buf_starvation_th for 3 seconds. Write one clear. | 1'b1 |
| 27 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_27 | Intruder Alert<br>This bit indicating that an unsecured packet is coming into a secured port. | 1'b1 |
| 26 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_26 | Port status change<br>Any port from link status change | 1'b1 |
| 25 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_25 | BC storm<br>The device is undergoing broadcast storm | 1'b1 |
| 24 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_24 | Queue exhausted<br>The global queue is used up and all packets are dropped | 1'b1 |
| 23 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_23 | Shared queue full | 1'b1 |
| 22 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_22 | Reserved | 1'b1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 21 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_21 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 20 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_20 | port6 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 19 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_19 | port5 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 18 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_18 | port4 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 17 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_17 | port3 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 16 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_16 | port2 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 15 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_15 | port1 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 14 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_14 | port0 queue full | 1'b1 |
| 13 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_13 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 12 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_12 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 11 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_11 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 10 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_10 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 9 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_9 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 8 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_8 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 7 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_7 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 6 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_6 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 5 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_5 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 4 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_4 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 3 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_3 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 2 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_2 | Reserved | 1'b1 |
| 1 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_1 | Reserved. | 1'b1 |
| 0 | R/W | SW_INT_MASK_0 | Reserved | 1'b1 |

FCT0: Flow Control Threshold 0 (offset:0x08)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | FC_RLS_TH | Flow Control Release Threshold<br>Flow control is off when the global queue block counts is greater than the threshold | 8'd255 |
| 23:16 | R/W | FC_SET_TH | Flow Control Set Threshold<br>Flow control will be checked when global queue block counts is less than the threshold | 8'd200 |
| 15:8 | R/W | DROP_RLS_TH | **Drop Release Threshold**<br>Packets will stop dropping when the global queue block counts is greater than the threshold | 8'd110 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DROP_SET_TH | **Drop Set Threshold**<br>Packets will start dropping when the global queue block counts is less than the threshold. | 8'd90 |

FCT1: Flow Control Threshold 1 (B + 0C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | RO | - | Reserved | 24'd0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | PORT_TH | Per_Port_Th<br>Per port out queue threshold. | 8'd20 |

PFC0: Priority flow control – 0 (offset: 0x10)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 4'd0 |
| 27:24 | R/W | MTCC_LMT | MTCC LIMIT<br>Back-off count limit. | 4'd15 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TURN_OFF_FC | Turn off FC When Receiving High Packet<br>Auto-turn-off FC when the programmed ports receive priority packet ➔ 0: disable | 8'd0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:12 | R/W | VO_NUM | The proportional number of WRR ➔ after transmit exactly the number of packets then proceed to next queue, If equal to 0, force to unlimited mode | 4'd0 |
| 11:8 | R/W | CL_NUM | The proportional number of WRR ➔ after transmit exactly the number of packet then proceed to next queue. | 4'd0 |
| 7:4 | R/W | BE_NUM | The proportional number of WRR ➔ after transmit exactly the number of packet then proceed to next queue. | 4'd0 |
| 3:0 | R/W | BK_NUM | The proportional number of WRR ➔ after transmit exactly the number of packet then proceed to next queue. | 4'd0 |

PFC1: Priority Flow control –1 (offset: 0x14)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | P6_USE_Q1_EN | Port6 only use q1 enable | 1'd0 |
| 30:24 | R/W | EN_TOS[7:0] | Port6 ~ port0 TOS_en. 0: disable | 7'd0 |
| 23:16 | R/O | EN_VLAN | Enable per port VLAN ID and priority check.0: disable. | 8'd0 |
| 15:14 | R/W | - | Reserved | 2'b01 |
| 13:12 | R/W | PORT_PRI6 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 11:10 | R/W | PORT_PRI5 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 9:8 | R/W | PORT_PRI4 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 7:6 | R/W | PORT_PRI3 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 5:4 | R/W | PORT_PRI2 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 3:2 | R/W | PORT_PRI1 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |
| 1:0 | R/W | PORT_PRI0 | Port priority<br>By setting this register to force per port's default priority. | 2'b01 |

PFC2: Priority flow control –2 (offset: 0x18)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | PRI_TH_VO | Voice Threshold – Highest Priority<br>The minimum per port out queue can store high packet block count | 8'd3 |
| 23:16 | R/W | PRI_TH_CL | Control Load Threshold<br>The minimum per port out queue can store low packet block count | 8'd3 |
| 15:8 | R/W | PRI_TH_BE | Best Effort threshold<br>The minimum per port out queue can store low packet block count | 8'd3 |
| 7:0 | R/W | PRI_TH_BK | Background Threshold – Lowest Priority<br>The minimum per port out queue can store low packet block count | 8'd3 |

GQS0: Global Queue Status – 0 (offset: 0x1C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:9 | RO | - | Reserved | 23'd0 |
| 8:0 | RO | EMPTY_CNT | Global Queue Block Counts<br>The number of block count left in queue | 9'h16b |

GQS1: Global Queue Status – 1 (offset: 0x20)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | OUTQUE_FULL_VO | Congested Voice Queue<br>The corresponding congested low queue | 8'd0 |
| 23:16 | RO | OUTQUE_FULL_CL | Congested Control Load Queue<br>The corresponding congested low queue | 8'd0 |
| 15:8 | RO | OUTQUE_FULL_BE | Congested Best Effort Queue<br>The corresponding congested low queue | 8'd0 |
| 7:0 | RO | OUTQUE_FULL_BK | Congested Background Queue<br>The corresponding congested low queue | 8'd0 |

ATS: Address Table Search (offset: 0x24)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:3 | RO | - | Reserved | 29'b0 |
| 2 | RO | AT_LKUP_IDLE | Address Lookup Idle | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | SEARCH_NXT_ ADDR | Search For The Next Address (Self_Clear) | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | BEGIN_SEARCH_ ADDR | Start Searching The Address Table (Self_Clear) | 1'b0 |

ATS0: Address Table Status 0 (offset: 0x28)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:22 | RO | HASH_ADD_LU | Address table lookup address | 10'd0 |
| 21:19 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'd0 |
| 18:12 | RO | R_PORT MAP | Port map<br>The MAC existing in the bit =1. | 7'd0 |
| 11 | RO | - | Reserved | - |
| 10:7 | RO | R_VID | Member set index | 4'd0 |
| 6:4 | RO | R_AGE_FIELD | Aging field | 3'd0 |
| 3 | RO | - | Reserved | - |
| 2 | RO | R_MC_INGRESS | MC Ingress | 1'b0 |
| 1 | RO | AT_TABLE_END | Search to the end of address table | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | SEARCH_RDY | Data is ready (read clear) | 1'b0 |

ATS1: Address Table Status 1 (offset: 0x2C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | MAC_AD_SER0 | Read MAC address [15:0] | 16'bx |

ATS2: Address Table Status 2 (offset: 0x30)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | MAC_AD_SER1 | Read MAC address [47:16] | 32'b0 |

WMAD0: WT_MAC_AD0 (offset: 0x34)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:22 | RO | HASH_ADD_CFG | Address table configuration address | 10'd0 |
| 21:19 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'd0 |
| 19 | RO | AT_CFG_IDLE | Address table configuration SM idle | 1'b1 |
| 18:12 | R/W | W_PORT_MAP | Write Port Map Number | 7'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | - | Reserved | |
| 10:7 | R/W | W_INDEX | Write Member Set Index | 4'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | W_AGE_FIELD | Write aging field, 111 : static address, 000 :not used.<br>001~110:used | 3'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | - | Reserved | |
| 2 | R/W | W_MC_INGRESS | Write Mc_Ingress Bit | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | RO | W_MAC_DONE | MAC Write Done<br>1: MAC address write OK, (read_clear) | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | W_MAC_CMD | MAC Address Write Command<br>1: the MAC write data is ready and write to MAC table now, self_clear | 1'b0 |

WMAD1: WT_MAC_AD1 (offset: 0x38)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | W_MAC_15_0 | Write MAC address [15:0] | 16'h0 |

WMAD2: WT_MAC_AD2 (offset: 0x3C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | W_MAC_47_16 | Write MAC address [47:16] | 32'b0 |

PVIDC0: PVID Configuration 0 (offset: 0x40)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | P1_PVID | Port1 PVID setting | 12'd1 |
| 11:0 | R/W | P0_PVID | Port0 PVID setting | 12'd1 |

PVIDC1: PVID Configuration 1 (offset: 0x44)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | P3_PVID | Port3 PVID setting | 12'd1 |
| 11:0 | R/W | P2_PVID | Port2 PVID setting | 12'd1 |

PVIDC2: PVID Configuration 2 (offset: 0x48)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | P5_PVID | Port5 PVID setting | 12'd1 |
| 11:0 | R/W | P4_PVID | Port4 PVID setting | 12'd1 |

PVIDC3: PVID Configuration 3 (offset: 0x4C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | RO | - | Reserved | 20'd0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | P6_PVID | Port6 PVID setting | 12'd1 |

VLANI0: VLAN Identifier 0 (offset: 0x50)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID1 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 1 | 12'd2 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID0 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 0 | 12'd1 |

VLANI1: VLAN Identifier 1 (offset: 0x54)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID3 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 3 | 12'd4 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID2 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 2 | 12'd3 |

VLANI2: VLAN Identifier 2 (offset: 0x58)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID5 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 5 | 12'd6 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID4 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 4 | 12'd5 |

VLANI3: VLAN Identifier 3 (offset: 0x5C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID7 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 7 | 12'd8 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID6 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 6 | 12'd7 |

VLANI4: VLAN Identifier 4 (offset: 0x60)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID9 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 9 | 12'd10 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID8 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 8 | 12'd9 |

VLANI5: VLAN Identifier 5 (offset: 0x64)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID11 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 11 | 12'd12 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID10 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 10 | 12'd11 |

VLANI6: VLAN Identifier 6 (offset: 0x68)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | vid13 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 13 | 12'd14 |
| 11:0 | R/W | vid12 | VLAN field Identifier for VLAN 12 | 12'd13 |

VLANI7: VLAN Identifier 7 (offset: 0x6C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'd0 |
| 23:12 | R/W | VID15 | Identifier for VLAN 15 | 12'd16 |
| 11:0 | R/W | VID14 | Identifier for VLAN 14 | 12'd15 |

VMSC0: VLAN Member Port Configuration 0 (offset: 0x70)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30:24 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_3 | VLAN 3 member port | 8'hff |
| 22:16 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_2 | VLAN 2 member port | 8'hff |
| 15:8 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_1 | VLAN 1 member port | 8'hff |
| 7:0 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_0 | VLAN 0 member port | 8'hff |

VMSC1: VLAN Member Port Configuration 1 (offset: 0x74)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30:24 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_7 | VLAN 7 member port | 8'hff |
| 22:16 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_6 | VLAN 6 member port | 8'hff |
| 15:8 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_5 | VLAN 5 member port | 8'hff |
| 7:0 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_4 | VLAN 4 member port | 8'hff |

VMSC2: VLAN Member Port Configuration 2 (offset: 0x78)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30:24 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_11 | VLAN 11 member port | 8'hff |
| 22:16 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_10 | VLAN 10member port | 8'hff |
| 15:8 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_9 | VLAN 9 member port | 8'hff |
| 7:0 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_8 | VLAN 8 member port | 8'hff |

VMSC3: VLAN Member Port Configuration 3 (offset: 0x7C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 30:24 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_15 | VLAN 15 member port | 8'hff |
| 22:16 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_14 | VLAN 14 member port | 8'hff |
| 15:8 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_13 | VLAN 13 member port | 8'hff |
| 7:0 | R/W | VLAN_MEMSET_12 | VLAN 12 member port | 8'hff |

POA: Port Ability (offset: 0x80)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO | G1_LINK | Port 6 Link<br>1=up, 0=down | 1'b0 |
| 30 | RO | G0_LINK | Port 5 Link<br>1=up, 0=down | 1'b0 |
| 29:25 | RO | LINK | Port 4 ~ port 0 Link<br>1=up, 0=down | 5'b0 |
| 24:23 | RO | G1_XFC | Flow Control of Port 6<br>1x = full duplex and tx flow control ON<br>x1= full duplex and rx flow control ON<br>00 = flow control off<br>(after AN or forced) | 2'b0 |
| 22:21 | RO | G0_XFC | Flow Control of Port 5<br>1x = full duplex and tx flow control ON<br>x1 = full duplex and rx flow control ON<br>00 = flow control off<br>(after AN or forced) | 2'b0 |
| 20:16 | RO | XFC | Flow Control of PHY port<br>1 = full duplex and 802.3x flow control ON (after AN or forced) | 5'b0 |
| 15:9 | RO | DUPLEX | Port6 ~ port0 Duplex,<br>1= full duplex, 0=half duplex | 7'h00 |
| 8:7 | RO | G1_SPD | MII port Speed:<br>10: 1GHz, 01: 100M, 00: 10M | 2'b0 |
| 6:5 | RO | G0_SPD | MII port Speed:<br>10: 1GHz, 01: 100M, 00: 10M | 2'b0 |
| 4:0 | RO | SPEED | Port4 ~ port0 Speed:<br>1=100M, 0=10M | 5'b0 |

FPA: Force Port4 ~ Port0 Ability (offset: 0x84)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | R/W | FORCE_MODE | Port4 ~ port 0 force mode | 5'd0 |
| 26:22 | R/W | FORCE_LNK | Port 4 ~ port 0 PHY Link<br>1=up, 0=down | 5'b0 |
| 21 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'd0 |
| 20:16 | R/W | FORCE_XFC | Port 4 ~ port 0 Flow control of PHY port<br>1 = full duplex and 802.3x flow control ON | 5'd0 |
| 15:13 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'd0 |
| 12:8 | R/W | FORCE_DPX | Port4 ~ port0 Duplex,<br>1= full duplex, 0=half duplex | 5'd0 |
| 7:5 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'd0 |
| 4:0 | R/W | FORCE_SPD | Port4 ~ port0 Speed:<br>1=100M, 0=10M | 5'b0 |

PTS: Port Status (offset: 0x88)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:10 | RO | - | Reserved | 22'b0 |
| 9 | RO | G1_TXC_STATUS | Port 6 TXC status<br>port 6 TXC status, 1= error, no TXC | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO | G0_TXC_STATUS | Port 5 TXC status<br>port 5 TXC status, 1= error, no TXC | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6:0 | RO | SECURED_ST | Security Status<br>1= has intruder coming if turn on the SA_secured mode, read clear | 7'b0 |

SOCPC: SoC Port Control (offset: 0x8C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | RO | - | Reserved | 6'b0 |
| 25 | R/W | CRC_PADDING | CRC padding from CPU<br>If this bit = 1, all packet from CPU will not append CRC and let LAN/WAN port to re-calculate ans attach CRC. | 1'b1 |
| 24:23 | RO | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 22:16 | R/W | DISBC2C_PU | When this bit = 1, broadcast packets from LAN/WAN port(s) will not forward to CPU. | 7'h7f |
| 15 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | R/W | DISMC2C_PU | When this bit =1, multicast packets from ports will not forward to CPU. | 7'h7f |
| 7 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | DISUN2C_PU | When this bit is =1 , unknown packets from port(s) will not forward to CPU | 7'h7f |

POC1: Port Control 0 (offset: 0x90)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | R/W | HASH_ADDR_SHIFT | Address table hashing algorithm option for member set index | 2'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | DIS_GMII_PORT_1 | Disable port 6<br>1: port disable (if dumb mode, default = 0) | 1'b1 |
| 28 | R/W | DIS_GMII_PORT_0 | Disable port 5<br>1: port disable (if dumb mode, default = 0) | 1'b1 |
| 27:23 | R/W | DIS_PORT | Disable phy port<br>1: port disable (if dumb mode, default = 0) | 5'h1f |
| 22:16 | R/W | DISRMC2_CPU | 1: disable RMC packet to cpu | 7'h0 |
| 15 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | R/W | EN_FC | Enable pause flow control<br>enable 802.3x flow control | 7'h7f |
| 7 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | Reserved | Enable back pressure<br>1: enable back pressure (but need to qualify BP_mode) | 7'h7f |

POC1: Port Control 1 (offset: 0x94)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:23 | RO | - | Reserved | 9'd0 |
| 22:16 | R/W | BLOCKING_STATE | 0 : normal state<br>1 : blocking state, forwarding rmc packet to cpu(need programming address table | 7'd0 |
| 15 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'd0 |
| 14:8 | R/W | DIS_LRNING | Disable SA learning<br>0: enable SA learn | 7'b0 |
| 7 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'd0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | SA_SECURED _PORT | SA secured mode<br>0: don't care SA match,<br>1: the packets' SA need match, otherwise discard the packets<br>Note:1. have to set dis_learn and sa_secured at the same time. | 7'b0 |

POC2: Port control 2 (offset: 0x98)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | G1_TXC_CHECK | Check the Port 6 TXC<br>if no txc clock, then disable MII port<br>1: enable, check TXC | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | G0_TXC_CHECK | Check the port 5 TXC<br>if no txc clock, then disable MII port<br>1: enable, check TXC | 1'b0 |
| 28:23 | RO | - | Reserved | 6'b0 |
| 22:16 | R/W | DIS_UC_PAUSE | 1: switch will not consider pause frame when DA!= 0180c20001 and unicast to CPU<br>0: switch will consider pause frame when DA!=0180c20001 but unicast to CPU, | 7'b0 |
| 15 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | R/W | ENAGING PORT | Port aging<br>1: enable aging, 0: disable aging that the MAC address is belong to programmed port(s) | 7'h7f |
| 7:0 | R/W | UNTAG_EN | Remove VLAN tag field<br>1: enable VLAN tag field removal. | 8'h0 |

SGC: Switch Global Control (offset: 0x9C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:29 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 28:27 | R/W | IGMP_RULE | IGMP Packet Forward Rule<br>Per hash result from address table.<br>If no match,<br>00: BC<br>01: to cpu<br>10: drop<br>11: reserved | 2'b0 |
| 26:25 | R/W | RMC_TB_FAULT_ RULE | 00: to all port(not include blocking state port)<br>01: to cpu<br>10: drop | 2'b00 |
| 24:23 | R/W | LED_FLASH_TIME | The Frequency Of LED Flash<br>00: 30ms, 01: 60ms, 10: 240ms, 11: 480ms | 2'b0 |
| 22:21 | R/W | BISH_TH | The Threshold Of Memory Bisshop<br>11:skip if fail 8 blocks, 0<br>00:skip if fail 16 (default, from pins)<br>01:skip if fail 48<br>10:skip if fail 64 | 2'b0 |
| 20 | RO | BISH_DIS | Build In Self Hop<br>0: enable skip function (default, from pin) | 1'b0 |
| 19:18 | R/W | BP_MODE | Back Pressure Mode<br>00: disable<br>01: BP jam, the jam number is set by bp_num<br>10: BP jamALL, jam packet until the BP condition is released(default),<br>11: BP carrier, use carrier insertion to do back pressure | 2'b10 |
| 17:16 | R/W | DISMIIPORT_WASTX | GMII Port Disable Was_Transmit<br>1: disable was_transmit (good for late CRS PHY, like HPNA2.0 or power-LAN),<br>0: enable | 2'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:12 | R/W | BP_JAM_CNT | Back Pressure Jam Number<br>the consecutive jam time when back pressure, default 10 packet jam then one no-jam | 4'b1010 |
| 11 | R/W | DISABLE TX BACKOFF | Disable The Collision Back Off Timer<br>1: re-transmit immediately after collision, | 1'b0 |
| 10:9 | R/W | ADDRESS_HASH_ALG | MAC Address Hashing Algorithm<br>00: direct mode, using last 10-bit as hashing address<br>01: XOR48 mode<br>10: XOR32 mode, 11:reserved | 2'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | DIS_PKT_TX_ABORT | 1: Disable collision 16 packet abort and late collision abort<br>0: enable both abort | 1'b1 |
| 7:6 | R/W | PKT_MAX_LEN | Maximum Packet Length<br>00: 1536, 01: 1518, 10: 1522, 11: reserved | 2'b0 |
| 5:4 | R/W | BC_STORM_PREV | Broadcast Storm Prevention<br>00: disable , BC will be blocked, if (01: 64 , 10: 48, 11: 32) BC blocks in queue | 2'b0 |
| 3:0 | R/W | AGING INTERVAL | Aging Timer<br>0000: disable age, 1xxx: fast age 0001: 300sec, 0010: 600 ..... 0111: 38400sec | 4'd1 |

STRT: Switch Reset (offset: 0xA0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | WO | Reset_SW | Reset switch engine, data, address, link memory , cpu port and ahb interface when write. | 32'b0 |

LEDP0: LED Port0 (offset: 0xA4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 28'd0 |
| 3:0 | RW | P0_LED | port0 LED state, default = link/activity<br>4'b0000: link<br>4'b0001: 100M speed<br>4'b0010: duplex<br>4'b0011: activity<br>4'b0100: collision<br>4'b0101: link/activity<br>4'b0110: duplex/collsion<br>4'b0111: 10M speed/activity<br>4'b1000: 100M speed/activity | 4'b0101 |

LEDP1: LED Port 1 (offset: 0xA8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3:0 | RW | P1_LED | Port1 LED state, default = link/activity | 4'b0101 |

LEDP2: LED Port2 (offset: 0xAC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3:0 | RW | P2_LED | Port2 LED state, default = link/activity | 4'b0101 |

LEDP3: LED Port3 (offset: 0xB0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3:0 | RW | P3_LED | Port3 LED state, default = link/activity | 4'b0101 |

LEDP4: LED Port4 (offset: 0xB4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | RO | - | Reserved | 28'b0 |
| 3:0 | RW | P4_LED | Port4 LED state, default = link/activity | 4'b0101 |

WDTR: Watch Dog trigger Reset (offset: 0xB8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | RO | - | Reserved | 24'b0 |
| 7:0 | RW | BUF_STARV_TH | **Buffer starvation threshold**<br>Switch will interrupt CPU when the global queue block counts is less than the threshold for 3 seconds. | 8'd30 |

DES: Debug Signal (offset: 0xBC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | DEBUG_SIGNAL | Port 5 debug signal | 16'b0 |

PCR0: PHY Control Register 0 (offset: 0xC0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RW | WT_NWAY_DATA | The data be written into the PHY | 17'b0 |
| 15 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 14 | RW | RD_PHY_CMD | Read command, self_clear | 1'b0 |
| 13 | RW | WT_PHY_CMD | Write command, self_clear | 1'b0 |
| 12:8 | RW | CPU_PHY_REG_ ADDR | PHY register address | 5'b0 |
| 7:5 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 4:0 | RW | CPU_PHY_ADDR | PHY address | 5'b0 |

PCR1: PHY control register 1 (offset: 0xC4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | RD_DATA | The Read Data | 15'b0 |
| 15:2 | RO | - | Reserved | 14'b0 |
| 1 | RO | RD_RDY | Read operation is complete and data is ready, read clear | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | WT_DONE | Write operation is done, read clear | 1'b0 |

FPA : Force Port 5 ~Port 6 ability (offset:0xC8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | RO | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | AP_EN | Port 5 Auto polling enable | 1'b0 |
| 28:24 | R/W | EXT_PHY_ADDR_BASE | Port 5 External phy base address | 5'd5 |
| 23:22 | R/W | G0_RXCLK_SKEW_SEL | Port 5 rxclock skew selection | 2'd01 |
| 21:20 | R/W | G0_TXCLK_SKEW_SEL | Port 5 txclock skew selection | 2'd01 |
| 19 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'd0 |
| 18 | R/W | TURBO_MII_MODE | Port 5 turbo MII mode enable | 1'b0 |
| 17:16 | R/O | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | RGMII_3_3V | Port 5 pad 3.3v enable | 1'b0 |
| 14 | R/O | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 13 | R/W | FORCE_RGMII_LINK1 | Force port 6 link | 1'b0 |
| 12 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_LINK0 | Force port 5 link | 1'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_EN1 | Force port 6 enable | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_EN0 | Force port 5 enable | 1'b0 |
| 9:8 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_XFC1 | Force port 6 flow control ability<br>1x: for tx, x1: for rx | 2'b11 |
| 7:6 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_XFC0 | Force port 5 flow control ability | 2'b0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1x: for tx, x1: for rx | |
| 5 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_DPX1 | Force port 6 duplex | 1'b1 |
| 4 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_DPX0 | Force port 5 duplex | 1'b0 |
| 3:2 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_SPD1 | Force port 6 speed<br>1x: 1GMhz, 01: 100MHz, 00: 10MHz | 2'b10 |
| 1:0 | R/W | FORCE_ RGMII_SPD0 | Force port 5 speed<br>1x: 1GMhz, 01: 100MHz, 00: 10MHz | 2'b0 |

FCT2: Flow Control Threshold 2 (offset: 0xCC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:18 | RO | - | Reserved | 14'd0 |
| 17:13 | R/W | MUST_DROP_RLS_ TH | If the global queue pointer higher than the threshold. The must drop condition will be released. | 5'd5 |
| 12:8 | R/W | MUST_DROP_SET_ TH | If the global queue pointer reach must drop. All incoming packets have to be dropped. | 5'd3 |
| 7:6 | RO | - | Reserved | 2'b0 |
| 5:0 | R/W | MC_PER_PORT_TH | MC packets per port threshold. | 6'd12 |

QSS0: Queue_Status_0 (offset: 0x D0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | - | Reserved | 8'b0 |
| 23:15 | RO | BE_CNT_R | Link control best effort block counter monitor | 9'b0 |
| 14:5 | RO | BK_CNT_R | Link control background block counter monitor | 10'b0 |
| 4:0 | R/W | SEE_CNT_PORT_ SEL | Link control see port counter selection control | 5'b0 |

QSS1: Queue_Status_1 (offset: 0x D4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:18 | RO | - | Reserved | 14'b0 |
| 17:9 | RO | VO_CNT_R | Link control best effort block counter monitor | 9'b0 |
| 8:0 | RO | CL_CNT_R | Link control background block counter monitor | 9'b0 |

DEC: Debug Control (offset: 0x D8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | BRIDGE IPG | Bridge IPG byte count | 8'd64 |
| 23:6 | RO | - | Reserved | 18'd0 |
| 5:3 | R/W | DEBUG_SW_PORT _SEL | Port 5 debug selection control | 3'b0 |
| 2:0 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'd0 |

MTI: Memory Test Information (offset: 0xDC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:7 | RO | SKIP_BLOCKS | Skip block counter | 9'bx |
| 6 | RO | SW_MEM_TEST_ DONE | Switch memory test done | 1'bx |
| 5 | RO | LK_RAM_TEST_ DONE | Link ram test done | 1'bx |
| 4 | RO | LK_RAM_TEST_ FAIL | Link ram test fail | 1'bx |
| 3 | RO | AT_RAM_TEST_ DONE | Address table ram test done | 1'bx |
| 2 | RO | AT_RAM_TEST_ FAIL | Address table ram test fail | 1'bx |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | RO | DT_RAM_TEST_DONE | Data buffer ram test done | 1'bx |
| 0 | RO | DT_RAM_TEST_FAIL | Data buffer ram test fail | 1'bx |

PPC: Port 6 Packet Counter (offset: 0xE0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | SW2FE_CNT | Switch to frame engine packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | FE2SW_CNT | Frame engine to switch packet counter | 16'b0 |

SGC2: Switch Global Control 2 (offset: 0xE4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | FE2SW_WL_FC_EN | Frame engine to switch WAN/LAN port flow control enable<br>1:frame engine to switch flow control by WAN/LAN port congestion<br>0: frame engine to switch flow control by any port congestion | 1'b0 |
| 29:24 | R/W | LAN_PMAP | Lan port bit map<br>1:Lan port<br>0:Wan port | 6'b0 |
| 23 | RO | - | Reserved | 9'b0 |
| 22:16 | R/W | TX_CPU_TPID_BIT_MAP | Transmit CPU TPID(810x) port bit map | 7'b0 |
| 15:12 | RO | - | Reserved | 4'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | ARBITER_LAN_EN | memory arbiter only for P0~P4 enable<br>0: normal<br>1: memory arbiter only for P0~P4. | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | CPU_TPID_EN | CPU TPID(81xx) enable<br>0: disable. CPU TPID=8100<br>1: enable. CPU TPID=810x. | 1'b0 |
| 9:7 | RO | - | Reserved | 3'b0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | DOUBLE_TAG_EN | Insert double tag field<br>1: enable double tag field | 7'b0 |

P0PC: Port 0 Packet Counter (offset: 0xE8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT0 | Port 0 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT0 | Port 0 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

P1PC: Port 1 Packet Counter (offset: 0xEC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT1 | Port 1 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT1 | Port 1 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

P2PC: Port 2 Packet Counter (offset: 0xF0)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT2 | Port 2 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT2 | Port 2 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

P3PC: Port 3 Packet Counter (offset: 0xF4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT3 | Port 3 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT3 | Port 3 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

P4PC: Port 4 packet counter (offset: 0xF8)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT4 | Port 4 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT4 | Port 4 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

P5PC: Port 5 packet counter (offset: 0xFC)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | BAD_PKT_CNT5 | Port 5 receive bad packet counter | 16'b0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GOOD_PKT_CNT5 | Port 5 receive good packet counter | 16'b0 |

### 3.18.4 MII control register

These registers could be accessed by PCR0 (PHY Control Register 0) and PCR1 indirectly.
Among them, PHY reg0~1 and 4~6 are unique for each port. PHY reg2~3 are common for all 5 ports.

Legend:

SC: Self-clearing, RC: Read-clearing

LL: Latching Low, LH: Latching High

R/W: Read/write, RO: Read-Only

CR Address:00(d00) Reset State:3100

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | R/ W; SC | MR_MAIN_RESET | 1=Reset: 0=Normal,<br>reset all digital logic, except phy_reg | 1'h0 |
| 14 | R/W | LOOPBACK_MII | Mii loop back | 1'h0 |
| 13 | R/W | FORCE_SPEED | 1 = 100Mbps: 0=10Mbps, when mr_autoneg_enable = 1'b0 | 1'h1 |
| 12 | R/W | MR_AUTONEG_ENABLE | 1= Enabled: 0=Normal | 1'h1 |
| 11 | R/W | POWERDOWN | phy into power down (power down analog TX analog RX, analog AD) | 1'h0 |
| 10 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'h0 |
| 9 | R/W; SC | MR_RESTART_NEGOTIATION | 1 = Restart Auto-Negotiation:<br>0 = Normal | 1'h0 |
| 8 | R/W | FORCE_DUPLEX | 1 = Full Duplex: 0 = Half Duplex, when mr_autoneg_enable = 1'b0 | 1'h1 |
| 7:0 | RO | - | Reserved | 8h00 |

MII status register

CR Address:01(d01) Reset State: 7849

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | RO | 100 BASE T4 | Not supported | 1'h0 |
| 14 | RO | 100BASE-X Full Duplex | 1 = PHY is 100BASE-X full duplex capable<br>0 = PHY is not 100BASE-X full duplex capable | 1'h1 |
| 13 | RO | 100BASE-X Half Duplex | 1 = PHY is 100BASE-X half duplex capable<br>0 = PHY is not 100BASE-X half duplex capable | 1'h1 |
| 12 | RO | 10Mbps/s Full Duplex | 1 = PHY is 10Mbps/s Full duplex capable<br>0 = PHY is not 10Mbps/s Full duplex capable | 1'h1 |
| 11 | RO | 10 Mb/s Half Duplex | 1 = PHY is 10Mbps/s Half duplex capable<br>0 = PHY is not 10Mbps/s Half duplex capable | 1'h1 |
| 10 | RO | 100BASE-T2 full duplex | Not supported | 1'h0 |
| 9 | RO | 100BASE-T2 half duplex | Not supported | 1'h0 |
| 8:7 | RO | - | Reserved | 2'h0 |
| 6 | RO | MF Preamble Suppression | 1 = PHY can accept management frames with preamble suppression<br>0 = PHY cannot accept management frames with preamble suppression | 1'h1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | RO | mr_autoneg_complete | 1 = auto-negotiate completed,<br>0 = auto-negotiate incomplete | 1'h0 |
| 4 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'h0 |
| 3 | RO | Autoneg Ability | 1 = PHY can auto-negotiate,<br>0 = PHY cannot auto-negotiate | 1'h1 |
| 2 | RO/LL | Link Status | 1 = link is up,<br>0 = link is down | 1'h0 |
| 1 | RO/LH; RC | Jabber Detect | 1 = jabber condition detected | 1'h0 |
| 0 | RO | Extended Capability | 1=extended register capabilities,<br>0=basic register set capabilities only | 1'h1 |

PHY identifier register

CR Address:02(d02) Reset State: 00c3

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:0 | RO | PHY_ID[31-16] | OUI (bits 3-18). Ralink OUI =000C43 | 16'h00c3 |

PHY version register

CR Address:03(d03) Reset State: 0800

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:10 | RO | PHY_ID[15-10] | OUI (bits 19-24) | 6'h02 |
| 9:4 | RO | PHY_ID[9-4] | Manufacturer's Model Number (bits 5-0) | 6'h00 |
| 3:0 | RO | PHY_ID[3-0] | Revision Number (bits3-0);<br>Register 3, bit 0 is LS bit of PHY Identifier | 4'h0 |

Auto-Negotiation advertisement register

CR Address:04(d04) Reset State: 05e1

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | R0 | Next Page Enable | 1=Set to use Next Page: 0=Not to use Next Page | 1'h0 |
| 14 | RO | - | Reserved | 1'h0 |
| 13 | R/W | Remote Fault Enable | 1 = Auto Negotiation Fault Detected<br>0 = No Remote Fault | 1'h0 |
| 12:11 | RO | Not Implemented | Technology Ability A7-A6 | 2'h0 |
| 10 | R /W | Pause | Technology Ability A5 | 1'h1 |
| 9 | RO | Not Implemented | Technology Ability A4 | 1'h0 |
| 8 | R/W | 100Base-TX Full Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable of Full Duplex<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h1 |
| 7 | R/W | 100 Base-TX Half Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable of Half Duplex<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h1 |
| 6 | R/W | 10 Base-T Full Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable of Full Duplex 10BASE-T<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h1 |
| 5 | R/W | 10 Base-T Half Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable of Half Duplex 10BASE-T<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h1 |
| 4:0 | R/W | Selector Field | Identifies type of message | 5'h01 |

Auto-Negotiation Link partner (LP) ability register

CR Address:05(d05) Reset State: 0000

| Bit | Read/Write | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | R O | Next Page | 1=Link Partner is requesting Next Page function<br>0=Base Page is requested. | 1'h0 |
| 14 | R O | Acknowledge | 1= Link partner acknowledge Received Successfully<br>0 =Not Received | 1'h0 |
| 13 | R O | Remote Fault | 1 = Auto Negotiation Fault Detected<br>0 = No Remote Fault | 1'h0 |
| 12:11 | R O | Not implemented | Technology Ability A7-A6 | 2'h0 |
| 10 | R O | Pause | Technology Ability A5 | 1'h0 |
| 9 | R O | Not Implemented | Technology Ability A4 | 1'h0 |
| 8 | R O | 100Base-TX Full Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h0 |
| 7 | R O | 100 Base-TX Half Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h0 |
| 6 | R O | 10 Base-T Full Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h0 |
| 5 | R O | 10 Base-T Half Duplex Capable | 1 = Capable<br>0 = Not Capable | 1'h0 |
| 4:0 | RO | Selector Field | Identifies type of message | 5'h00 |

Auto-Negotiation expansion register

CR Address:06(d06) Reset State: 0000

| Bit | R/W/Type | Name | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:5 | RO | RESERVED | No Meaning | 11'h0 |
| 4 | RO/LH; RC | Parallel Detection Fault | 1 = Local Device Parallel Detection Fault<br>0 = No fault detected | 1'h0 |
| 3 | RO | Link Partner Next Page Able | 1 = Link Partner is Next Page Able<br>0 = Link Partner is not Next Page Able | 1'h0 |
| 2 | RO | mr_np_able | 1 = Local device is Next Page Able<br>0 = Local device is not Next Page Able | 1'h0 |
| 1 | RO/LH; RC | Page Received | 1 = A New Page has been received<br>0 = A New Page has not been received | 1'h0 |
| 0 | RO | Link Partner Auto-negotiation Able | 1 = Link Partner is Auto-negotiation able<br>0 = Link Partner is not Auto-negotiation able | 1'h0 |

## 3.19 USB OTG Controller & PHY

### 3.19.1 Features

- Support USB Host/Device Dual mode
- Complies with the On-The-Go Supplement to the USB 2.0 Specification (Revision 1.0a)
- Operates in High-Speed (HS, 480-Mbps), Full-Speed (FS, 12-Mbps) and Low-Speed (LS, 1.5-Mbps) modes
- Supports up to 4 bidirectional endpoints, including control endpoint 0
- Supports up to 4 host channels.
- Supports a generic root hub
- Includes automatic ping capabilities
- Supports Internal DMA modes
- Includes USB power management features
- Includes power-saving features (clock gating, two power rails for advanced power management)
- Supports packet-based, Dynamic FIFO memory allocation for endpoints for small FIFOs , and flexible, efficient use of RAM provides support to change an endpointís FIFO memory size during transfers

### 3.19.2 Block Diagram

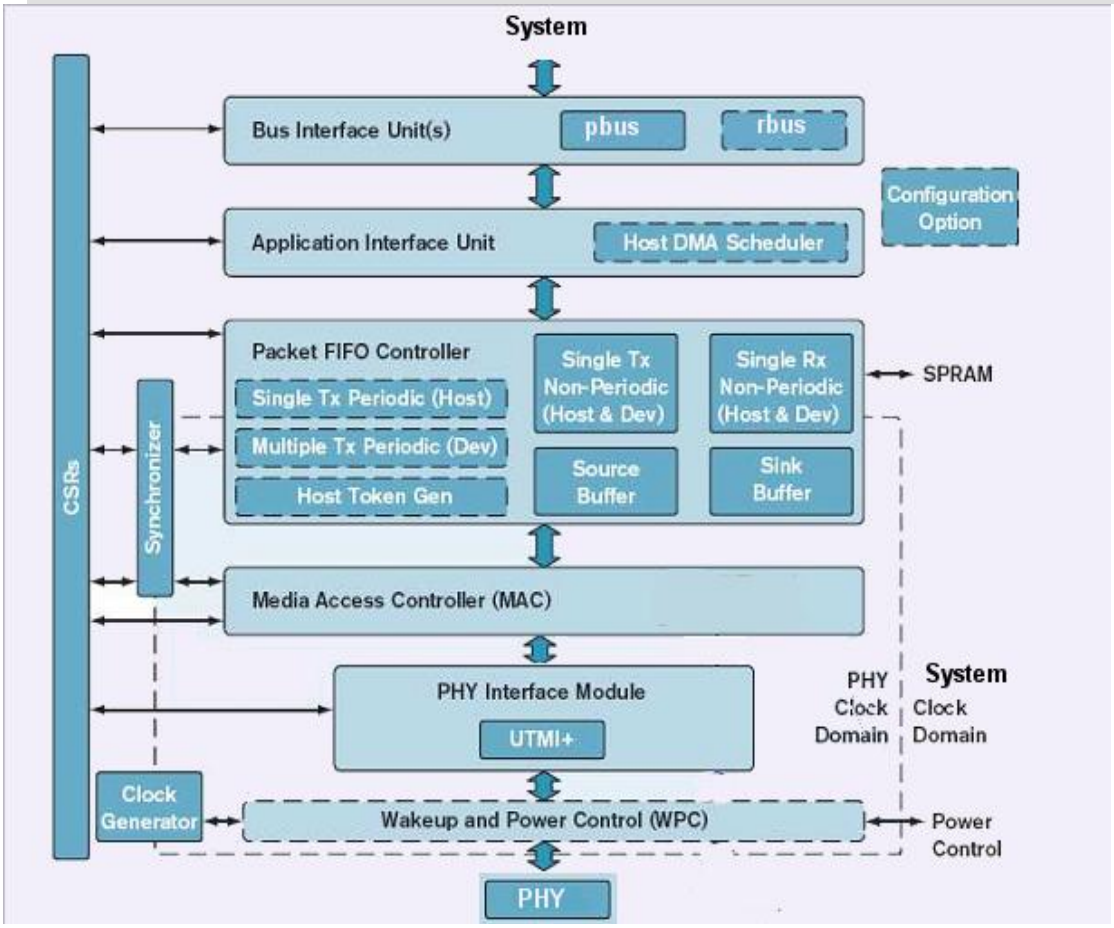



Fig. 3-19-1 1.1 USB OTG Controller & PHY Block Diagram

### 3.19.3 Register Description (base: 0x101C.0000)

GOTGCTL: OTG Control and Status Register (offset: 0x000)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | - | 12'h0 |
| 19 | RO | BsesVld | B-Session Valid<br>Indicates the Device mode transceiver status.<br>• 1'b0: B-session is not valid.<br>• 1'b1: B-session is valid.<br>In OTG mode, you can use this bit to determine if the device is connected or disconnected. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 18 | RO | AsesVld | A-Session Valid<br>Indicates the Host mode transceiver status.<br>• 1'b0: A-session is not valid<br>• 1'b1: A-session is valid | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 17 | RO | DbncTime | Long/Short Debounce Time<br>Indicates the debounce time of a detected connection.<br>• 1'b0: Long debounce time, used for physical connections (100 ms + 2.5 µs)<br>• 1'b1: Short debounce time, used for soft connections (2.5 µs) | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 16 | RO | ConIDSts | Connector ID Status<br>Indicates the connector ID status on a connect event.<br>• 1'b0: The DWC_otg core is in A-Device mode<br>• 1'b1: The DWC_otg core is in B-Device mode | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | - | 4'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | DevHNPEn | Device HNP Enabled<br>The application sets this bit when it successfully receives a SetFeature.SetHNPEnable command from the connected USB host.<br>• 1'b0: HNP is not enabled in the application<br>• 1'b1: HNP is enabled in the application | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | HstSetHNPEn | Host Set HNP Enable<br>The application sets this bit when it has successfully enabled HNP (using the SetFeature.SetHNPEnable command) on the connected device.<br>• 1'b0: Host Set HNP is not enabled<br>• 1'b1: Host Set HNP is enabled | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | HNPReq | HNP Request<br>The application sets this bit to initiate an HNP request to the connected USB host. The application can clear this bit by writing a 0 when the Host Negotiation Success Status Change bit in the OTG Interrupt register (GOTGINT.HstNegSucStsChng) is set.<br>The core clears this bit when the HstNegSucStsChng bit is cleared.<br>• 1'b0: No HNP request<br>• 1'b1: HNP request | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO | HstNegScs | Host Negotiation Success<br>The core sets this bit when host negotiation is successful. The | Device only | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | core clears this bit when the HNP Request (HNPReq) bit in this register is set.<br>• 1'b0: Host negotiation failure<br>• 1'b1: Host negotiation success | | |
| 7:2 | - | - | Reserved | - | 4'h0 |
| 1 | R/W | SesReq | Session Request<br>The application sets this bit to initiate a session request on the USB.<br>The application can clear this bit by writing a 0 when the Host Negotiation Success Status Change bit in the OTG Interrupt register (GOTGINT.HstNegSucStsChng) is set.<br>The core clears this bit when the HstNegSucStsChng bit is cleared.<br>If you use the USB 1.1 Full-Speed Serial Transceiver interface to initiate the session request, the application must wait until the VBUS discharges to 0.2 V, after the B-Session Valid bit in this register (GOTGCTL.BSesVld) is cleared. This discharge time varies between different PHYs and can be obtained from the PHY vendor.<br>• 1'b0: No session request<br>• 1'b1: Session request | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | SesReqScs | Session Request Success<br>The core sets this bit when a session request initiation is successful.<br>• 1'b0: Session request failure<br>• 1'b1: Session request success | Device only | 1'b0 |

GOTGCTL: OTG Interrupt Register (offset: 0x004)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | - | 12'h0 |
| 19 | R_SS_WC | DbnceDone | Debounce Done<br>The core sets this bit when the debounce is completed after the device connect.<br>The application can start driving USB reset after seeing this interrupt. This bit is only valid when the HNP Capable or SRP Capable bit is set in the Core USB Configuration register (GUSBCFG.HNPCap or GUSBCFG.SRPCap, respectively). | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 18 | R_SS_WC | ADevTOUTChg | A-Device Timeout Change<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that the A-device timed out while waiting for the B-device to connect. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R_SS_WC | HstNegDet | Host Negotiation Detected<br>The core sets this bit when it detects a host negotiation request on the USB. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 16:10 | - | - | Reserved | - | 7'b0 |
| 9 | R_SS_WC | HstNegSucStsChng | Host Negotiation Success Status Change<br>The core sets this bit on the success or failure of a USB host negotiation request.<br>The application must read the Host Negotiation Success bit of the OTG Control and Status register (GOTGCTL.HstNegScs) to check for success or failure. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | R_SS_WC | SesReqSucStsChng | Session Request Success Status Change<br>The core sets this bit on the success or failure of a session request.<br>The application must read the Session Request Success bit in the OTG Control and Status register (GOTGCTL.SesReqScs) to check for success or failure. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 7:3 | - | - | Reserved | - | 6'h0 |
| 2 | R_SS_WC | SesEndDet | Session End Detected<br>The core sets this bit when the utmiotg_bvalid signal is deasserted. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 1:0 | - | - | Reserved | - | 2'h0 |

GAHBCFG: Core AHB Configuration Register (offset: 0x008)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:9 | - | - | Reserved | - | 22'h0 |
| 8 | R/W | PTxFEmpLvl | Periodic TxFIFO Empty Level<br>Indicates when the Periodic TxFIFO Empty Interrupt bit in the Core Interrupt register (GINTSTS.PTxFEmp) is triggered. This bit is used only in Slave mode.<br>• 1'b0: GINTSTS.PTxFEmp interrupt indicates that the Periodic TxFIFO is half empty<br>• 1'b1: GINTSTS.PTxFEmp interrupt indicates that the Periodic TxFIFO is completely empty | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | NPTxFEmpLvl | Non-Periodic TxFIFO Empty Level<br>This bit is used only in Slave mode.<br>In host mode and with Shared FIFO with device mode, this bit indicates when the Non-Periodic TxFIFO Empty Interrupt bit in the Core Interrupt register (GINTSTS.NPTxFEmp) is triggered.<br>With dedicated FIFO in device mode, this bit indicates when IN endpoint Transmit FIFO empty interrupt (DIEPINTn.TxFEmp) is triggered.<br>Host mode and with Shared FIFO with device mode:<br>• 1'b0: GINTSTS.NPTxFEmp interrupt indicates that the Non-Periodic TxFIFO is half empty<br>• 1'b1: GINTSTS.NPTxFEmp interrupt indicates that the Non-Periodic TxFIFO is completely empty<br>Dedicated FIFO in device mode :<br>• 1'b0: DIEPINTn.TxFEmp interrupt indicates that the IN Endpoint TxFIFO is half empty<br>• 1'b1: DIEPINTn.TxFEmp interrupt indicates that the IN Endpoint TxFIFO is completely empty | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 6 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | DMAEn | DMA Enable<br>• 1'b0: Core operates in Slave mode<br>• 1'b1: Core operates in a DMA mode<br>This bit is always 0 when Slave-Only mode has been selected for the Architecture in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_ARCHITECTURE = 0). | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4:1 | R/W | HBstLen | Burst Length/Type<br>This field is used in both External and Internal DMA modes. In External DMA mode, these bits appear on dma_burst[3:0] ports, which can be used by an external wrapper to interface the External DMA Controller interface to Synopsys DW_ahb_dmac or ARM PrimeCell.<br>External DMA Mode—defines the DMA burst length in terms of 32-bit words:<br>• 4'b0000: 1 word<br>• 4'b0001: 4 words<br>• 4'b0010: 8 words<br>• 4'b0011: 16 words<br>• 4'b0100: 32 words<br>• 4'b0101: 64 words<br>• 4'b0110: 128 words<br>• 4'b0111: 256 words<br>• Others: Reserved<br>Internal DMA Mode—AHB Master burst type:<br>• 4'b0000 Single<br>• 4'b0001 INCR<br>• 4'b0011 INCR4<br>• 4'b0101 INCR8<br>• 4'b0111 INCR16<br>• Others: Reserved | Host and Device | 4'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | GlblIntrMsk | Global Interrupt Mask<br>The application uses this bit to mask or unmask the interrupt line assertion to itself. Irrespective of this bit's setting, the interrupt status registers are updated by the core.<br>• 1'b0: Mask the interrupt assertion to the application.<br>• 1'b1: Unmask the interrupt assertion to the application. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

GUSBCFG: Core USB Configuration Register (offset: 0x00C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | Corrupt Tx packet | Corrupt Tx packet<br>This bit is for debug purposes only. Never set this bit to 1. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | ForceDevMode | Force Device Mode<br>Writing a 1 to this bit will force the core to device mode irrespective of utmiotg_iddig input pin.<br>• 1'b0 : Normal Mode.<br>• 1'b1 : Force Device Mode.<br>After setting the force bit, the application must wait at least 25 ms before the change to take effect.<br>When the simulation is in scale down mode, waiting for 500 us is sufficient. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 29 | R/W | ForceHstMode | Writing a 1 to this bit will force the core to host mode irrespective of utmiotg_iddig input pin.<br>• 1'b0 : Normal Mode.<br>• 1'b1 : Force Host Mode.<br>After setting the force bit, the application must wait at least 25 ms before the change to take effect. When the simulation is in scale down mode, waiting fo 500 us is sufficient. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 28:23 | - | - | Reserved | - | 6'h0 |
| 22 | R/W | TermSelDLPulse | ULPI External VBUS Indicator<br>This bit indicates to the ULPI PHY to use an external VBUS over-current indicator.<br>• 1'b0: PHY uses internal VBUS valid comparator.<br>• 1'b1: PHY uses external VBUS valid comparator.<br>(Valid only when RTL parameter OTG_HSPHY _INTERFACE = 2 or 3) | Device Only | 1'b0 |
| 21 | R/W | ULPIExtVbusIndicator | ULPI External VBUS Indicator<br>This bit indicates to the ULPI PHY to use an external VBUS over-current indicator.<br>• 1'b0: PHY uses internal VBUS valid comparator.<br>• 1'b1: PHY uses external VBUS valid comparator.<br>(Valid only when RTL parameter OTG_ HSPHY_ INTERFACE = 2 or 3) | Host Only | 1'b0 |
| 20 | R/W | ULPIExtVbusDrv | ULPI External VBUS Drive<br>This bit selects between internal or external supply to drive 5V on VBUS, in ULPI PHY.<br>• 1'b0: PHY drives VBUS using internal charge pump (default).<br>• 1'b1: PHY drives VBUS using external supply.<br>(Valid only when RTL parameter OTG_ HSPHY_ INTERFACE = 2 or 3) | Host Only | 1'b0 |
| 19 | R/W | ULPIClkSusM | ULPI Clock SuspendM<br>This bit sets the ClockSuspendM bit in the Interface Control register on the ULPI PHY. This bit applies only in serial or carkit modes.<br>• 1'b0: PHY powers down internal clock during suspend.<br>• 1'b1: PHY does not power down internal clock.<br>(Valid only when RTL parameter OTG_ HSPHY_ INTERFACE = 2 or 3) | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | ULPIAutoRes | ULPI Auto Resume<br>This bit sets the AutoResume bit in the Interface Control register on the ULPI PHY.<br>• 1'b0: PHY does not use AutoResume feature.<br>• 1'b1: PHY uses AutoResume feature.<br>(Valid only when RTL parameter OTG_HSPHY _ INTERFACE = 2 or 3) | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 17 | R/W | ULPIFsLs | ULPI FS/LS Selec<br>The application uses this bit to select the FS/LS serial interface for the ULPI PHY. This bit is valid only when the FS serial transceiver is selected on the ULPI PHY.<br>• 1'b0: ULPI interface<br>• 1'b1: ULPI FS/LS serial interface<br>(Valid only when RTL parameters OTG_HSPHY_INTERFACE = 2 or 3 and OTG_FSPHY_INTERFACE = 1, 2, or 3) | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 16 | RO/R_W | OtgI2CSel | UTMIFS or I C Interface Selec<br>The application uses this bit to select the I2C interface.<br>• 1'b0: UTMI USB 1.1 Full-Speed interface for OTG signals<br>• 1'b1: I2C interface for OTG signals<br>This bit is writable only if I2C and UTMIFS were specified for Enable I2C Interface? in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_I2C_INTERFACE = 2). Otherwise, reads return 0. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | PhyLPwrClkSel | PHY Low-Power Clock Select<br>Selects either 480-MHz or 48-MHz (low-power) PHY mode. In FS and LS modes, the PHY can usually operate on a 48-MHz clock to save power.<br>• 1'b0: 480-MHz Internal PLL clock<br>• 1'b1: 48-MHz External Clock<br>In 480 MHz mode, the UTMI interface operates at either 60 or 30-MHz, depending upon whether 8- or 16-bit data width is selected. In 48-MHz mode, the UTMI interface operates at 48 MHz in FS mode and at either 48 or 6 MHz in LS mode (depending on the PHY vendor).<br>This bit drives the utmi_fsls_low_power core output signal, and is valid only for UTMI+ PHYs. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 14 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 13:10 | R/W | USBTrdTim | USB Turnaround Time<br>Sets the turnaround time in PHY clocks.<br>Specifies the response time for a MAC request to the Packet FIFO Controller (PFC) to fetch data from the DFIFO (SPRAM).<br>This must be programmed to<br>• 4'h5: When the MAC interface is 16-bit UTMI+ .<br>• 4'h9: When the MAC interface is 8-bit UTMI+ .<br>Note: The values above are calculated for the minimum AHB frequency of 30 MHz. USB turnaround time is critical for certification where long cables and 5-Hubs are used, so if you need the AHB to run at less than 30 MHz, and if USB turnaround time is not critical, these bits can be programmed to a larger value. See "Choosing the Value of GUSBCFG. USBTrdTim" on page 411. | Device only | 4'h5 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | RO/R_W | HNPCap | HNP-Capable<br>The application uses this bit to control the DWC_otg core's HNP capabilities.<br>• 1'b0: HNP capability is not enabled.<br>• 1'b1: HNP capability is enabled.<br>This bit is writable only if an HNP mode was specified for Mode of Operation in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_MODE). Otherwise, reads return 0. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 8 | RO/R_W | SRPCap | SRP-Capable<br>The application uses this bit to control the DWC_otg core SRP capabilities. If the core operates as a non-SRP-capable B-device, it cannot request the connected A-device (host) to activate VBUS and start a session.<br>• 1'b0: SRP capability is not enabled.<br>• 1'b1: SRP capability is enabled.<br>This bit is writable only if an SRP mode was specified for Mode of Operation in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_MODE). Otherwise, reads return 0. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | DDRSel | ULPI DDR Select<br>The application uses this bit to select a Single Data Rate (SDR) or Double Data Rate (DDR) or ULPI interface.<br>• 1'b0: Single Data Rate ULPI Interface, with 8-bit-wide data bus<br>• 1'b1: Double Data Rate ULPI Interface, with 4-bit-wide data bus | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 6 | WO/R_W | PHYSel | USB 2.0 High-Speed PHY or USB 1.1 Full-Speed Serial Transceiver Select<br>The application uses this bit to select either a high-speed UTMI+ or ULPI PHY, or a full-speed transceiver.<br>• 1'b0: USB 2.0 high-speed UTMI+ or ULPI PHY<br>• 1'b1: USB 1.1 full-speed serial transceiver<br>If a USB 1.1 Full-Speed Serial Transceiver interface was not selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_FSPHY_INTERFACE = 0), this bit is always 0, with Write Only access.<br>If a high-speed PHY interface was not selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_HSPHY_INTERFACE = 0), this bit is always 1, with Write Only access.<br>If both interface types were selected in coreConsultant (parameters have non-zero values), the application uses this bit to select which interface is active, and access is Read and Write. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | WO/R_W | FSIntf | Full-Speed Serial Interface Select<br>The application uses this bit to select either a unidirectional or bidirectional USB 1.1 full-speed serial transceiver interface.<br>• 1'b0: 6-pin unidirectional full-speed serial interface<br>• 1'b1: 3-pin bidirectional full-speed serial interface<br>If a USB 1.1 Full-Speed Serial Transceiver interface was not selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_FSPHY_INTERFACE = 0), this bit is always 0, with Write Only access.<br>If a USB 1.1 FS interface was selected in core Consultant (parameter OTG_FSPHY_INTERFACE ! = 0), then the application can set this bit to select between the 3- and 6-pin interfaces, and access is Read and Write. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 4 | RO/R_W | ULPI_UTMI_Sel | ULPI or UTMI+ Select<br>The application uses this bit to select either a UTMI+ interface or ULPI Interface.<br>• 1'b0: UTMI+ Interface<br>• 1'b1: ULPI Interface<br>This bit is writable only if UTMI+ and ULPI was specified for High-Speed PHY Interface(s) in coreConsultant configuration (parameter OTG_HSPHY_INTERFACE = 3). Otherwise, reads return either 0 or 1, depending on the interface selected using the OTG_HSPHY_INTERFACE parameter. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 3 | RO/R_W | PHYIf | PHY Interface<br>The application uses this bit to configure the core to support a UTMI+ PHY with an 8- or 16-bit interface. When a ULPI PHY is chosen, this must be set to 8-bit mode.<br>• 1'b0: 8 bits<br>• 1'b1: 16 bits<br>This bit is writable only if UTMI+ and ULPI were selected in coreConsultant configuration (parameter OTG_HSPHY_DWIDTH = 3). Otherwise, this bit returns the value for the power-on interface selected during configuration. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2:0 | R/W | TOutCal | HS/FS Timeout Calibration<br>The number of PHY clocks that the application programs in this field is added to the high-speed/full-speed interpacket timeout duration in the core to account for any additional delays introduced by the PHY. This can be required, because the delay introduced by the PHY in generating the linestate condition can vary from one PHY to another.<br>The USB standard timeout value for high-speed operation is 736 to 816 (inclusive) bit times.<br>The USB standard timeout value for full-speed operation is 16 to 18 (inclusive) bit times.<br>The application must program this field based on the speed of enumeration. The number of bit times added per PHY clock are:<br>High-speed operation:<br>• One 30-MHz PHY clock = 16 bit times<br>• One 60-MHz PHY clock = 8 bit times<br>Full-speed operation:<br>• One 30-MHz PHY clock = 0.4 bit times<br>• One 60-MHz PHY clock = 0.2 bit times<br>• One 48-MHz PHY clock = 0.25 bit times | Host and Device | 3'h0 |

GRSTCTL: Core Reset Register (offset: 0x010)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/O | AHBIdle | AHB Master Idle<br>Indicates that the AHB Master State Machine is in the IDLE condition. | Host and Device | 1'b1 |
| 30 | R/O | DMAReq | DMA Request Signal<br>Indicates that the DMA request is in progress. Used for debug. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 29:11 | - | - | Reserved | - | 19'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10:6 | R/W | TxFNum | TxFIFO Number<br>This is the FIFO number that must be flushed using TxFIFO Flush bit. This field must not be changed until core clears the TxFIFO Flush bit.<br>• 5'h0:<br>- Non-periodic TxFIFO flush in Host mode<br>- Non-periodic TxFIFO flush in device mode when in shared FIFO operation<br>- Tx FIFO 0 flush in device mode when in dedicated FIFO mode<br>• 5'h1:<br>- Periodic TxFIFO flush in Host mode<br>- Periodic TxFIFO 1 flush in Device mode when in shared FIFO operation<br>- TXFIFO 1 flush in device mode when in dedicated FIFO mode<br>• 5'h2:<br>- Periodic TxFIFO 2 flush in Device mode when in shared FIFO operation<br>- TXFIFO 2 flush in device mode when in dedicated FIFO mode<br>...<br>• 5'hF:<br>- Periodic TxFIFO 15 flush in Device mode when in shared FIFO operation<br>- TXFIFO 15 flush in device mode when in dedicated FIFO mode<br>• 5'h10: Flush all the transmit FIFOs in device or host mode. | Host and Device | 5'h0 |
| 5 | R_WS_SC | TxFFlsh | TxFIFO Flush<br>This bit selectively flushes a single or all transmit FIFOs, but cannot do so if the core is in the midst of a transaction.<br>The application must write this bit only after checking that the core is neither writing to the TxFIFO nor reading from the TxFIFO. Verify using these registers:<br>• Read—NAK Effective Interrupt ensures the core is not reading from the FIFO<br>• Write—GRSTCTL.AHBIdle ensures the core is not writing anything to the FIFO.<br>Flushing is normally recommended when FIFOs are reconfigured or when switching between Shared FIFO and Dedicated Transmit FIFO operation. FIFO flushing is also recommended during device endpoint disable. The application must wait until the core clears this bit before performing any operations. This bit takes eight clocks to clear, using the slower clock of phy_clk or hclk. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | R_WS_SC | RxFFlsh | RxFIFO Flush<br>The application can flush the entire RxFIFO using this bit, but must first ensure that the core is not in the middle of a transaction.<br>The application must only write to this bit after checking that the core is neither reading from the RxFIFO nor writing to the RxFIFO.<br>The application must wait until the bit is cleared before performing any other operations. This bit requires 8 clocks (slowest of PHY or AHB clock) to clear. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R_WS_SC | INTknQFlsh | IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Flush<br>This bit is valid only if OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 0.<br>The application writes this bit to flush the IN Token Sequence Learning Queue. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R_WS_SC | FrmCntrRst | Host Frame Counter Reset<br>The application writes this bit to reset the (micro) frame number counter inside the core.<br>When the (micro)frame counter is reset, the subsequent SOF sent out by the core has a (micro) frame number of 0. | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R_WS_SC | HSftRst | HClk Soft Reset<br>The application uses this bit to flush the control logic in the AHB Clock domain. Only AHB Clock Domain pipelines are reset.<br>• FIFOs are not flushed with this bit.<br>• All state machines in the AHB clock domain are reset to the Idle state after terminating the transactions on the AHB, following the protocol.<br>• CSR control bits used by the AHB clock domain state machines are cleared.<br>• To clear this interrupt, status mask bits that control the interrupt status and are generated by the AHB clock domain state machine are cleared.<br>• Because interrupt status bits are not cleared, the application can get the status of any core events that occurred after it setthis bit.<br>This is a self-clearing bit that the core clears after all necessary logic is reset in the core. This can take several clocks, depending on the core's current state. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | R_WS_SC | CSftRst | Core Soft Reset<br>Resets the hclk and phy_clock domains as follows:<br>• Clears the interrupts and all the CSR registers except the following register bits:<br>- PCGCCTL.RstPdwnModule<br>- PCGCCTL.GateHclk<br>- PCGCCTL.PwrClmp<br>- PCGCCTL.StopPPhyLPwrClkSelclk<br>- GUSBCFG.PhyLPwrClkSel<br>- GUSBCFG.DDRSel<br>- GUSBCFG.PHYSel<br>-GUSBCFG.FSIntf<br>- GUSBCFG.ULPI_UTMI_Sel<br>- GUSBCFG.PHYIf<br>- HCFG.FSLSPclkSel<br>- DCFG.DevSpd<br>-GGPIO<br>• All module state machines (except the AHB Slave Unit) are reset to the IDLE state, and all the transmit FIFOs and the receive FIFO are flushed.<br>• Any transactions on the AHB Master are terminated as soon as possible, after gracefully completing the last data phase of an AHB transfer. Any transactions on the USB are terminated immediately.<br>The application can write to this bit any time it wants to reset the core. This is a self-clearing bit and core clears this bit after all the necessary logic is reset in the core, which can take several clocks, depending on the current state of the core. Once this bit is cleared software must wait at least 3 PHY clocks before doing any access to the PHY domain (synchronization delay). Software must also must check that bit 31 of this register is 1 (AHB Master is IDLE) before starting any operation.Typically software reset is used during software development and also when you dynamically change the PHY selection bits in the USB configuration registers listed above. When you change the PHY, the corresponding clock for the PHY is selected and used in the PHY domain. Once a new clock is selected, the PHY domain has to be reset for proper operation. | Host and Device | 1’b0 |

GINTSTS: Core Interrupt Register (offset: 0x014)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R_SS_WC | WkUpInt | Resume/Remote Wakeup Detected Interrupt<br>In Device mode, this interrupt is asserted when a resume is detected on the USB. In Host mode, this interrupt is asserted<br>when a remote wakeup is detected on the USB.<br>For more information on how to use this interrupt, see “Partial Power-Down and Clock Gating Programming Model” on page 417. | Host and Device | 1’b0 |
| 30 | R_SS_ | SessReqInt | Session Request/New Session Detected Interrupt | Host | 1’b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | WC | | In Host mode, this interrupt is asserted when a session request is detected from the device. In Device mode, this interrupt is asserted when the utmiotg_bvalid signal goes high.<br>For more information on how to use this interrupt, see "Partial Power-Down and Clock Gating Programming Model" on page 417. | and Device | |
| 29 | R_SS_WC | DisconnInt | Disconnect Detected Interrupt<br>Asserted when a device disconnect is detected. | Host Only | 1'b0 |
| 28 | R_SS_WC | ConIDStsChng | Connector ID Status Change<br>The core sets this bit when there is a change in connector ID status. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 27 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 26 | RO | PTxFEmp | Periodic TxFIFO Empty<br>Asserted when the Periodic Transmit FIFO is either half or completely empty and there is space for at least one entry to be written in the Periodic Request Queue. The half or completely empty status is determined by the Periodic TxFIFO Empty Level bit in the Core AHB Configuration register (GAHBCFG.PTxFEmpLvl). | Host only | 1'b1 |
| 25 | RO | HChInt | Host Channels Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that an interrupt is pending on one of the channels of the core (in Host mode).<br>The application must read the Host All Channels Interrupt (HAINT) register to determine the exact number of the channel on which the interrupt occurred, and then read the corresponding Host Channel-n Interrupt (HCINTn) register to determine the exact cause of the interrupt.<br>The application must clear the appropriate status bit in the HCINTn register to clear this bit. | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 24 | RO | PrtInt | Host Port Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit to indicate a change in port status of one of the DWC_otg core ports in Host mode. The application must read the Host Port Control and Status (HPRT) register to determine the exact event that caused this interrupt.<br>The application must clear the appropriate status bit in the Host Port Control and Status register to clear this bit. | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 23 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 22 | R_SS_WC | FetSusp | Data Fetch Suspended<br>This interrupt is valid only in DMA mode. This interrupt indicates that the core has stopped fetching data for IN endpoints due to the unavailability of TxFIFO space or Request Queue space.<br>This interrupt is used by the application for an endpoint mismatch algorithm.<br>For example, after detecting an endpoint mismatch, the application: | Device only | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • Sets a global non-periodic IN NAK handshake<br>• Disables In endpoints<br>• Flushes the FIFO<br>• Determines the token sequence from the IN Token Sequence Learning Queue<br>• Re-enables the endpoints<br>• Clears the global non-periodic IN NAK handshake<br>If the global non-periodic IN NAK is cleared, the core has not yet fetched data for the IN endpoint, and the IN token is received:<br>the core generates an "IN token received when FIFO empty" interrupt. The OTG then sends the host a NAK response. To avoid this scenario, the application can check the GINTSTS. FetSusp interrupt, which ensures that the FIFO is full before clearing a global NAK handshake.<br>Alternatively, the application can mask the "IN token received when FIFO empty" interrupt when clearing a global IN NAK handshake. | | |
| 21 | R_SS_WC | incomplP | Incomplete Periodic Transfer<br>In Host mode, the core sets this interrupt bit when there are incomplete periodic transactions still pending which are scheduled for the current microframe.<br>Incomplete Isochronous OUT Transfer (incompISOOUT)<br>The Device mode, the core sets this interrupt to indicate that there is at least one isochronous OUT endpoint on which the transfer is not completed in the current microframe.<br>This interrupt is asserted along with the End of Periodic Frame Interrupt (EOPF) bit in this register. | Host only<br>Device only | 1'b0 |
| 20 | R_SS_WC | incompISOIN | Incomplete Isochronous IN Transfer<br>The core sets this interrupt to indicate that there is at least one isochronous IN endpoint on which the transfer is not completed in the current microframe.<br>This interrupt is asserted along with the End of Periodic Frame Interrupt (EOPF) bit in this register | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 19 | RO | OEPInt | OUT Endpoints Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that an interrupt is pending on one of the OUT endpoints of the core (in Device mode).<br>The application must read the Device All Endpoints Interrupt (DAINT) register to determine the exact number of the OUT endpoint on which the interrupt occurred, and then read the corresponding Device OUT Endpoint-n Interrupt (DOEPINTn) register to determine the exact cause of the interrupt.<br>The application must clear the appropriate status bit in the corresponding DOEPINTn register to clear this bit. | Device only | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 18 | RO | IEPInt | IN Endpoints Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that an interrupt is pending on one of the IN endpoints of the core (in Device mode).<br>The application must read the Device All Endpoints Interrupt (DAINT) register to determine the exact number of the IN endpoint on which the interrupt occurred, and then read the corresponding Device IN Endpoint-n Interrupt (DIEPINTn) register to determine the exact cause of the interrupt. The application must clear the appropriate status bit in the corresponding DIEPINTn register to clear this bit. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R_SS_WC | EPMis | Endpoint Mismatch Interrupt<br>Note: This interrupt is valid only in shared FIFO operation.<br>Indicates that an IN token has been received for a non-periodic endpoint, but the data for another endpoint is present in the top of the Non-periodic Transmit FIFO and the IN endpoint mismatch count programmed by the application has expired. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 15 | R_SS_WC | EOPF | End of Periodic Frame Interrupt<br>Indicates that the period specified in the Periodic Frame Interval<br>field of the Device Configuration register (DCFG.PerFrInt) has<br>been reached in the current microframe. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 14 | R_SS_WC | ISOOutDrop | Isochronous OUT Packet Dropped Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit when it fails to write an isochronous OUT packet into the RxFIFO because the RxFIFO doesn't have enough space to accommodate a maximum packet size packet<br>for the isochronous OUT endpoint. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 13 | R_SS_WC | EnumDone | Enumeration Done<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that speed enumeration is complete. The application must read the Device Status (DSTS) register to obtain the enumerated speed. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 12 | R_SS_WC | USBRst | USB Reset<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that a reset is detected on the USB. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 11 | R_SS_WC | USBSusp | USB Suspend<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that a suspend was detected on the USB. The core enters the Suspended state when there is no activity on the phy_line_state_i signal for an extended period of time. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R_SS_WC | ErlySusp | Early Suspend<br>The core sets this bit to indicate that an Idle state has been detected on the USB for 3 ms. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R_SS_WC | I2CINT | I2C Interrupt<br>The core sets this interrupt when I2C access is completed on the | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | I2C interface.<br>This field is used only if the I2C interface was enabled in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_I2C_INTERFACE = 1). Otherwise, reads return 0. | | |
| 8 | R_SS_WC | ULPICKINT | ULPI Carkit Interrupt<br>This field is used only if the Carkit interface was enabled in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_ULPI_CARKIT = 1).<br>Otherwise, reads return 0.<br>The core sets this interrupt when a ULPI Carkit interrupt is received. The core's PHY sets ULPI Carkit interrupt in UART o<br>Audio mode.<br>I2C Carkit Interrupt (I2CCKINT)<br>This field is used only if the I2C interface was enabled in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_I2C_INTERFACE = 1).<br>Otherwise, reads return 0.<br>The core sets this interrupt when a Carkit interrupt is received<br>The core's PHY sets the I2C Carkit interrupt in Audio mode. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 7 | RO | GOUTNakEff | Global OUT NAK Effective<br>Indicates that the Set Global OUT NAK bit in the Device Control register (DCTL.SGOUTNak), set by the application, has taken effect in the core. This bit can be cleared by writing the Clear Global OUT NAK bit in the Device Control register (DCTL.CGOUTNak). | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 6 | RO | GINNakEff | Global IN Non-periodic NAK Effective<br>Indicates that the Set Global Non-periodic IN NAK bit in the Device Control register (DCTL.SGNPInNak), set by the application, has taken effect in the core. That is, the core has sampled the Global IN NAK bit set by the application. This bit can be cleared by clearing the Clear Global Non-periodic IN NAK bit in the Device Control register (DCTL.CGNPInNak).<br>This interrupt does not necessarily mean that a NAK handshake is sent out on the USB. The STALL bit takes precedence over the NAK bit. | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 5 | RO | NPTxFEmp | Non-periodic TxFIFO Empty<br>This interrupt is valid only when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 0.<br>This interrupt is asserted when the Non-periodic TxFIFO is either half or completely empty, and there is space for at least one entry to be written to the Non-periodic Transmit Request Queue. The half or completely empty status is determined by the Non-periodic TxFIFO Empty Level bit in the Core AHB Configuration register (GAHBCFG.NPTxFEmpLvl). | Host and Device | 1'b1 |
| 4 | RO | RxFLvl | RxFIFO Non-Empty<br>Indicates that there is at least one packet pending to be read from the RxFIFO. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R_SS_WC | Sof | Start of (micro)Frame<br>In Host mode, the core sets this bit to indicate that | Host and | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | an SOF (FS),<br>micro-SOF (HS), or Keep-Alive (LS) is transmitted on the USB.<br>The application must write a 1 to this bit to clear the interrupt.<br>In Device mode, in the core sets this bit to indicate that an SOF token has been received on the USB.<br>The application can read the Device Status register to get the current (micro)frame number. This interrupt is seen only when the core is operating at either HS or FS. | Device | |
| 2 | RO | OTGInt | OTG Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit to indicate an OTG protocol event. The application must read the OTG Interrupt Status (GOTGINT) register to determine the exact event that caused this interrupt.<br>The application must clear the appropriate status bit in the GOTGINT register to clear this bit. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R_SS_WC | ModeMis | Mode Mismatch Interrupt<br>The core sets this bit when the application is trying to access:<br>• A Host mode register, when the core is operating in Device mode<br>• A Device mode register, when the core is operating in Host Mode The register access is completed on the AHB with an OKAY response, but is ignored by the core internally and doesn't affect the operation of the core. | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | CurMod | Current Mode of Operation<br>Indicates the current mode of operation.<br>• 1'b0: Device mode<br>• 1'b1: Host mode | Host and Device | 1'b0 |

GINTMSK: Core Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x018)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | WkUpIntMsk | Resume/Remote Wakeup Detected Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | SessReqIntMsk | Session Request/New Session Detected Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | DisconnIntMsk | Disconnect Detected Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | ConIDStsChngMsk | Connector ID Status Change Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 27 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 26 | R/W | PTxFEmpMsk | Periodic TxFIFO Empty Mask | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 25 | R/W | HChIntMsk | Host Channels Interrupt Mask | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 24 | R/W | PrtIntMsk | Host Port Interrupt Mask | Host only | 1'b0 |
| 23 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 22 | R/W | FetSuspMsk | Data Fetch Suspended Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 21 | R/W | Incomplpmsk | Incomplete Periodic Transfer Mask<br>Incomplete Isochronous OUT Transfer Mask (incompISOOUTMsk) | Host only<br>Device only | 1'b0 |
| 20 | R/W | Incompisoinmsk | Incomplete Isochronous IN Transfer Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 19 | R/W | OEPIntMsk | OUT Endpoints Interrupt Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 18 | R/W | IEPIntMsk | IN Endpoints Interrupt Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 17 | R/W | EPMisMsk | Endpoint Mismatch Interrupt Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | | 1'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | EOPFMsk | End of Periodic Frame Interrupt Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 14 | R/W | ISOOutDropMsk | Isochronous OUT Packet Dropped Interrupt Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 13 | R/W | EnumDoneMsk | Enumeration Done Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 12 | R/W | USBRstMsk | USB Reset Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 11 | R/W | USBSuspMsk | USB Suspend Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 10 | R/W | ErlySuspMsk | Early Suspend Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | I2CIntMsk | I2C Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | ULPICKINTMsk<br>I2CCKINTMsk | ULPI Carkit Interrupt Mask<br>I2C Carkit Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | GOUTNakEffMsk | Global OUT NAK Effective Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | GINNakEffMsk | Global Non-periodic IN NAK Effective Mask | Device only | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | NPTxFEmpMsk | Non-periodic TxFIFO Empty Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | RxFLvlMsk | Receive FIFO Non-Empty Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | SofMsk | Start of (micro)Frame Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | OTGIntMsk | OTG Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | ModeMisMsk | Mode Mismatch Interrupt Mask | Host and Device | 1'b0 |
| 0 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |

GRXSTSR/GRXSTSP: Receive Status Debug Read/Status Read and Pop Registers (offset: 0x018)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | | Reserved | Resume/Remote Wakeup Detected Interrupt Mask | - | 11'h0 |
| 20:17 | RO | PktSts | Packet Status<br>Indicates the status of the received packet<br>• 4'b0010: IN data packet received<br>• 4'b0011: IN transfer completed (triggers an interrupt) | - | 4'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 4'b0101: Data toggle error (triggers an interrupt)<br>• 4'b0111: Channel halted (triggers an interrupt)<br>• Others: Reserved | | |
| 16:15 | R/W | DPID | Data PID<br>Indicates the Data PID of the received packet<br>• 2'b00: DATA0<br>• 2'b10: DATA1<br>• 2'b01: DATA2<br>• 2'b11: MDATA | - | 2'b0 |
| 14:4 | RO | BCnt | Byte Count<br>Indicates the byte count of the received IN data packet. | - | 11'h0 |
| 3:0 | RO | ChNum | Channel Number<br>Indicates the channel number to which the current received packet belongs. | - | 4'h0 |

GRXSTSR/GRXSTSP: Device Mode Receive Status Debug Read/Status Read and Pop Registers

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:25 | - | - | Reserved | - | 7'h0 |
| 24:21 | RO | FN | Frame Number<br>This is the least significant 4 bits of the (micro)frame number in which the packet is received on the USB. This field is supported only when isochronous OUT endpoints are supported. | - | 4'h0 |
| 20:17 | RO | PktSts | Packet Status<br>Indicates the status of the received packet<br>• 4'b0001: Global OUT NAK (triggers an interrupt)<br>• 4'b0010: OUT data packet received<br>• 4'b0011: OUT transfer completed (triggers an interrupt)<br>• 4'b0100: SETUP transaction completed (triggers an interrupt)<br>• 4'b0110: SETUP data packet received<br>• Others: Reserved | - | 4'h0 |
| 16:15 | RO | DPID | Data PID<br>Indicates the Data PID of the received OUT data packet<br>• 2'b00: DATA0<br>• 2'b10: DATA1<br>• 2'b01: DATA2<br>• 2'b11: MDATA | - | 2'b0 |
| 16:4 | RO | BCnt | Byte Count<br>Indicates the byte count of the received data packet. | - | 11'h0 |
| 3:0 | RO | EPNum | Endpoint Number<br>Indicates the endpoint number to which the current received packet belongs. | - | 4'h0 |

GRXFSIZ: Receive FIFO Size Register(offset: 0x024)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RO | RxFDep | RxFIFO Depth<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>• Minimum value is 16<br>• Maximum value is 32,768 | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_ RX_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field. You can write a new value in this field.<br>Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | | |

GNPTXFSIZ: Non-Periodic Transmit FIFO Size Register (offset: 0x028)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO/R _W | NPTxFDep | Non-periodic TxFIFO Depth<br>For host mode, this field is always valid.<br>For Device mode, this field is valid only when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 0<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>Minimum value is 16<br>Maximum value is 32,768<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Non-periodic Tx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_TX_NPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 0. parameter OTG_TX_HNPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 1) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field.<br>Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant.<br>IN Endpoint TxFIFO 0 Depth (INEPTxF0Dep)<br>This field is valid only for Device mode and when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 1<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>Minimum value is 16 Maximum value is 32,768<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest IN Endpoint FIFO 0 Depth (parameter OTG_TX_DINEP _DFIFO_DEPTH_0) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1), you can write a new value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | | |
| 15:0 | RO/R_W | NPTxFStAddr | Non-periodic Transmit RAM Start Address<br>For host mode, this field is always valid.<br>For Device mode, this field is valid only when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 0<br>This field contains the memory start address for Non-periodic Transmit FIFO RAM.<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field.<br>Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant.<br>IN Endpoint FIFO0 Transmit RAM Start Address (INEPTxF0StAddr)<br>This field is valid only for Device mode and when OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO = 1<br>This field contains the memory start address for IN Endpoint Transmit FIFO# 0.<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant<br>(parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |

GNPTXSTS: Non-Periodic Transmit FIFO/Queue Status Register (offset: 0x02C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RO | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 30:24 | RO | NPTxQTop | Top of the Non-periodic Transmit Request Queue<br>Entry in the Non-periodic Tx Request Queue that is currently being processed by the MAC.<br>• Bits [30:27]: Channel/endpoint number<br>• Bits [26:25]:<br>- 2'b00: IN/OUT token<br>- 2'b01: Zero-length transmit packet (device | - | 7'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | IN/host OUT)<br>- 2'b10: PING/CSPLIT token<br>- 2'b11: Channel halt command<br>• Bit [24]: Terminate (last entry for selected channel/endpoint) | | |
| 23:16 | RO | NPTxQSpcAvail | Non-periodic Transmit Request Queue Space Available<br>Indicates the amount of free space available in the Non-periodic<br>Transmit Request Queue. This queue holds both IN and OUT requests in Host mode. Device mode has only IN requests.<br>• 8'h0: Non-periodic Transmit Request Queue is full<br>• 8'h1: 1 location available<br>• 8'h2: 2 locations available<br>• n: n locations available (0 ≤ n ≤ 8)<br>• Others: Reserved | - | User-selected |
| 15:0 | RO | NPTxFSpcAvail | Non-periodic TxFIFO Space Avail<br>Indicates the amount of free space available in the Non-periodic TxFIFO.<br>Values are in terms of 32-bit words.<br>• 16'h0: Non-periodic TxFIFO is full<br>• 16'h1: 1 word available<br>• 16'h2: 2 words available<br>• 16'hn: n words available (where 0 ≤ n ≤ 32,768)<br>• 16'h8000: 32,768 words available<br>• Others: Reserved | - | User-selected |

GI2CCTL:I2C Access Register (offset: 0x030)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R_WS_SC | BsyDne | I2C Busy/Done<br>The application sets this bit to 1'b1 to start a request on the I2C interface. When the transfer is complete, the core deasserts this bit to 1'b0. As long as the bit is set, indicating that the I2C interface is busy, the application cannot start another request on the interface. | - | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R/W | RW | Read/Write Indicator<br>Indicates whether a read or write register transfer must be performed on the interface. Read/write bursting is not supported for registers.<br>• 1'b1: Read<br>• 1'b0: Write | - | 1'b0 |
| 29 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 28 | R/W | I2CDatSe0 | I2C DatSe0 USB Mode<br>Selects the address of the I2C Slave on the USB 1.1 full-speed serial transceiver that the core uses for OTG signaling.<br>• 2'b00: 7'h2C<br>• 2'b01: 7'h2D<br>• 2'b10: 7'h2E<br>• 2'b11: 7'h2F | - | 1'b1 |
| 27:26 | R/W | I2CDevAdr | I2C Device Address | - | 2'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Selects the address of the I C Slave on the USB 1.1 full-speed serial transceiver that the core uses for OTG signaling.<br>• 2'b00: 7'h2C<br>• 2'b01: 7'h2D<br>• 2'b10: 7'h2E<br>• 2'b11: 7'h2F | | |
| 25 | R/W | I2CSuspCtl | I2C Suspend Control<br>Selects how Suspend is connected to a full-speed transceiver in I2C mode.<br>1'b0: Use the dedicated utmi_suspend_n pin<br>1'b1: Use an I2C write to program the Suspend bit in the PHY register | - | 1'b0 |
| 24 | RO | Ack | I2C ACK<br>Indicates whether an ACK response was received from the I2C Slave. This bit is valid when BsyDne is cleared by the core, after application has initiated an I2C access.<br>• 1'b0: NAK<br>• 1'b1: ACK | - | 1'b1 |
| 23 | R/W | I2CEn | I2C Enable<br>Enables the I2C Master to initiate I2C transactions on the I2C interface. | - | 1'b0 |
| 22:16 | R/W | Addr | I2C Address<br>This is the 7-bit I2C device address used by software to access any external I2C Slave, including the I2C Slave on a USB 1.1 OTG full-speed serial transceiver. Software can change this address to access different I2C Slaves. | - | 7'h0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | RegAddr | I2C Register Addr<br>This field programs the address of the register to be read from or written to. | - | 8'h00 |
| 7:0 | R/W | RWData | I2C Read/Write Data<br>After a register read operation, this field holds the read data for the application. During a write operation, the application can use this register to program the write data to be written to a register. During writes, this field holds the write data. | - | 8'h00 |

GPVNDCTL: PHY Vendor Control Register (offset: 0x034)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R_WS_SC | DisUlpiDrvr | Disable ULPI Drivers<br>This field is used only if the Carkit interface was enabled in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_ULPI_CARKIT = 1). Otherwise, reads return 0.<br>The application sets this bit when it has finished processing the ULPI Carkit Interrupt (GINTSTS. ULPICKINT). When set, the DWC_otg core disables drivers for output signals and masks input signal for the ULPI interface. DWC_otg clears this bit before enabling the ULPI interface. | - | 1'b0 |
| 30:28 | - | - | Reserved | - | 3'h0 |
| 27 | R_SS_WC_ | VStsDone | VStatus Done<br>The core sets this bit when the vendor control access | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | SC | | is done.<br>This bit is cleared by the core when the application sets the New Register Request bit (bit 25). | | |
| 26 | RO | VStsBsy | VStatus Busy<br>The core sets this bit when the vendor control access is in progress and clears this bit when done. | - | 1'b0 |
| 25 | R_WS_SC | NewRegReq | New Register Request<br>The application sets this bit for a new vendor control access. | - | 1'b0 |
| 24:23 | - | - | Reserved | - | 2'h0 |
| 22 | R/W | RegWr | Register Write<br>Set this bit for register writes, and clear it for register reads. | - | 1'b0 |
| 21:16 | R/W | RegAddr | Register Address<br>The 6-bit PHY register address for immediate PHY Register Set access. Set to 6'h2F for Extended PHY Register Set access. | - | 6'h0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | VCtrl | UTMI+ Vendor Control Register Address<br>The 4-bit register address a vendor defined 4-bit parallel output bus. Bits 11:8 of this field are placed on utmi_vcontrol[3:0].<br>ULPI Extended Register Address (ExtRegAddr)<br>The 6-bit PHY extended register address. | - | 8'h0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | RegData | Register Data<br>Contains the write data for register write. Read data for register read, valid when VStatus Done is set. | - | 8'h0 |

GGPIO: General Purpose Input/Output Register (offset: 0x038)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | GPO | General Purpose Output<br>This field is driven as an output from the core, gp_o[15:0]. The application can program this field to determine the<br>corresponding value on the gp_o[15:0] output. | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RO | GPI | General Purpose Input<br>This field's read value reflects the gp_i[15:0] core input value. | - | 16'h0 |

GUID: User ID Register (offset: 0x03C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | UserID | User ID<br>Application-programmable ID field. | - | User-selected |

GSNPSID: Synopsys ID Register (offset: 0x040)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | SynopsysID | Synopsys ID<br>Release number of the DWC_otg core being used, currently OT2.66a. | - | 32'h4F54 <version> |

GHWCFG1: Synopsys ID Register (offset: 0x044)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | epdir | Endpoint Direction<br>Two bits per endpoint represent the direction.<br>• 2'b00: BIDIR (IN and OUT) endpoint | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 2'b01: IN endpoint<br>• 2'b10: OUT endpoint<br>• 2'b11: Reserved<br>Bits [31:30]: Endpoint 15 direction<br>Bits [29:28]: Endpoint 14 direction<br>...<br>Bits [3:2]: Endpoint 1 direction<br>Bits[1:0]: Endpoint 0 direction (always BIDIR)<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EP_DIR_n). | | |

GHWCFG2: User HW Config2 Register (offset: 0x048)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 30:26 | RO | TknQDepth | Device Mode IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Depth<br>Range: 0–30<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_TOKEN_QUEUE_DEPTH) | - | User-selected |
| 25:24 | RO | PTxQDepth | Host Mode Periodic Request Queue Depth<br>• 2'b00: 2<br>• 2'b01: 4<br>• 2'b10: 8<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_PERIO_TX_QUEUE_DEPTH) | - | User-selected |
| 23:22 | RO | NPTxQDepth | Non-periodic Request Queue Depth<br>• 2'b00: 2<br>• 2'b01: 4<br>• 2'b10: 8<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_NPERIO_TX_QUEUE_DEPTH) | - | User-selected |
| 21:20 | - | - | Reserved | - | 2'b0 |
| 19 | RO | DynFifoSizing | Dynamic FIFO Sizing Enabled<br>• 1'b0: No<br>• 1'b1: Yes<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC) | - | User-selected |
| 18 | RO | PerioSupport | Periodic OUT Channels Supported in Host Mode<br>• 1'b0: No<br>• 1'b1: Yes<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_PERIO_HOST) | - | User-selected |
| 17:14 | RO | NumHstChnl | Number of Host Channels<br>Indicates the number of host channels supported by the core in Host mode. The range of this field is 0–15: 0 specifies 1 channel, 15 specifies 16 channels.<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_NUM_HOST _ CHAN) | - | User-selected |
| 13:10 | RO | NumDevEps | Number of Device Endpoints<br>Indicates the number of device endpoints supported by the core in Device mode in addition to control endpoint 0. The range of this field is 1–15.<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_NUM_EPS) | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9:8 | RO | FSPhyType | Full-Speed PHY Interface Type<br>• 2'b00: Full-speed interface not supported<br>• 2'b01: Dedicated full-speed interface<br>• 2'b10: FS pins shared with UTMI+ pins<br>• 2'b11: FS pins shared with ULPI pins<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_FSPHY_ INTERFACE) | - | User-selected |
| 7:6 | RO | HSPhyType | High-Speed PHY Interface Type<br>• 2'b00: High-Speed interface not supported<br>• 2'b01: UTMI+<br>• 2'b10: ULPI<br>• 2'b11: UTMI+ and ULPI<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_HSPHY_ INTERFACE) | - | User-selected |
| 5 | RO | SingPnt | Point-to-Point<br>• 1'b0: Multi-point application<br>• 1'b1: Single-point application<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_SINGLE_ POINT) | - | User-selected |
| 4:3 | RO | OtgArch | Architecture<br>• 2'b00: Slave-Only<br>• 2'b01: External DMA<br>• 2'b10: Internal DMA<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter:OTG_ ARCHITECTURE ) | - | User-selected |
| 2:0 | RO | OtgMode | Mode of Operation<br>• 3'b000: HNP- and SRP-Capable OTG (Host & Device)<br>• 3'b001: SRP-Capable OTG (Host & Device)<br>• 3'b010: Non-HNP and Non-SRP Capable OTG (Host &Device)<br>• 3'b011: SRP-Capable Device<br>• 3'b100: Non-OTG Device<br>• 3'b101: SRP-Capable Host<br>• 3'b110: Non-OTG Host<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_MODE) | - | User-selected |

GHWCFG3: User HW Config3 Register (offset: 0x04C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | DfifoDepth | DFIFO Depth<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>• Minimum value is 32<br>• Maximum value is 32,768<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_DFIFO_DEPTH) | - | User-Selected |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | - | 4'b0 |
| 11 | RO | RstType | Reset Style for Clocked always Blocks in RTL<br>• 1'b0: Asynchronous reset is used in the core<br>• 1'b1: Synchronous reset is used in the core<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_SYNC_RESET_ TYPE) | - | User-selected |
| 10 | RO | OptFeature | Optional Features Removed<br>Indicates whether the User ID register, GPIO | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | interface ports, and SOF toggle and counter ports were removed for gate count optimization by enabling Remove Optional Features? during coreConsultant configuration.<br>• 1'b0: No<br>• 1'b1: Yes<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_RM_OPT_FEATURES) | | |
| 9 | RO | VndctlSupt | Vendor Control Interface Support<br>• 1'b0: Vendor Control Interface is not available on the core.<br>• 1'b1: Vendor Control Interface is available.<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_VENDOR_CTL_INTERFACE) | - | User-selected |
| 8 | RO | I2CIntSel | I2C Selection<br>• 1'b0: I2C Interface is not available on the core.<br>• 1'b1: I2C Interface is available on the core.<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_I2C_INTERFACE) | - | User-selected |
| 7 | RO | OtgEn | OTG Function Enabled<br>The application uses this bit to indicate the DWC_otg core's OTG capabilities.<br>• 1'b0: Not OTG capable<br>• 1'b1: OTG Capable<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_MODE) | - | 1'b1 |
| 6:4 | RO | PktSizeWidth | Width of Transfer Size Counters<br>• 4'b0000: 11 bits<br>• 4'b0001: 12 bits<br>...<br>• 4'b1000: 19 bits<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_TRANS_COUNT_WIDTH) | - | User-selected |
| 3:0 | RO | XferSizeWidth | Width of Transfer Size Counters<br>• 4'b0000: 11 bits<br>• 4'b0001: 12 bits<br>...<br>• 4'b1000: 19 bits<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_TRANS_COUNT_WIDTH) | - | User-selected |

GHWCFG4: User HW Config4 Register (offset: 0x050)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | - | 2'h0 |
| 29:26 | RO | INEps | Number of Device Mode IN Endpoints Including Control Endpoints<br>Range 0 -15<br>• 0 : 1 IN Endpoint<br>• 1 : 2 IN Endpoints<br>• .... | - | User Specified |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 15 : 16 IN Endpoints | | |
| 25 | RO | DedFifoMode | Enable Dedicated Transmit FIFO for device IN Endpoints<br>• 1'b0 : Dedicated Transmit FIFO Operation not enabled.<br>• 1'b1 : Dedicated Transmit FIFO Operation enabled.<br>(coreConsultant parameter : OTG_EN_DED_TX_FIFO) | - | User Selected |
| 24 | RO | SessEndFltr | "session_end" Filter Enabled<br>• 1'b0: No filter<br>• 1'b1: Filter<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_SESSIONEND_FILTER) | - | User-Selected |
| 23 | RO | BValidFltr | "b_valid" Filter Enabled<br>• 1'b0: No filter<br>• 1'b1: Filter<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_B_VALID_FILTER) | - | User-Selected |
| 22 | RO | AValidFltr | "a_valid" Filter Enabled<br>• 1'b0: No filter<br>• 1'b1: Filter<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_A_VALID_FILTER) | - | User-Selected |
| 21 | RO | VBusValidFltr | "vbus_valid" Filter Enabled<br>• 1'b0: No filter<br>• 1'b1: Filter<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_VBUSVALID_FILTER) | - | User-Selected |
| 20 | RO | IddgFltr | "iddig" Filter Enable<br>• 1'b0: No filter<br>• 1'b1: Filter<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_IDDIG_FILTER) | - | User-Selected |
| 19:16 | RO | NumCtlEps | Number of Device Mode Control Endpoints in Addition to Endpoint 0<br>Range: 0-15<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_NUM_CRL_EPS) | - | User-Selected |
| 15:14 | RO | PhyDataWidth | UTMI+ PHY/ULPI-to-Internal UTMI+ Wrapper Data Width<br>When a ULPI PHY is used, an internal wrapper converts ULPI to UTMI+ .<br>• 2'b00: 8 bits<br>• 2'b01: 16 bits<br>• 2'b10: 8/16 bits, software selectable<br>• Others: Reserved<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_HSPHY_DWIDTH) | - | User-Selected |
| 13:6 | - | - | Reserved | - | 8'h0 |
| 5 | RO | AhbFreq | Minimum AHB Frequency Less Than 60 MHz | - | User- |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 1'b0: No<br>• 1'b1: Yes<br>(coreConsultant parameter:OTG_MIN_AHB _ FREQ _LESSTHAN_60) | | Selected |
| 4 | RO | EnablePwrOpt | Enable Power Optimization?<br>• 1'b0: No<br>• 1'b1: Yes<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_EN_PWROPT) | - | User-Selected |
| 3:0 | RO | NumDevPerioEps | Number of Device Mode Periodic IN Endpoints<br>Range: 0–15<br>(coreConsultant parameter: OTG_NUM_ PERIO _ EPS) | | User-Selected |

HPTXFSIZ: Host Periodic Transmit FIFO Size Register (offset: 0x100)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO / R_W | PTxFSize | Host Periodic TxFIFO Depth<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>• Minimum value is 16<br>• Maximum value is 32,768<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Host Mode Periodic Tx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_TX_HPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter TG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter TG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field.<br>Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |
| 15:0 | RO / R_W | PTxFStAddr | Host Periodic TxFIFO Start Address<br>The power-on reset value of this register is the sum of the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth and Largest Non-periodic Tx Data FIFO Depth specified during coreConsultant configuration. These parameters are:<br>In shared FIFO operation:-<br>• OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_TX_NPERIO_ DFIFO_DEPTH<br>In dedicated FIFO mode:-<br>• OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_TX_HNPERIO_ DFIFO_DEPTH<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field. | User-selected | RO / R_W |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | | |

DPTXFSIZn: Device Periodic Transmit FIFO-n Size Register

FIFO_number: 1 ≤ n ≤ 15, (Offset: 104h + (FIFO_number - 1) * 04hh)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | DPTxFSize | Device Periodic TxFIFO Size<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>• Minimum value is 4<br>• Maximum value is 768<br>The value of this register is the Largest Device Mode Periodic Tx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_TX_DPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH_n), as specified during coreConsultant configuration. | - | User-selected |
| 15:0 | RO / R_W | PTxFStAddr | Host Periodic TxFIFO Start Address<br>The power-on reset value of this register is the sum of the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth and Largest Non-periodic Tx Data FIFO Depth specified during coreConsultant configuration. These parameters are:<br>In shared FIFO operation:-<br>• OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_TX_NPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH<br>In dedicated FIFO mode:-<br>• OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_TX_HNPERIO_DFIFO_DEPTH<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field.<br>Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |

DIEPTXFn: Device IN Endpoint Transmit Fifo Size Register

FIFO_number: 1 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 104h + (FIFO_number ñ 1) * 04h)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO / R_W | INEPnTxFDep | IN Endpoint TxFIFO Depth<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words.<br>Minimum value is 16 Maximum value is 32,768<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest IN Endpoint FIFO number Depth (parameter OTG_TX_DINEP_DFIFO_DEPTH_n) during coreConsultant configuration (0<n< = 15).<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | | |
| 15:0 | RO / R_W | INEPnTxFStAddr | IN Endpoint FIFOn Transmit RAM Start Address<br>This field contains the memory start address for IN endpoint Transmit FIFOn (0<n< = 15).<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH +<br>SUM 0 to n − 1 (OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_n)<br>For example start address of IN endpoint FIFO 1 is OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_DINEP_ TXFIFO _DEPTH_0<br>The start address of IN endpoint FIFO 2 is OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO _DEPTH_0 + OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_1<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_DYNAMIC = 1), and you have programmed a new value for RxFIFO depth, you can write that value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |

DIEPTXFn: Device IN Endpoint Transmit Fifo Size Register

FIFO_number: 1 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 104h + (FIFO_number ñ 1) * 04h)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO / R_W | INEPnTxFDep | IN Endpoint TxFIFO Depth<br>This value is in terms of 32-bit words. Minimum value is 16 Maximum value is 32,768 The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest IN Endpoint FIFO number Depth (parameter TG_TX_DINEP_DFIFO_DEPTH_n) during coreConsultant configuration (0<n< = 15).<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC = 1), you can write a new value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15:0 | RO / R_W | INEPnTxFStAddr | IN Endpoint FIFOn Transmit RAM Start Address<br>This field contains the memory start address for IN endpoint Transmit FIFOn (0<n< = 15).<br>The power-on reset value of this register is specified as the Largest Rx Data FIFO Depth (parameter OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH) during coreConsultant configuration.<br>OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + SUM 0 to n – 1 (OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_n)<br>For example start address of IN endpoint FIFO 1 is OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_0<br>The start address of IN endpoint FIFO 2 is OTG_RX_DFIFO_DEPTH + OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_0 + OTG_DINEP_TXFIFO_DEPTH_1<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was deselected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC = 0), these flops are optimized, and reads return the power-on value.<br>If Enable Dynamic FIFO Sizing? was selected in coreConsultant (parameter OTG_DFIFO_ DYNAMIC= 1), and you have programmed a new value for RxFIFO depth, you can write that value in this field. Programmed values must not exceed the power-on value set in coreConsultant. | - | User-selected |

HCFG: Host Configuration Register (offset: 0x400)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:3 | - | - | Reserved | - | 30'h0 |
| 2 | R/W | FSLSSupp | FS- and LS-Only Support<br>The application uses this bit to control the core's enumeration speed. Using this bit, the application can make the core enumerate as a FS host, even if the connected device supports HS traffic. Do not make changes to this field after initial programming.<br>• 1'b0: HS/FS/LS, based on the maximum speed supported by the connected device<br>• 1'b1: FS/LS-only, even if the connected device can support HS | - | 1'b0 |
| 1:0 | R/W | FSLSPclkSel | FS/LS PHY Clock Select<br>When the core is in FS Host mode<br>• 2'b00: PHY clock is running at 30/60 MHz<br>• 2'b01: PHY clock is running at 48 MHz<br>• Others: Reserved<br>When the core is in LS Host mode<br>• 2'b00: PHY clock is running at 30/60 MHz.<br>When the UTMI+/ULPI PHY Low Power mode is not selected, use 30/60 MHz.<br>• 2'b01: PHY clock is running at 48 MHz. When the UTMI+ PHY Low Power mode is selected, use 48MHz if the PHY supplies a 48 MHz clock during | - | 2'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | LS mode.<br>• 2'b10: PHY clock is running at 6 MHz. In USB 1.1 FS mode, use 6 MHz when the UTMI+ PHY Low Power mode is selected and the PHY supplies a 6 MHz clock during LS mode. If you select a 6 MHz clock during LS mode, you must do a soft reset.<br>• 2'b11: Reserved | | |

HFIR: Host Frame Interval Register (offset: 0x404)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | FrInt | Frame Interval<br>The value that the application programs to this field specifies the interval between two consecutive SOFs (FS) or micro-SOFs (HS) or Keep-Alive tokens (HS). This field contains the number of PHY clocks that constitute the required frame interval. The default value set in this field for a FS operation when the PHY clock frequency is 60 MHz. The application can write a value to this register only after the Port Enable bit of the Host Port Control and Status register ( HPRT.PrtEnaPort) has been set. If no value is programmed, the core calculates the value based on the PHY clock specified in the FS/LS PHY Clock Select field of the Host Configuration register (HCFG.FSLSPclkSel). Do not change the value of this field after the initial configuration.<br>• 125 µs * (PHY clock frequency for HS)<br>• 1 ms * (PHY clock frequency for FS/LS) | - | 16'd60000 |

HFNUM: Host Frame Number/Frame Time Remaining Register (offset: 0x408)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | FrRem | Indicates the amount of time remaining in the current microframe (HS) or frame (FS/LS), in terms of PHY clocks. This field decrements on each PHY clock. When it reaches zero, this field is reloaded with the value in the Frame Interval register and a new SOF is transmitted on the USB. | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RO | FrNum | Frame Number<br>This field increments when a new SOF is transmitted on the USB, and is reset to 0 when it reaches 16'h3FFF.<br>This field is writable only if Remove Optional Features? was not selected in coreConsultant (OTG_RM_OTG_FEATURES = 0).<br>Otherwise, reads return the frame number value. | - | 16'h3FFF |

HPTXSTS: Host Periodic Transmit FIFO/Queue Status Register (offset: 0x410)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | PTxQTop | Top of the Periodic Transmit Request Queue<br>This indicates the entry in the Periodic Tx | - | 8'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Request Queue tcurrently being processes by the MAC.<br>This register is used for debugging.<br>• Bit [31]: Odd/Even (micro)frame<br>- 1'b0: send in even (micro)frame<br>- 1'b1: send in odd (micro)frame<br>• Bits [30:27]: Channel/endpoint number<br>• Bits [26:25]: Type<br>- 2'b00: IN/OUT<br>- 2'b01: Zero-length packet<br>- 2'b10: CSPLIT<br>- 2'b11: Disable channel command<br>• Bit [24]: Terminate (last entry for the selected channel/endpoint). | | |
| 23:16 | RO | PTxQSpcAvail | Periodic Transmit Request Queue Space Available<br>Indicates the number of free locations available to be written in the Periodic Transmit Request Queue. This queue holds both IN and OUT requests.<br>• 8'h0: Periodic Transmit Request Queue is full<br>• 8'h1: 1 location available<br>• 8'h2: 2 locations available<br>• n: n locations available (0 ≤ n ≤ 8)<br>• Others: Reserved | - | User selected |
| 15:0 | R/W | PTxFSpcAvail | Periodic Transmit Data FIFO Space Available<br>Indicates the number of free locations available to be written to in the Periodic TxFIFO.<br>Values are in terms of 32-bit words<br>• 16'h0: Periodic TxFIFO is full<br>• 16'h1: 1 word available<br>• 16'h2: 2 words available<br>• 16'hn: n words available (where 0 ≤ n ≤ 32,768)<br>• 16'h8000: 32,768 words available<br>• Others: Reserved | - | User selected |

HAINT: Host All Channels Interrupt Register (offset: 0x414)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RO | HAINT | Channel Interrupts<br>One bit per channel: Bit 0 for Channel 0, bit 15 for Channel 15 | - | 16'h0 |

HPRT: Host Port Control and Status Register (offset: 0x440)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:19 | RO | - | Reserved | - | 12'h0 |
| 18:17 | RO | PrtSpd | Port Speed<br>Indicates the speed of the device attached to this port.<br>• 2'b00: High speed<br>• 2'b01: Full speed<br>• 2'b10: Low speed | - | 2'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 2'b11: Reserved | | |
| 16:13 | R/W | PrtTstCtl | Port Test Control<br>The application writes a nonzero value to this field to put the port into a Test mode, and the corresponding pattern is signaled on the port.<br>• 4'b0000: Test mode disabled<br>• 4'b0001: Test_J mode<br>• 4'b0010: Test_K mode<br>• 4'b0011: Test_SE0_NAK mode<br>• 4'b0100: Test_Packet mode<br>• 4'b0101: Test_Force_Enable<br>• Others: Reserved | - | 4'h0 |
| 12 | R_W_SC | PrtPwr | Port Power<br>The application uses this field to control power to this port, and the core clears this bit on an overcurrent condition.<br>• 1'b0: Power off<br>• 1'b1: Power on | - | 1'b0 |
| 11:10 | RO | PrtLnSts | Port Line Status<br>Indicates the current logic level USB data lines<br>• Bit [10]: Logic level of D+<br>• Bit [11]: Logic level of D– | - | 2'b0 |
| 9 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | PrtRst | Port Reset<br>When the application sets this bit, a reset sequence is started on this port. The application must time the reset period and clear this bit after the reset sequence is complete.<br>• 1'b0: Port not in reset<br>• 1'b1: Port in reset<br>The application must leave this bit set for at least a minimum duration mentioned below to start a reset on the port. The application can leave it set for another 10 ms in addition to the required minimum duration, before clearing the bit, even though there is no maximum limit set by the USB standard.<br>• High speed: 50 ms<br>• Full speed/Low speed: 10 ms | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R_WS_SC | PrtSusp | Port Suspend<br>The application sets this bit to put this port in Suspend mode. The core only stops sending SOFs when this is set.<br>To stop the PHY clock, the application must set the Port Clock Stop bit, which asserts the suspend input pin of the PHY.<br>The read value of this bit reflects the current suspend status of the port. This bit is cleared by the core after a remote wakeup signal is detected or the application sets the Port Reset bit or Port Resume bit in this register or the | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Resume/Remote Wakeup Detected Interrupt bit or Disconnect Detected Interrupt bit in the Core Interrupt register (GINTSTS.WkUpInt or GINTSTS.DisconnInt, respectively).<br>• 1'b0: Port not in Suspend mode<br>• 1'b1: Port in Suspend mode | | |
| 6 | R_W_SS_SC | PrtRes | Port Resume<br>The application sets this bit to drive resume signaling on the port. The core continues to drive the resume signal until the application clears this bit.<br>If the core detects a USB remote wakeup sequence, as indicated by the Port Resume/Remote Wakeup Detected Interrupt bit of the Core Interrupt register(GINTSTS.WkUpInt), the core starts driving resume signaling without application intervention and clears this bit when it detects a disconnect condition. The read value of this bit indicates whether the core is currently driving resume signaling.<br>• 1'b0: No resume driven<br>• 1'b1: Resume driven | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R_SS_WC | PrtOvrCurrChng | Port Overcurrent Change<br>The core sets this bit when the status of the Port Overcurrent Active bit (bit 4) in this register changes. | - | 1'b0 |
| 4 | RO | PrtOvrCurrAct | Port Overcurrent Active<br>Indicates the overcurrent condition of the port.<br>• 1'b0: No overcurrent condition<br>• 1'b1: Overcurrent condition | - | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R_SS_WC | PrtEnChng | Port Enable/Disable Change<br>The core sets this bit when the status of the Port Enable bit [2] of this register changes. | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R_SS_SC_WC | PrtEna | Port Enable<br>A port is enabled only by the core after a reset sequence, and is disabled by an overcurrent condition, a disconnect condition, or by the application clearing this bit. The application cannot set this bit by a register write. It can only clear it to disable the port. This bit does not trigger any interrupt to the application.<br>• 1'b0: Port disabled<br>• 1'b1: Port enabled | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R_SS_WC | PrtConnDet | Port Connect Detected<br>The core sets this bit when a device connection is detected to trigger an interrupt to the application using the Host Port Interrupt bit of the Core Interrupt register (GINTSTS.PrtInt).<br>The application must write a 1 to this bit to clear the interrupt. | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | RO | PrtConnSts | Port Connect Status<br>• 0: No device is attached to the port.<br>• 1: A device is attached to the port. | | 1'b0 |

HCCHARn: Host Channel-n Characteristics Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 500h + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R_WS_SC | ChEna | Channel Enable<br>This field is set by the application and cleared by the OTG host<br>• 1'b0: Channel disabled<br>• 1'b1: Channel enabled | - | 1'b0 |
| 30 | R_WS_SC | ChDis | Channel Disable<br>The application sets this bit to stop transmitting/receiving data on a channel, even before the transfer for that channel is complete. The application must wait for the Channel Disabled interrupt before treating the channel as disabled. | - | 1'b0 |
| 29 | R/W | OddFrm | Odd Frame<br>This field is set (reset) by the application to indicate that the OTG host must perform a transfer in an odd (micro)frame. This field is applicable for only periodic (isochronous and interrupt) transactions.<br>• 1'b0: Even (micro)frame<br>• 1'b1: Odd (micro)frame | - | 1'b0 |
| 28:22 | R/W | DevAddr | Device Address<br>This field selects the specific device serving as the data source or sink. | - | 7'h0 |
| 21:20 | R/W | MC/ EC | Multi Count/ / Error Count<br>When the Split Enable bit of the Host Channel-n Split Control register (HCSPLTn.SpltEna) is reset (1'b0), this field indicates to the host the number of transactions that must be executed per microframe for this periodic endpoint. For non periodic transfers, this field is used only in DMA mode, and specifies the number packets to be fetched for this channel before the internal DMA engine changes arbitration.<br>• 2'b00: Reserved This field yields undefined results.<br>• 2'b01: 1 transaction<br>• 2'b10: 2 transactions to be issued for this endpoint per microframe<br>• 2'b11: 3 transactions to be issued for this endpoint per microframe<br>When HCSPLTn.SpltEna is set (1'b1), this field indicates the number of immediate retries to be performed for a periodic split transactions on transaction errors. This field must be set to at least 2'b01. | - | 2'b0 |
| 19:18 | R/W | EPType | Endpoint Type<br>Indicates the transfer type selected.<br>• 2'b00: Control | - | 2'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 2'b01: Isochronous<br>• 2'b10: Bulk<br>• 2'b11: Interrupt | | |
| 17 | R/W | LSpdDev | Low-Speed Device<br>This field is set by the application to indicate that this channel is communicating to a low-speed device. | - | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 15 | R/W | EPDir | Endpoint Direction<br>Indicates whether the transaction is IN or OUT.<br>• 1'b0: OUT<br>• 1'b1: IN | - | 1'b0 |
| 14:11 | R/W | EPNum | Endpoint Number<br>Indicates the endpoint number on the device serving as the data source or sink. | - | 4'h0 |
| 10:0 | R/W | MPS | Maximum Packet Size<br>Indicates the maximum packet size of the associated endpoint. | - | 11'h0 |

HCSPLTn: Host Channel-n Split Control Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 504h + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | SpltEna | Split Enable<br>The application sets this field to indicate that this channel is enabled to perform split transactions. | - | 1'b0 |
| 30:17 | - | - | Reserved | - | 14'h0 |
| 16 | R/W | CompSplt | Do Complete Split<br>The application sets this field to request the OTG host to perform a complete split transaction. | - | 1'b0 |
| 15:14 | R/W | XactPos | Transaction Position<br>This field is used to determine whether to send all, first, middle, or last payloads with each OUT transaction.<br>• 2'b11: All. This is the entire data payload is of this transaction (which is less than or equal to 188 bytes).<br>• 2'b10: Begin. This is the first data payload of this transaction (which is larger than 188 bytes).<br>• 2'b00: Mid. This is the middle payload of this transaction (which is larger than 188 bytes).<br>• 2'b01: End. This is the last payload of this transaction (which is larger than 188 bytes). | - | 2'h0 |
| 13:7 | R/W | HubAddr | Hub Address<br>This field holds the device address of the transaction translator's hub. | - | 7'h0 |
| 6:0 | R/W | PrtAddr | Port Address<br>This field is the port number of the recipient transaction translator. | - | 7'h0 |

HCINTn: Host Channel-n Interrupt Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 508h + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:11 | - | - | Reserved | - | 21'h0 |
| 10 | R_SS_WC | DataTglEr | Data Toggle Error | - | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R_SS_WC | FrmOvrun | Frame Overrun | - | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R_SS_WC | BblErr | Babble Error | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R_SS_WC | XactErr | Transaction Error<br>Indicates one of the following errors occurred on the USB.<br>• CRC check failure<br>• Timeout<br>• Bit stuff error<br>•False EOP | - | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R_SS_WC | NYET | NYET Response Received Interrupt | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R_SS_WC | ACK | ACK Response Received/Transmitted Interrupt | - | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R_SS_WC | NAK | NAK Response Received Interrupt | - | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R_SS_WC | STALL | STALL Response Received Interrupt | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R_SS_WC | AHBErr | AHB Error<br>This is generated only in Internal DMA mode when there is an AHB error during AHB read/write. The application can read the corresponding channel's DMA address register to get the error address. | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R_SS_WC | ChHltd | Channel Halted<br>Indicates the transfer completed abnormally either because of any USB transaction error or in response to disable request by the application. | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R_SS_WC | XferCompl | Transfer Completed<br>Transfer completed normally without any errors. | - | 1'b0 |

HCINTMSKn: Host Channel-n Interrupt Mask Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 50Ch + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:11 | - | - | Reserved | - | 21'h0 |
| 10 | R/W | DataTglErrMsk | Data Toggle Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 9 | R/W | FrmOvrunMsk | Frame Overrun Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 8 | R/W | BblErrMsk | Babble Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | XactErrMsk | Transaction Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | NyetMsk | NYET Response Received Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | AckMsk | ACK Response Received/Transmitted Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | R/W | NakMsk | NAK Response Received Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | StallMsk | STALL Response Received Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | AHBErrMsk | AHB Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | ChHltdMsk | Channel Halted Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | XferComplMsk | Transfer Completed Mask | - | 1'b0 |

HCTSIZn: Host Channel-n Interrupt Mask Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 510h + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | DoPng | Setting this field to 1 directs the host to do PING protocol | - | 1'h0 |
| 30:29 | R/W | Pid | PID<br>The application programs this field with the type of PID to use for the initial transaction. The host maintains this field for the rest of the transfer.<br>• 2'b00: DATA0<br>• 2'b01: DATA2<br>• 2'b10: DATA1<br>• 2'b11: MDATA (non-control)/SETUP (control) | - | 2'b0 |
| 28:19 | R/W | PktCnt | Packet Count<br>This field is programmed by the application with the expected number of packets to be transmitted (OUT) or received (IN).<br>The host decrements this count on every successful transmission or reception of an OUT/IN packet. Once this count reaches zero, the application is interrupted to indicate normal completion.<br>The width of this counter is specified as Width of Packet Counters during coreConsultant configuration (parameter OTG_PACKET_ COUNT_WIDTH). | - | 10'b0 |
| 18:0 | R/W | XferSize | Transfer Size<br>For an OUT, this field is the number of data bytes the host sends during the transfer.<br>For an IN, this field is the buffer size that the application has Reserved for the transfer. The application is expected to program this field as an integer multiple of the maximum packet size for IN transactions (periodic and non-periodic).<br>The width of this counter is specified as Width of Transfer Size Counters during coreConsultant configuration (parameter OTG_TRANS_ COUNT_WIDTH). | - | 19'b0 |

HCDMAn: Host Channel-n DMA Address Register

Channel_number: 0 ≤ n ≤ 15

(Offset: 514h + (Channel_number * 20h))

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | DMAAddr | DMA Address<br>This field holds the start address in the external memory from which the data for the endpoint | - | 32'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | must be fetched or to which it must be stored. This register is incremented on every AHB transaction. | | |

DCFG: Device Configuration Register (offset: 0x800)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:23 | - | - | Reserved | - | 9'h0 |
| 22:18 | R/W | EPMisCnt | IN Endpoint Mismatch Count<br>This field is valid only in shared FIFO operation. The application programs this filed with a count that determines when the core generates an Endpoint Mismatch interrupt (GINTSTS.EPMis). The core loads this value into an internal counter and decrements it. The counter is reloaded whenever there is a match or when the counter expires. The width of this counter depends on the depth of the Token Queue. | - | 5'h8 |
| 17:13 | - | - | Reserved | - | 5'h0 |
| 12:11 | R/W | PerFrInt | Periodic Frame Interval<br>Indicates the time within a (micro)frame at which the application must be notified using the End Of Periodic Frame Interrupt. This can be used to determine if all the isochronous traffic for that (micro)frame is complete.<br>• 2'b00: 80% of the (micro)frame interval<br>• 2'b01: 85%<br>• 2'b10: 90%<br>• 2'b11: 95% | - | 2'h0 |
| 10:4 | R/W | DevAddr | Device Address<br>The application must program this field after every SetAddress control command. | - | 7'h0 |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | NZStsOUTHShk | Non-Zero-Length Status OUT Handshake<br>The application can use this field to select the handshake the core sends on receiving a nonzero-length data packet during the OUT transaction of a control transfer's Status stage.<br>• 1'b1: Send a STALL handshake on a nonzero-length status OUT transaction and do not send the received OUT packet to the application.<br>• 1'b0: Send the received OUT packet to the application (zero-length or nonzero-length) and send a handshake based on the NAK and STALL bits for the endpoint in the Device Endpoint Control register. | - | 1'b0 |
| 1:0 | R/W | DevSpd | Device Speed<br>Indicates the speed at which the application requires the core to enumerate, or the maximum speed the application can support. However, the actual bus speed is determined only after the chirp sequence is completed, and is based on the speed of the USB host to which the core is connected. See "Device Initialization" on page 297 for details. | - | 2'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • 2'b00: High speed (USB 2.0 PHY clock is 30 MHz or 60 MHz)<br>• 2'b01: Full speed (USB 2.0 PHY clock is 30 MHz or 60 MHz)<br>• 2'b10: Low speed (USB 1.1 transceiver clock is 6 MHz). If you select 6 MHz LS mode, you must do a soft reset<br>. • 2'b11: Full speed (USB 1.1 transceiver clock is 48 MHz) | | |

DCTL: Device Control Register (offset: 0x804)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | - | 20'h0 |
| 11 | R/W | PWROnPrgDone | Power-On Programming Done<br>The application uses this bit to indicate that register programming is completed after a wake-up from Power Down mode. For more information, see "Device Mode Suspend and Resume With Partial Power-Down" on page 422. | - | 1'b0 |
| 10 | WO | CGOUTNak | Clear Global OUT NAK<br>A write to this field clears the Global OUT NAK. | - | 1'b0 |
| 9 | WO | SGOUTNak | Set Global OUT NAK<br>A write to this field sets the Global OUT NAK.<br>The application uses this bit to send a NAK handshake on all OUT endpoints.<br>The application must set the this bit only after making sure that the Global OUT NAK Effective bit in the Core Interrupt Register (GINTSTS.GOUTNakEff) is cleared. | - | 1'b0 |
| 8 | WO | CGNPInNak | Clear Global Non-periodic IN NAK<br>A write to this field clears the Global Non-periodic IN NAK. | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | WO | SGNPInNak | Set Global Non-periodic IN NAK<br>A write to this field sets the Global Non-periodic IN NAK.<br>The application uses this bit to send a NAK handshake on all non-periodic IN endpoints. The core can also set this bit when a timeout condition is detected on a non-periodic endpoint in shared FIFO operation.<br>The application must set this bit only after making sure that the Global IN NAK Effective bit in the Core Interrupt Register (GINTSTS.GINNakEff) is cleared. | - | 1'b0 |
| 6:4 | R/W | TstCtl | Test Control<br>• 3'b000: Test mode disabled<br>• 3'b001: Test_J mode<br>• 3'b010: Test_K mode<br>• 3'b011: Test_SE0_NAK mode<br>• 3'b100: Test_Packet mode<br>• 3'b101: Test_Force_Enable<br>• Others: Reserved | - | 3'b0 |
| 3 | RO | GOUTNakSts | Global OUT NAK Status<br>• 1'b0: A handshake is sent based on the FIFO | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Status and the NAK and STALL bit settings.<br>• 1'b1: No data is written to the RxFIFO, irrespective of space availability. Sends a NAK handshake on all packets, except on SETUP transactions.<br>All isochronous OUT packets are dropped. | | |
| 2 | RO | GNPINNakSts | Global Non-periodic IN NAK Status<br>• 1'b0: A handshake is sent out based on the data availability in the transmit FIFO.<br>• 1'b1: A NAK handshake is sent out on all non-periodic IN endpoints, irrespective of the data availability in the transmit FIFO. | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | SftDiscon | Soft Disconnect<br>The application uses this bit to signal the DWC_otg core to do a soft disconnect. As long as this bit is set, the host does not see that the device is connected, and the device does not receive signals on the USB. The core stays in the disconnected state until the application clears this bit.<br>The minimum duration for which the core must keep this bit set is specified in Table 5-45.<br>• 1'b0: Normal operation. When this bit is cleared after a soft disconnect, the core drives the phy_opmode_o signal on the UTMI+ to 2'b00, which generates a device connect event to the USB host. When the device is reconnected, the USB host restarts device enumeration.<br>• 1'b1: The core drives the phy_opmode_o signal on<br>the UTMI+ to 2'b01, which generates a device disconnect event to the USB host. | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | RmtWkUpSig | Remote Wakeup Signaling<br>When the application sets this bit, the core initiates remote signaling to wake up the USB host.<br>The application must set this bit to instruct the core to exit the Suspend state. As specified in the USB 2.0 specification, the application must clear this bit 1–15 ms after setting it. | - | 1'b0 |

DSTS: Device Status Register (offset: 0x808)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:22 | - | - | Reserved | - | 10'h0 |
| 21:8 | RO | SOFFN | Frame or Microframe Number of the Received SOF<br>When the core is operating at high speed, this field contains a microframe number. When the core is operating at full or low speed, this field contains a frame number. | - | 14'h0 |
| 7:4 | - | - | Reserved | - | 4'h0 |
| 3 | RO | ErrticErr | Erratic Error<br>The core sets this bit to report any erratic errors | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | (phy_rxvalid_i/ phy_rxvldh_i or phy_rxactive_i is asserted for at least 2 ms, due to PHY error) seen on the UTMI+.<br>Due to erratic errors, the DWC_otg core goes into Suspended state and an interrupt is generated to the application with Early Suspend bit of the Core Interrupt register (GINTSTS.ErlySusp). If the early suspend is asserted due to an erratic error, the application can only perform a soft disconnect recover | | |
| 2:1 | RO | EnumSpd | Enumerated Speed<br>Indicates the speed at which the DWC_otg core has come up after speed detection through a chirp sequence.<br>• 2'b00: High speed (PHY clock is running at 30 or 60 MHz)<br>• 2'b01: Full speed (PHY clock is running at 30 or 60 MHz)<br>• 2'b10: Low speed (PHY clock is running at 6 MHz)<br>• 2'b11: Full speed (PHY clock is running at 48 MHz) Low speed is not supported for devices using a UTMI+ PHY. | - | 2'h01 |
| 0 | RO | SuspSts | Suspend Status<br>In Device mode, this bit is set as long as a Suspend condition is detected on the USB. The core enters the Suspended state when there is no activity on the phy_line_state_i signal for an extended period of time. The core comes out of the suspend:<br>• When there is any activity on the phy_line_state_i signal<br>• When the application writes to the Remote Wakeup Signaling bit in the Device Control register (DCTL.RmtWkUpSig). | - | 1'b0 |

DIEPMSK: Device IN Endpoint Common Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x810)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:9 | - | - | Reserved | - | 23'h0 |
| 8 | R/W | TxfifoUndrnMsk | Fifo Underrun Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | INEPNakEffMsk | IN Endpoint NAK Effective Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | R/W | INTknEPMisMsk | IN Token received with EP Mismatch Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | INTknTXFEmpMsk | IN Token Received When TxFIFO Empty Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | TimeOUTMsk | Timeout Condition Mask<br>(Non-isochronous endpoints) | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | AHBErrMsk | AHB Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | EPDisbldMsk | Endpoint Disabled Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | XferComplMsk | Transfer Completed Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |

DOEPMSK: Device OUT Endpoint Common Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x814)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:9 | - | - | Reserved | - | 23'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | R/W | OutPktErrMsk | OUT Packet Error Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 6 | R/W | Back2BackSETup | Back-to-Back SETUP Packets Received Mask<br>Applies to control OUT endpoints only. | - | 1'b0 |
| 5 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 4 | R/W | OUTTknEPdisMsk | OUT Token Received when Endpoint Disabled Mask<br>Applies to control OUT endpoints only. | - | 1'b0 |
| 3 | R/W | SetUPMsk | SETUP Phase Done Mask<br>Applies to control endpoints only. | - | 1'b0 |
| 2 | R/W | AHBErrMsk | AHB Error | - | 1'b0 |
| 1 | R/W | EPDisbldMsk | Endpoint Disabled Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | XferComplMsk | Transfer Completed Interrupt Mask | - | 1'b0 |

DAINT: Device All Endpoints Interrupt Register (offset: 0x818)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | OutEPInt | OUT Endpoint Interrupt Bits<br>One bit per OUT endpoint: Bit 16 for OUT endpoint 0, bit 31 for OUT endpoint 15 | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RO | InEpInt | IN Endpoint Interrupt Bits<br>One bit per IN Endpoint: Bit 0 for IN endpoint 0, bit 15 for endpoint 15 | - | 16'h0 |

DAINTMSK: Device Endpoints Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x81c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | OutEpMsk | OUT EP Interrupt Mask Bits<br>One per OUT Endpoint: Bit 16 for OUT EP 0, bit 31 for OUT EP 15 | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | (InEpMsk | IN EP Interrupt Mask Bits<br>One bit per IN Endpoint: Bit 0 for IN EP 0, bit 15 for IN EP 15 | - | 16'h0 |

DTKNQR1 :Device IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Read Register 1 (offset: 0x820)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | RO | EPTkn | Endpoint Token<br>Four bits per token represent the endpoint number of the token:<br>• Bits [31:28]: Endpoint number of Token 5<br>• Bits [27:24]: Endpoint number of Token 4<br>…….<br>• Bits [15:12]: Endpoint number of Token 1<br>• Bits [11:8]: Endpoint number of Token 0 | - | 24'h0 |
| 7 | RO | WrapBit | Wrap Bit<br>This bit is set when the write pointer wraps. It is cleared when the learning queue is cleared. | - | 1'b0 |
| 6:5 | RO | - | Reserved | - | 2'h0 |
| 4:0 | RO | INTknWPtr | IN Token Queue Write Pointer | - | 5'h0 |

DTKNQR2 :Device IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Register 2 (offset: 0x824)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | EPTkn | Endpoint Token<br>Four bits per token represent the endpoint number of the token:<br>• Bits [31:28]: Endpoint number of Token 13<br>• Bits [27:24]: Endpoint number of Token 12 | - | 32'h0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | ……. • Bits [7:4]: Endpoint number of Token 7 • Bits [3:0]: Endpoint number of Token 6 | | |

DTKNQR3 :Device IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Register 3 (offset: 0x0830)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | EPTkn | Endpoint Token Four bits per token represent the endpoint number of the token: • Bits [31:28]: Endpoint number of Token 21 • Bits [27:24]: Endpoint number of Token 20 ……. • Bits [7:4]: Endpoint number of Token 15 • Bits [3:0]: Endpoint number of Token 14 | - | 32'h0 |

DTKNQR4 :Device IN Token Sequence Learning Queue Register 4 (offset: 0x0834)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RO | EPTkn | Endpoint Token Four bits per token represent the endpoint number of the token: • Bits [31:28]: Endpoint number of Token 29 • Bits [27:24]: Endpoint number of Token 28 ……. • Bits [7:4]: Endpoint number of Token 23 • Bits [3:0]: Endpoint number of Token 22 | - | 32'h0 |

DVBUSDIS: Device VBUS Discharge Time Register (offset: 0x0828)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | DVBUSDis | Device VBUS Discharge Time Specifies the VBUS discharge time after VBUS pulsing during SRP. This value equals: VBUS discharge time in PHY clocks / 1, 024 The value you use depends whether the PHY is operating at 30 MHz (16-bit data width) or 60 MHz (8-bit data width). Depending on your VBUS load, this value can need adjustment. | - | 30 MHz: 16'h0B8F 60 MHz: 16'h17D7 |

DVBUSPULSE: Device VBUS Pulsing Time Register (offset: 0x082c)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | - | 20'h0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | DVBUSPulse | Device VBUS Pulsing Time Specifies the VBUS pulsing time during SRP. This value equals: VBUS pulsing time in PHY clocks / 1, 024 The value you use depends whether the PHY is operating at 30 MHz (16-bit data width) or 60 MHz (8-bit data width). | - | 30 MHz: 12'h2C6 60 MHz: 12'h5B8 |

DTHRCTL:Device Threshold Control Register (offset: 0x830)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | - | 4'b0 |
| 27 | R/W | ArbPrkEn | Arbiter Parking Enable This bit controls internal DMA arbiter parking for IN endpoints. When thresholding is enabled and | - | 1'b1 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | this bit is set to one, then the arbiter parks on the IN endpoint for which there is a token received on the USB. This is done to avoid getting into underrun conditions. By default the parking is enabled. | | |
| 26 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b1 |
| 25:17 | R/W | RxThrLen | Receive Threshold Length<br>This field specifies Receive thresholding size in DWORDS.<br>This field also specifies the amount of data received on the USB before the core can start transmitting on the AHB.<br>The threshold length has to be at least eight DWORDS.<br>The recommended value for ThrLen is to be the same as the programmed AHB Burst Length (GAHBCFG.HBstLen). | - | 9'h8 |
| 16 | R/W | RxThrEn | Receive Threshold Enable<br>When this bit is set, the core enables thresholding in the receive direction. | - | 1'b0 |
| 15:11 | - | - | Reserved | - | 5'b0 |
| 10:2 | R/W | TxThrLen | Transmit Threshold Length<br>This field specifies Transmit thresholding size in DWORDS.<br>This field specifies the amount of data in bytes to be in the corresponding endpoint transmit FIFO, before the core can start transmit on the USB.<br>The threshold length has to be at least eight DWORDS. This field controls both isochronous and non-isochronous IN endpoint thresholds.<br>The recommended value for ThrLen is to be the same as the programmed AHB Burst Length (GAHBCFG.HBstLen). | - | 9'h8 |
| 1 | R/W | ISOThrEn | ISO IN Endpoints Threshold Enable.<br>When this bit is set, the core enables thresholding for isochronous IN endpoints. | - | 1'b0 |
| 0 | R/W | NonISOThrEn | Non-ISO IN Endpoints Threshold Enable.<br>When this bit is set, the core enables thresholding for Non Isochronous IN endpoints. | - | 1'b0 |

DIEPEMPMSK: Device IN Endpoint FIFO Empty Interrupt Mask Register (offset: 0x834)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RO | - | Reserved | - | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | InEpTxfEmpMsk | IN EP Tx FIFO Empty Interrupt Mask Bits<br>These bits acts as mask bits for DIEPINTn.<br>TxFEmp interrupt One bit per IN Endpoint: Bit 0 for IN EP 0, bit 15 for IN EP 15 | - | 16'h0 |

DIEPCTL0 :Device Control IN Endpoint 0 Control Register (offset: 0x900)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Mode | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/WS /SC | EPEna | Endpoint Enable<br>Indicates that data is ready to be transmitted on the endpoint. The core clears this bit before setting any of the following interrupts on this | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | endpoint:<br>• Endpoint Disabled<br>• Transfer Completed | | |
| 30 | R/WS /SC | EPDis | Endpoint Disable<br>The application sets this bit to stop transmitting data on an endpoint, even before the transfer for that endpoint is complete. The application must wait for the Endpoint Disabled interrupt before treating the endpoint as disabled. The core clears this bit before setting the Endpoint Disabled Interrupt. The application must set this bit only if Endpoint Enable is already set for this endpoint. | - | 1'b0 |
| 29:28 | - | - | Reserved | - | 2'b0 |
| 27 | WO | SNAK | Set NAK<br>A write to this bit sets the NAK bit for the endpoint. Using this bit, the application can control the transmission of NAK handshakes on an endpoint. The core can also set this bit for an endpoint after a SETUP packet is received on that endpoint. | - | 1'b0 |
| 26 | WO | CNAK | Clear NAK<br>A write to this bit clears the NAK bit for the endpoint. | - | 1'b0 |
| 25:22 | R/W | TxFNum | TxFIFO Number<br>• For Shared FIFO operation, this value is always set to 0, indicating that control IN endpoint 0 data is always written in the Non-Periodic Transmit FIFO.<br>• For Dedicated FIFO operation, this value is set to the FIFO number that is assigned to IN Endpoint 0. | - | 4'h0 |
| 21 | R/WS /SC | Stall | STALL Handshake<br>The application can only set this bit, and the core clears it, when a SETUP token is received for this endpoint. If a NAK bit, Global Non-periodic IN NAK, or Global OUT NAK is set along with this bit, the STALL bit takes priority. | - | 1'b0 |
| 20 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |
| 19:18 | RO | EPType | Endpoint Type<br>Hardcoded to 00 for control. | - | 2'h0 |
| 17 | RO | NAKSts | NAK Status<br>Indicates the following:<br>• 1'b0: The core is transmitting non-NAK handshakes based on the FIFO status<br>• 1'b1: The core is transmitting NAK handshakes on this endpoint.<br>When this bit is set, either by the application or core, the core stops transmitting data, even if there is data available in the TxFIFO. Irrespective of this bit's setting, the core always responds to SETUP data packets with an ACK handshake. | - | 1'b0 |
| 16 | - | - | Reserved | - | 1'b0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | RO | USBActEP | USB Active Endpoint<br>This bit is always set to 1, indicating that control endpoint 0 is always active in all configurations and interfaces. | - | 1'b1 |
| 14:11 | R/W | NextEp | Next Endpoint<br>Applies to non-periodic IN endpoints only.<br>Indicates the endpoint number to be fetched after the data for the current endpoint is fetched. The core can access this field, even when the Endpoint Enable (EPEna) bit is not set. This field is not valid in Slave mode.<br>**Note**: This field is valid only for Shared FIFO operations. | - | 4'b0 |
| 10:2 | - | - | Reserved | - | 9'h0 |
| 1:0 | R/W | MPS | Maximum Packet Size<br>Applies to IN and OUT endpoints.<br>The application must program this field with the maximum packet size for the current logical endpoint.<br>• 2'b00: 64 bytes<br>• 2'b01: 32 bytes<br>• 2'b10: 16 bytes<br>• 2'b11: 8 bytes | - | 2'h0 |

## 3.20 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP

### 3.20.1 Features

- 1x1/1x2/2x1/2x2 modes.
- 300MHz PHY Rate Support.
- Legacy and High Throughput Modes.
- 20MHz/40MHz bandwidth.
- Reverse Direction Data Flow and Frame Aggregation
- WEP 64/128, WPA, WPA2 Support
- QoS – WMM, WMM-PS
- Wake on Wireless LAN
- Multiple BSSID Support
- International Regulation - 802.11d +h
- Cisco CCX V1.0 V2.0 V3.0 Compliance
- Bluetooth Co-existence
- Low Power with Advanced Power Management

### 3.20.2 Block Diagram

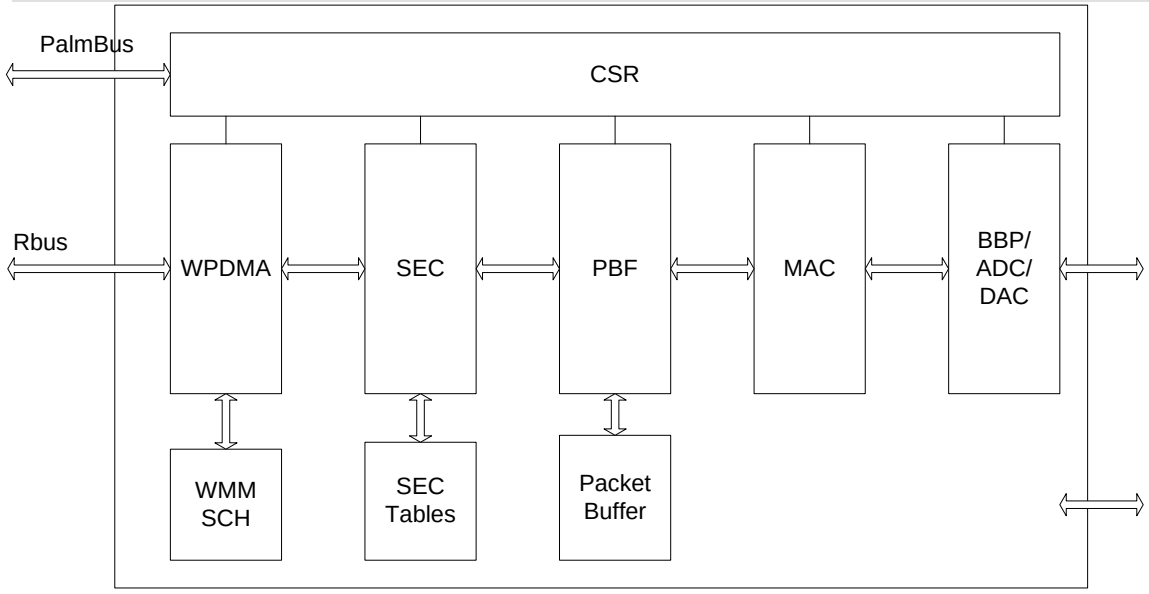



Fig. 3-20-1 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP Block Diagram

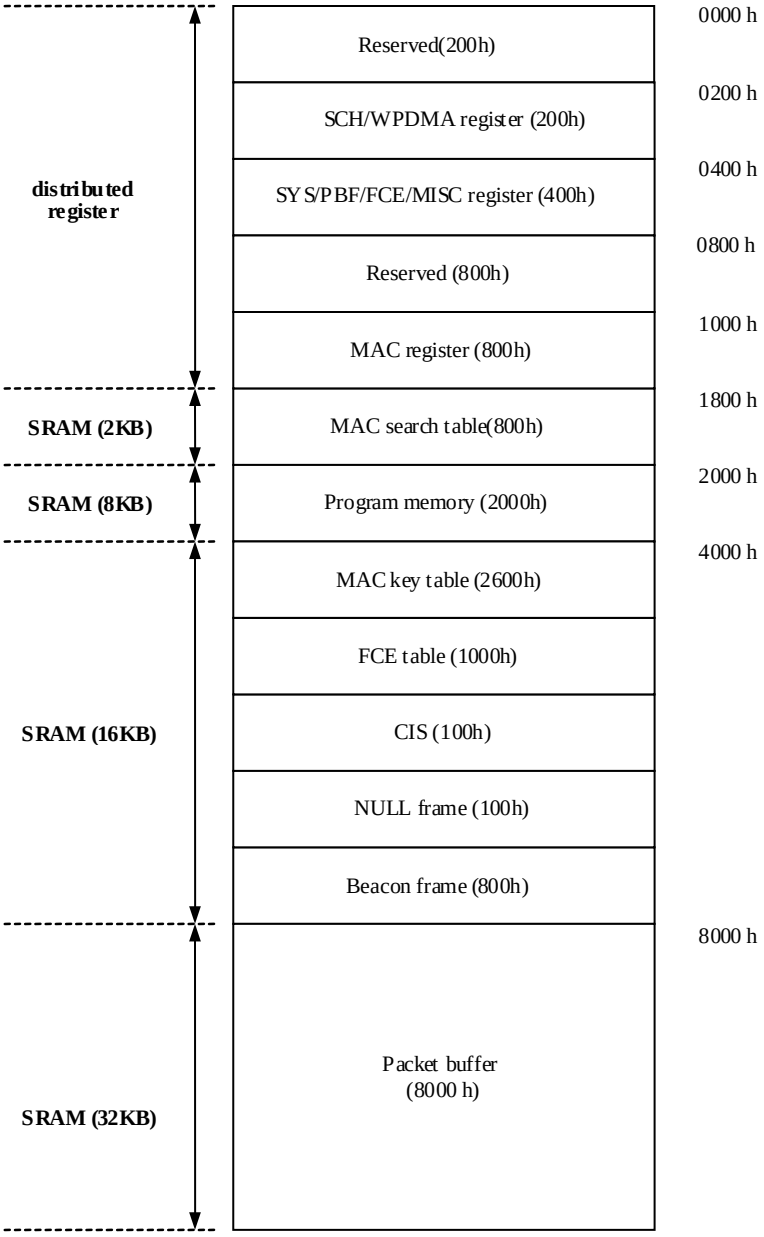



Fig. 3-20-2 802.11n 2T2R MAC/BBP Register Map

### 3.20.3 Register Description (base: 0x1018.0000)

#### 3.20.3.1 Register Description - SCH/WPDMA (base: 1018.0000)

INT_STATUS: INT_STATUS Register (offset: 0x0200)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:21 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 20 | R/W | RADAR_INT | BBP radar detection interrupt | 0 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 17 | R/W | TX_COHERENT | TX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | RX_COHERENT | RX_DMA finds data coherent event when checking ddone bit.<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt. | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Read to get the raw interrupt status | |
| 15 | R/W | MAC_INT_4 | MAC interrupt 4 : GP timer interrupt | 0 |
| 14 | R/W | MAC_INT_3 | MAC interrupt 3 : Auto wakeup interrupt | 0 |
| 13 | R/W | MAC_INT_2 | MAC interrupt 2 : TX status interrupt | 0 |
| 12 | R/W | MAC_INT_1 | MAC interrupt 1 : Pre-TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | MAC_INT_0 | MAC interrupt 0 : TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 10 | RO | TX_RX_COHERENT | When TX_COHERENT or RX_COHERENT is on, this bit is set | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | MCU_CMD_INT | MCU command interrupt | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT5 | TX Queue#5 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt. | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT4 | TX Queue#4 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT3 | TX Queue#3 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT2 | TX Queue#2 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT1 | TX Queue#1 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT0 | TX Queue#0 packet transmit interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DONE_INT | RX packet receive interrupt<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | TX_DLY_INT | Summary of the whole WPDMA TX related interrupts<br>Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | RX_DLY_INT | Summary of the whole WPDMA RX related interrupts Write 1 to clear the interrupt.<br>Read to get the raw interrupt status | 0 |

INT_MASK: INT_MASK Register (offset: 0x0204)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:18 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 20 | R/W | RADAR_INT_EN | Enable for BBP radar detection interrupt<br>1: Enable the interrupt<br>0: Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 19:18 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 17 | R/W | TX_COHERENT_EN | Enable for TX_DMA data coherent interrupt<br>1: Enable the interrupt<br>0: Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | RX_COHERENT_EN | Enable for RX_DMA data coherent interrupt<br>1: Enable the interrupt<br>0: Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 14 | R/W | MAC_INT4_EN | MAC interrupt 4 : GP timer interrupt | 0 |
| 14 | R/W | MAC_INT3_EN | MAC interrupt 3 : Auto wakeup interrupt | 0 |
| 13 | R/W | MAC_INT2_EN | MAC interrupt 2 : TX status interrupt | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | R/W | MAC_INT1_EN | MAC interrupt 1: Pre-TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | MAC_INT0_EN | MAC interrupt 0: TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 10 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | MCU_CMD_INT_MSK | MCU command interrupt enable<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK5 | TX Queue#5 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK4 | TX Queue#4 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK 3 | TX Queue#3 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK 2 | TX Queue#2 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK 1 | TX Queue#1 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | TX_DONE_INT_MSK 0 | TX Queue#0 packet transmit interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DONE_INT_MSK | RX packet receive interrupt<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | TX_DLY_INT_MSK | Summary of the whole WPDMA TX related interrupts<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | RX_ DLY_INT_MSK | Summary of the whole WPDMA RX related interrupts<br>1 : Enable the interrupt<br>0 : Disable the interrupt | 0 |

WPDMA_GLO_CFG: WPDMA_GLO_CFG Register (offset: 0x0208)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | | HDR_SEG_LEN | Specify the header segment size in byte to support RX header/payload scattering function, when set to a non-zero value.<br>When set to zero, the header/payload scattering feature is disabled. | 8'b0 |
| 7 | R/W | BIG_ENDIAN | The endian mode selection. DMA applies the endian rule to convert payload and TX/RX information. DMA won't apply endian rule to register or descriptor. 1: big endian. 0: little endian. | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | TX_WB_DDONE | 0 :Disable TX_DMA writing back DDONE into TXD<br>1 : Enable TX_DMA writing back DDONE into TXD | 1'b1 |
| 5:4 | R/W | WPDMA_BT_SIZE | Define the burst size of WPDMA<br>0 : 4 DWORD (16bytes)<br>1 : 8 DWORD (32 bytes)<br>2 : 16 DWORD (64 bytes)<br>3 : 32 DWORD (128 bytes) | 2'd2 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | RO | RX_DMA_BUSY | 1 : RX_DMA is busy<br>0 : RX_DMA is not busy | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_DMA_EN | 1 : Enable RX_DMA<br>0 : Disable RX_DMA (when disabled, RX_DMA will finish the current receiving packet, then stop.) | 0 |
| 1 | RO | TX_DMA_BUSY | 1 : TX_DMA is busy<br>0 : TX_DMA is not busy | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | TX_DMA_EN | 1 : Enable TX_DMA<br>0 : Disable TX_DMA (when disabled, TX_DMA will finish the current sending packet, then stop.) | 0 |

WPDMA_RST_IDX: WPDMA_RST_IDX Register (offset: 0x020C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 16 | W1C | RST_DRX_IDX0 | Write 1 to reset to RX_DMARX_IDX0 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 15:6 | - | - | Reserved | 1'b0 |
| 5 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX3 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX5 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 4 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX2 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX4 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 3 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX3 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX3 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 2 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX2 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX2 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 1 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX1 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX1 to 0 | 1'b0 |
| 0 | W1C | RST_DTX_IDX0 | Write 1 to reset to TX_DMATX_IDX0 to 0 | 1'b0 |

DELAY_INT_CFG: DELAY_INT_CFG Register (offset: 0x0210)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | RW | TXDLY_INT_EN | 1: Enable TX delayed interrupt mechanism.<br>0: Disable TX delayed interrupt mechanism. | 1'b0 |
| 30:24 | RW | TXMAX_PINT | Specified Max # of pended interrupts.<br>When the # of pended interrupts equal or greater than the value specified here or interrupt pending time reach the limit (See below), a Final TX_DLY_INT is generated.<br>Set to 0 will disable pending interrupt count check | 7'b0 |
| 23:16 | RW | TXMAX_PTIME | Specified Max pending time for the internal TX_DONE_INT0-5.<br>When the pending time equal or greater TXMAX_PTIME x 20us or the # of pended TX_DONE_INT0-5 equal or greater than TXMAX_PINT (see above), an Final TX_DLY_INT is generated<br>Set to 0 will disable pending interrupt time check | 8'b0 |
| 15 | RW | RXDLY_INT_EN | 1: Enable RX delayed interrupt mechanism.<br>0: Disable RX delayed interrupt mechanism. | 1'b0 |
| 14:8 | RW | RXMAX_PINT | Specified Max # of pended interrupts.<br>When the # of pended interrupts equal or greater than the value specified here or interrupt pending time reach the limit (See below), a Final RX_DLY_INT is generated.<br>Set to 0 will disable pending interrupt count check | 7'b0 |
| 7:0 | RW | RXMAX_PTIME | Specified Max pending time for the internal RX_DONE_INT.<br>When the pending time equal or greater RXMAX_PTIME x 20us or , the # of pended RX_DONE_INT equal or greater than RXMAX_PCNT (see above), an Final RX_DLY_INT is generated<br>Set to 0 will disable pending interrupt time check | 8'b0 |

WMM_AIFSN_CFG: WMM_AIFSN_CFG Register (offset: 0x0214)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:12 | RW | AIFSN3 | WMM parameter AIFSN3 | 4'h0 |
| 11:8 | RW | AIFSN2 | WMM parameter AIFSN2 | 4'h0 |
| 7:4 | RW | AIFSN1 | WMM parameter AIFSN1 | 4'h0 |
| 3:0 | RW | AIFSN0 | WMM parameter AIFSN0 | 4'h0 |

WMM_CWMIN_CFG: WMM_CWMIN_CFG Register (offset: 0x0218)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:12 | RW | CW_MIN3 | WMM parameter Cw_min3 | 4'h0 |
| 11:8 | RW | CW_MIN2 | WMM parameter Cw_min2 | 4'h0 |
| 7:4 | RW | CW_MIN1 | WMM parameter Cw_min1 | 4'h0 |
| 3:0 | RW | CW_MIN0 | WMM parameter Cw_min0 | 4'h0 |

WMM_CWMAX_CFG: WMM_CWMAX_CFG Register (offset: 0x021C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 16'b0 |
| 15:12 | RW | CW_MAX3 | WMM parameter Cw_max3 | 4'h0 |
| 11:8 | RW | CW_MAX2 | WMM parameter Cw_max2 | 4'h0 |
| 7:4 | RW | CW_MAX1 | WMM parameter Cw_max1 | 4'h0 |
| 3:0 | RW | CW_MAX0 | WMM parameter Cw_max0 | 4'h0 |

WMM_TXOP0_CFG: WMM_TXOP0_CFG Register (offset: 0x0220)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RW | TXOP1 | WMM parameter TXOP1 | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RW | TXOP0 | WMM parameter TXOP0 | 16'h0 |

WMM_TXOP1_CFG: WMM_TXOP1_CFG Register (offset: 0x0224)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RW | TXOP3 | WMM parameter TXOP3 | 16'h0 |
| 15:0 | RW | TXOP2 | WMM parameter TXOP2 | 16'h0 |

TX_BASE_PTR0: TX_BASE_PTR0 Register (offset: 0x0230)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | TX_BASE_PTR0 | Point to the base address of TX_Ring0 (4-DWORD aligned address) | 0 |

TX_MAX_CNT0: TX_MAX_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x0234)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_MAX_CNT0 | The maximum number of TXD count in TXD_Ring0. | 0 |

TX_CTX_IDX0: TX_CTX_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x0238)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | TX_CTX_IDX0 | Point to the next TXD CPU wants to use | 0 |

TX_DTX_IDX0: TX_DTX_IDX0 Register (offset: 0x023C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 20'b0 |
| 11:0 | RO | TX_DTX_IDX0 | Point to the next TXD DMA wants to use | 0 |

TX_BASE_PTR1 (offset:0x0240,default :0x00000000)
TX_MAX_CNT1 (offset:0x0244,default :0x00000000)
TX_CTX_IDX1 (offset:0x0248,default :0x00000000)
TX_DTX_IDX1 (offset:0x024C,default :0x00000000)

TX_BASE_PTR2 (offset:0x0250,default :0x00000000)
TX_MAX_CNT2 (offset:0x0254,default :0x00000000)
TX_CTX_IDX2 (offset:0x0258,default :0x00000000)
TX_DTX_IDX2 (offset:0x025C,default :0x00000000)

TX_BASE_PTR3 (offset:0x0260,default :0x00000000)
TX_MAX_CNT3 (offset:0x0264,default :0x00000000)
TX_CTX_IDX3 (offset:0x0268,default :0x00000000)
TX_DTX_IDX3 (offset:0x026C,default :0x00000000)

TX_BASE_PTR4 (offset:0x0270,default :0x00000000)
TX_MAX_CNT4 (offset:0x0274,default :0x00000000)
TX_CTX_IDX4 (offset:0x0278,default :0x00000000)
TX_DTX_IDX4 (offset:0x027C,default :0x00000000)

TX_BASE_PTR5 (offset:0x0280,default :0x00000000)
TX_MAX_CNT5 (offset:0x0284,default :0x00000000)
TX_CTX_IDX5 (offset:0x0288,default :0x00000000)
TX_DTX_IDX5 (offset:0x028C,default :0x00000000)

RX_BASE_PTR: RX_BASE_PTR Register (offset: 0x0290)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | RX_BASE_PTR0 | Point to the base address of RXD Ring. It should be a 4-DWORD aligned address | 0 |

RX_MAX_CNT: RX_MAX_CNT Register (offset: 0x0294)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | RX_MAX_CNT0 | The maximum number of RXD count in RXD Ring #0. | 0 |

RX_CALC_IDX: RX_CALC_IDX Register (offset: 0x0298)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | RX_CALC_IDX0 | Point to the next RXD CPU wants to allocate to RXD Ring #0. | 0 |

FS _DRX_IDX: FS _DRX_IDX Register (offset: 0x029C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | RX_DRX_IDX0 | Point to the next RXD DMA wants to use in FDS Ring#0. It should be a 4-DWORD aligned address. | 0 |

US_CYC_CNT: US_CYC_CNT Register (offset: 0x02A4)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:25 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | TEST_EN | Test mode enable | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:16 | R/W | TEST_SEL | Test mode selection | 8'hf0 |
| 15:9 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | BT_MODE_EN | Blue-tooth mode enable | 0 |
| 7:0 | RW | US_CYC_CNT | Clock cycle count in 1us. It's dependent on the system clock rate.<br><br>For system clock rate = 125Mhz, set 8'h7D<br>For system clock rate = 133Mhz, set 8'h85 | 8'h21 |

### 3.20.3.2 Register Description - PBF (base: 1018.0000)

SYS_CTRL: SYS_CTRL Register (offset: 0x0400)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 18 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | HST_PM_SEL | Host program ram write selection. | 0 |
| 15 | | | Reserved | |
| 14 | R/W | CAP_MODE | Packet buffer capture mode.<br>0: packet buffer in normal mode.<br>1: packet buffer in BBP capture mode. | 0 |
| 13 | - | - | Reserved | 1 |
| 12 | R/W | CLKSELECT | MAC/PBF clock source selection.<br>0: from PLL<br>1: from 40MHz clock input | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | PBF_CLKEN | PBF clock enable. | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | MAC_CLK_EN | MAC clock enable. | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | DMA_CLK_EN | DMA clock enable. | 0 |
| 8 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | MCU_READY | MCU ready. 8051 writes '1' to this bit to inform host internal MCU is ready. | 0 |
| 6:5 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | ASY_RESET | ASYNC interface reset. Write '1' to this bit will put ASYNC into reset state. | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | PBF_RESET | PBF hardware reset. Write '1' to this bit will put PBF into reset state. | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | MAC_RESET | MAC hardware reset. Write '1' to this bit will put MAC into reset state. | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | DMA_RESET | DMA hardware reset. Write '1' to this bit will put DMA into reset state. | 0 |
| 0 | W1C | MCU_RESET | MCU hardware reset. This bit will be auto-cleared after several clock cycles. | 0 |

HOST_CMD: HOST_CMD Register (offset: 0x0404)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R/W | HST_CMD | Host command code. Host write this register will trigger interrupt to 8051. | 0 |

PBF_CFG: PBF_CFG Register (offset: 0x0408)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 23:21 | R/W | TX1Q_NUM | Queue depth of Tx1Q. The maximum number is 7. | 3'h7 |
| 20:16 | R/W | TX2Q_NUM | Queue depth of Tx2Q. The maximum number is 20. | 5'h14 |
| 15 | R/W | NULL0_MODE | HCCA NULL0 frame auto mode. In this mode, In this mode, NULL0 frame will be automatically transmitted if TXQ1 is | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | enabled but empty. After NULL0 frame transmitted, TXQ1 will be disabled.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | |
| 14 | R/W | NULL1_MODE | HCCA NULL1 frame auto mode. In this mode, all TXQ (0/1/2) will be disabled after NULL1 frame transmitted.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 13 | R/W | RX_DROP_MODE | Rx drop mode. When set, PBF will drop Rx packet before into DMA.<br>0: normal mode<br>1: drop mode | 0 |
| 12 | R/W | TX0Q_MODE | Tx0Q operation mode.<br>0: auto mode<br>1: manual mode | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | TX1Q_MODE | Tx1Q operation mode.<br>0: auto mode<br>1: manual mode | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | TX2Q_MODE | Tx2Q operation mode.<br>0: auto mode<br>1: manual mode | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | RX0Q_MODE | Rx0Q operation mode.<br>0: auto mode<br>1: manual mode | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | HCCA_MODE | HCCA auto mode. In this mode, TXQ1 will be enabled when CF-POLL arriving.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 7:5 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | TX0Q_EN | Tx0Q enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 3 | R/W | TX1Q_EN | Tx1Q enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | TX2Q_EN | Tx2Q enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 1 | R/W | RX0Q_EN | Rx0Q enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 0 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |

MAX_PCNT: MAX_PCNT Register (offset: 0x040C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | MAX_TX0Q_PCNT | Maximum buffer page count of Tx0Q. | 8'h1f |
| 23:16 | R/W | MAX_TX1Q_PCNT | Maximum buffer page count of Tx1Q. | 8'h3f |
| 15:8 | R/W | MAX_TX2Q_PCNT | Maximum buffer page count of Tx2Q. | 8'h9f |
| 7:0 | R/W | MAX_RX0Q_PCNT | Maximum buffer page count of Rx0Q. | 8'h9f |

BUF_CTRL: BUF_CTRL Register (offset: 0x0410)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11 | W1C | WRITE_TX0Q | Manual write Tx0Q. | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | W1C | WRITE_TX1Q | Manual write Tx1Q. | 0 |
| 9 | W1C | WRITE_TX2Q | Manual write Tx2Q | 0 |
| 8 | W1C | WRITE_RX0Q | Manual write Rx0Q | 0 |
| 7 | W1C | NULL0_KICK | Kick out NULL0 frame. This bit will be cleared after NULL0 frame is transmitted. | 0 |
| 6 | W1C | NULL1_KICK | Kick out NULL1 frame. This bit will be cleared after NULL1 frame is transmitted. | 0 |
| 5 | W1C | BUF_RESET | Buffer reset. | 0 |
| 4 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 3 | W1C | READ_TX0Q | Manual read Tx0Q. | 0 |
| 2 | W1C | READ_TX1Q | Manual read Tx1Q. | 0 |
| 1 | W1C | READ_TX2Q | Manual read Tx2Q | 0 |
| 0 | W1C | READ_RX0Q | Manual read Rx0Q | 0 |

MCU_INT_STA : MCU_INT_STA Register (offset:0x0414)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 27 | R/W | MAC_INT_11 | MAC interrupt 11: Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | MAC_INT_10 | MAC interrupt 10: Reserved | 0 |
| 25 | R/W | MAC_INT_9 | MAC interrupt 9 : Reserved | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | MAC_INT_8 | MAC interrupt 8 : RX QoS CF-Poll interrupt | 0 |
| 23 | R/W | MAC_INT_7 | MAC interrupt 7 : TXOP early termination interrupt | 0 |
| 22 | R/W | MAC_INT_6 | MAC interrupt 6 : TXOP early timeout interrupt | 0 |
| 21 | R/W | MAC_INT_5 | MAC interrupt 5 : Reserved | 0 |
| 20 | R/W | MAC_INT_4 | MAC interrupt 4 : GP timer interrupt | 0 |
| 19 | R/W | MAC_INT_3 | MAC interrupt 3 : Auto wakeup interrupt | 0 |
| 18 | R/W | MAC_INT_2 | MAC interrupt 2 : TX status interrupt | 0 |
| 17 | R/W | MAC_INT_1 | MAC interrupt 1 : Pre-TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | MAC_INT_0 | MAC interrupt 0 : TBTT interrupt | 0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | DTX0_INT | DMA to TX0Q frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | DTX1_INT | DMA to TX1Q frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | DTX2_INT | DMA to TX2Q frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | DRX0_INT | RX0Q to DMA frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | HCMD_INT | Host command interrupt. | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | N0TX_INT | NULL0 frame Tx complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | N1TX_INT | NULL1 frame Tx complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | BCNTX_INT | Beacon frame Tx complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | MTX0_INT | TX0Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | MTX1_INT | TX1Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | MTX2_INT | TX2Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | MRX0_INT | MAC to RX0Q frame transfer complete interrupt. | 0 |

*This register is only for 8051.

MCU_INT_ENA: MCU_INT_ENA Register (offset: 0x0418)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 27 | R/W | MAC_INT11_EN | MAC interrupt 11 enable | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 26 | R/W | MAC_INT10_EN | MAC interrupt 10 enable | 0 |
| 25 | R/W | MAC_INT9_EN | MAC interrupt 9 enable | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | MAC_INT8_EN | MAC interrupt 8 enable | 0 |
| 23 | R/W | MAC_INT7_EN | MAC interrupt 7 enable | 0 |
| 22 | R/W | MAC_INT6_EN | MAC interrupt 6 enable | 0 |
| 21 | R/W | MAC_INT5_EN | MAC interrupt 5 enable | 0 |
| 20 | R/W | MAC_INT4_EN | MAC interrupt 4 enable | 0 |
| 19 | R/W | MAC_INT3_EN | MAC interrupt 3 enable | 0 |
| 18 | R/W | MAC_INT2_EN | MAC interrupt 2 enable | 0 |
| 17 | R/W | MAC_INT1_EN | MAC interrupt 1 enable | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | MAC_INT0_EN | MAC interrupt 0 enable | 0 |
| 15:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | DTX0_INT_EN | DMA to TX0Q frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | DTX1_INT_EN | DMA to TX1Q frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | DTX2_INT_EN | DMA to TX2Q frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | DRX0_INT_EN | RX0Q to DMA frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | HCMD_INT_EN | Host command interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | N0TX_INT_EN | NULL0 frame Tx complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | N1TX_INT_EN | NULL1 frame Tx complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | BCNTX_INT_EN | Beacon frame Tx complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | MTX0_INT_EN | TX0Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | MTX1_INT_EN | TX1Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | MTX2_INT_EN | TX2Q to MAC frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | MRX0_INT_EN | MAC to RX0Q frame transfer complete interrupt enable. | 0 |

*This register is only for 8051.

TX0Q_IO: TX0Q_IO Register (offset: 0x041C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TX0Q_IO | TX0Q IO port. This register is used in manual mode. | 0 |

TX1Q_IO: TX1Q_IO Register (offset: 0x0420)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TX1Q_IO | TX1Q IO port. This register is used in manual mode. | 0 |

TX2Q_IO: TX2Q_IO Register (offset: 0x0424)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | TX2Q_IO | TX2Q IO port. This register is used in manual mode. | 0 |

RX0Q_IO: RX0Q_IO Register (offset: 0x0428)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | RX0Q_IO | RX0Q IO port. This register is used in manual mode. | 0 |

BCN_OFFSET0: BCN_OFFSET0 Register (offset: 0x042C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | BCN3_OFFSET | Beacon #3 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'hec |
| 23:16 | R/W | BCN2_OFFSET | Beacon #2 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'he8 |
| 15:8 | R/W | BCN1_OFFSET | Beacon #1 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'he4 |
| 7:0 | R/W | BCN0_OFFSET | Beacon #0 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'he0 |

BCN_OFFSET1: BCN_OFFSET1 Register (offset: 0x0430)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | BCN7_OFFSET | Beacon #7 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'hfc |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 23:16 | R/W | BCN6_OFFSET | Beacon #6 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'hf8 |
| 15:8 | R/W | BCN5_OFFSET | Beacon #5 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'hf4 |
| 7:0 | R/W | BCN4_OFFSET | Beacon #4 address offset in shared memory. Unit is 64 byte. | 8'hf0 |

TXRXQ_STA: TXRXQ_STA Register (offset: 0x0434)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | RX0Q_STA | RxQ status | 8'h22 |
| 23:16 | RO | TX2Q_STA | Tx2Q status | 8'h02 |
| 15:8 | RO | TX1Q_STA | Tx1Q status | 8'h02 |
| 7:0 | RO | TX0Q_STA | Tx0Q status | 8'h02 |

TXRXQ_PCNT: TXRXQ_PCNT Register (offset: 0x0438)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | RO | RX0Q_PCNT | Page count in RxQ | 8'h00 |
| 23:16 | RO | TX2Q_PCNT | Page count in Tx2Q | 8'h00 |
| 15:8 | RO | TX1Q_PCNT | Page count in Tx1Q | 8'h00 |
| 7:0 | RO | TX0Q_PCNT | Page count in Tx0Q | 8'h00 |

PBF_DBG: PBF_DBG Register (offset: 0x043C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 7:0 | RO | FREE_PCNT | Free page count | 8'hFE |

CAP_CTRL: CAP_CTRL Register (offset: 0x0440)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | CAP_ADC_FEQ | Data source.<br>0: data from the ADC output<br>1: Data from the FEQ output | 0 |
| 30 | WC | CAP_START | Data capture start<br>0: No action<br>1: Start data capture (cleared automatically after capture finished) | 0 |
| 29 | W1C | MAN_TRIG | Manual capture trigger | 0 |
| 28:16 | R/W | TRIG_OFFSET | Starting address offset before trigger point. | 13'h140 |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 12:0 | RO | START_ADDR | Starting address of captured data. | 13'h000 |

### 3.20.3.3 Register Description – RF CFG (base: 1018.0000)

RF_CSR_CFG: RF_CSR_CFG Register (offset: 0x0500)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Init Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:18 | R | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 17 | R/W1 | RF_CSR_KICK | Write – kick RF register read/write<br>0: do nothing 1: kick read/write process<br><br>Read – Polling RF register read/write<br>0: idle 1: busy | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | RF_CSR_WR | 0: read 1: write | 0 |
| 15:13 | R | | Reserved | 0 |
| 12:8 | R/W | TESTCSR_RFACC_REGNUM | RF register ID<br>0 for R0, 1 for R1 and so on. | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | RF_CSR_DATA | Write – DATA written to RF<br>Read – DATA read from RF | 0 |

RF_SETTING: RF_SETTING Register (offset: 0x0504)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Init Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | R | - | Reserved | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 25 | R/W | TEST_RF_PA_PE_G1 | RF_PA_PE_G0 value for Rx path 1 in test mode | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | TEST_RF_DC_CAL_EN1 | RF_DC_CAL_EN value for Rx path 1 in test mode | 0 |
| 23 | R | - | Reserved | |
| 22:21 | R/W | TEST_RF_LNA1 | RF_LNA value for Rx path 1 in test mode | 0 |
| 20:16 | R/W | TEST_RF_VGA1 | RF VGA value for Rx path 1 in test mode | 0 |
| 15:13 | R | - | Reserved | |
| 12 | R/W | TESTCSR_RF_PE | RF_PE value in test mode | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | TESTCSR_RF_TR | RF_TR value in test mode | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | TEST_RF_LDO123_PE | LDO123_PE value in test mode | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | TEST_RF_PA_PE_G0 | RF_PA_PE_G0 value for Rx path 0 in test mode | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | TEST_RF_DC_CAL_EN0 | RF_DC_CAL_EN value for Rx path 0 in test mode | 0 |
| 7 | R | - | Reserved | |
| 6:5 | R/W | TEST_RF_LNA0 | RF_LNA value for Rx path 0 in test mode | 0 |
| 4:0 | R/W | TEST_RF_VGA0 | RF VGA value for Rx path 0 in test mode | 0 |

RF_TEST_CONTROL: RF_TEST_CONTROL Register (offset: 0x0508)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Init Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:1 | R | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | BYPASS_RF | When set, RF control signals come from RF_SETTING instead of MAC/BBP in normal operation mode | 0 |

### 3.20.3.4 Register Description - MAC (base: 1018.0000)

ASIC_VER_ID: ASIC_VER_ID Register (offset: 0x1000)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R | VER_ID | ASIC version ID | 16'h2860 |
| 15:0 | R | REV_ID | ASIC reversion ID | 16'h0101 |

MAC_SYS_CTRL: MAC_SYS_CTRL Register (offset: 0x1004)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 7 | R/W | RX_TS_EN | Write 32-bit hardware RX timestamp instead of (RXWI->RSSI), and write (RXWI->RSSI) instead of (RXWI->SNR).<br><br>Note: For QA RX sniffer mode only.<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | WLAN_HALT_EN | Enable external WLAN halt control signal<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | PBF_LOOP_EN | Packet buffer loop back enable (TX->RX)<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | CONT_TX_TEST | Continuous TX production test; override MAC_RX_EN, MAC_TX_EN<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | MAC_RX_EN | MAC RX enable<br>1: enable<br>0: disable | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | MAC_TX_EN | MAC TX enable | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1: enable<br>0: disable | |
| 1 | R/W | BBP_HRST | BBP hard-reset<br>1: BBP in reset state<br>0: BBP in normal state<br><br>Note: Whole BBP including BBP registers will be reset. | 1 |
| 0 | R/W | MAC_SRST | MAC soft-reset<br>1: MAC in reset state<br>0: MAC in normal state<br><br>Note: MAC registers and tables will **NOT** be reset. | 1 |

**Note:** MAC hard-reset is outside the scope of MAC registers.

MAC_ADDR_DW0: MAC_ADDR_DW0 Register (offset: 0x1008)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_3 | MAC address byte3 | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_2 | MAC address byte2 | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_1 | MAC address byte1 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_0 | MAC address byte0 | 0 |

MAC_ADDR_DW1: MAC_ADDR_DW1 Register (offset: 0x100C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_5 | MAC address byte5 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | MAC_ADDR_4 | MAC address byte4 | 0 |

**Note:** Byte0 is the first byte on network. Its LSB bit is the first bit on network. For a MAC address captured on the network with order 00:01:02:03:04:05, byte0=00, byte1=01 etc.

MAC_BSSID_DW0: MAC_BSSID_DW0 Register (offset: 0x1010)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | BSSID_3 | BSSID byte3 | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | BSSID_2 | BSSID byte2 | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | BSSID_1 | BSSID byte1 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | BSSID_0 | BSSID byte0 | 0 |

MAC_BSSID_DW1: MAC_BSSID_DW1 Register (offset: 0x1014)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:21 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 20:18 | R/W | MULTI_BCN_NUM | Multiple BSSID Beacon number<br><br>0: one back-off beacon<br>1-7: SIFS-burst beacon count | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | MULTI_BSSID_MODE | Multiple BSSID mode<br><br>In multiple-BSSID AP mode, BSSID shall be the same as MAC_ADDR, that is, this device owns multiple MAC_ADDR in this mode.<br><br>The multiple MAC_ADDR/BSSID are distinguished by [bit2: bit0] of byte5. | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 0: 1-BSSID mode (BSS index = 0)<br>1: 2-BSSID mode (byte5.bit0 as BSS index)<br>2: 4-BSSID mode (byte5.bit1:0 as BSS index)<br>3: 8-BSSID mode (byte5.bit2:0 as BSS index) | |
| 15:8 | R/W | BSSID_5 | BSSID byte5 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | BSSID_4 | BSSID byte4 | 0 |

MAX_LEN_CFG: MAX_LEN_CFG Register (offset: 0x1018)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | MIN_MPDU_LEN | Minimum MPDU length (unit: bytes)<br><br>MAC will drop the MPDU if the length is less than this limitation. Applied only in MAC RX. | 10 |
| 15:14 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 13:12 | R/W | MAX_PSDU_LEN | Maximum PSDU length (power factor)<br><br>0: 2^13 = 8K bytes<br>1: 2^14 = 16K bytes<br>2: 2^15 = 32K bytes<br>3: 2^16 = 64K bytes<br><br>MAC will NOT generate A-MPDU with length greater than this limitation. Applied only in MAC TX. | 0 |
| 11:0 | R/W | MAX_MPDU_LEN | Maximum MPDU length (unit: bytes)<br><br>MAC will drop the MPDU if the length is greater than this limitation. Applied only in MAC RX. | 4095 |

BBP_CSR_CFG: BBP_CSR_CFG Register (offset: 0x101C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19 | R/W | BBP_RW_MODE | BBP Register R/W mode<br>1: parallel mode<br>0: serial mode | 1 |
| 18 | R/W | BBP_PAR_DUR | BBP Register parallel R/W pulse width<br>0: pulse width = 62.5ns<br>1: pulse width = 112.5ns<br><br>**Note:** Please set BBP_PAR_DUR=1 in 802.11J mode. | 0 |
| 17 | R/W | BBP_CSR_KICK | Write - kick BBP register read/write<br>0: do nothing 1: kick read/write process<br><br>Read - Polling BBP register read/write progress<br>0: idle, 1: busy | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | BBP_CSR_RW | 0: Write<br>1: Read | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | BBP_ADDR | BBP register ID<br>0 for R0, 1 for R1, and so on. | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | BBP_DATA | Write - Data written to BBP<br>Read - Data read from BBP | 0 |

RF_CSR_CFG0: RF_CSR_CFG0 Register (offset: 0x1020)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | R/W | RF_REG_CTRL | Write: 1 - RF_REG0/1/2 to RF chip<br>Read: 0 – idle, 1 - busy | 0 |
| 30 | R/W | RF_LE_SEL | RF_LE selection<br>0:RF_LE0 activate<br>1:RF_LE1 activate | 0 |
| 29 | R/W | RF_LE_STBY | RF_LE standby mode<br>0: RF_LE is high when standby<br>1: RF_LE is low when standby | 0 |
| 28:24 | R/W | RF_REG_WIDTH | RF register bit width<br>Default: 22 | 22 |
| 23:0 | R/W | RF_REG_0 | RF register0 ID and content | 0 |

RF_CSR_CFG1: RF_CSR_CFG1 Register (offset: 0x1024)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:25 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | RF_DUR | Gap between BB_CONTROL_RF and RF_LE<br><br>0: 3 system clock cycle (37.5usec)<br>1: 5 system clock cycle (62.5usec) | 0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | RF_REG_1 | RF register1 ID and content | 0 |

RF_CSR_CFG2: RF_CSR_CFG2 Register (offset: 0x1028)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 23:0 | R/W | RF_REG_2 | RF register2 ID and content | 0 |

**Note:** Software should make sure the first bit (MSB in the specified bit number) written to RF is 0 for RF chip mode selection)

LED_CFG: LED_CFG Register (offset: 0x102C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 30 | R/W | LED_POL | LED polarity<br>0: active low<br>1: active high | 0 |
| 29:28 | R/W | Y_LED_MODE | Yellow LED mode<br>0: off<br>1: blinking upon TX<br>2: periodic slow blinking<br>3: always on | 0 |
| 27:26 | R/W | G_LED_MODE | Green LED mode<br>0: off<br>1: blinking upon TX<br>2: periodic slow blinking<br>3: always on | 2 |
| 25:24 | R/W | R_LED_MODE | Red LED mode<br>0: off<br>1: blinking upon TX | 1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2: periodic slow blinking<br>3: always on | |
| 23:22 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 21:16 | R/W | SLOW_BLK_TIME | Slow blinking period (unit: 1sec) | 3 |
| 15:8 | R/W | LED_OFF_TIME | TX blinking off period (unit: 1ms) | 30 |
| 7:0 | R/W | LED_ON_TIME | TX blinking on period (unit: 1ms) | 70 |

AMPDU_MAX_LEN_20M1S: AMPDU_MAX_LEN_20M1S Register (offset: 0x1030)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS7 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS7* | 7 |
| 27:24 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS6 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS6* | 7 |
| 23:20 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS5 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS5* | 7 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS4 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS4* | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS3 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS3* | 7 |
| 11:08 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS2 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS2* | 7 |
| 07:04 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS1 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS1* | 7 |
| 03:00 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS0 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS0* | 7 |

**Note1*: 0-2:** 2K bytes, **3:** 4K bytes, **4:** 8K, **5:** 16K, **6:** 32K, **7:** 64K

**Note2:** The value applied together with 0x1018 MAX_PSDU_LEN.

AMPDU_MAX_LEN_20M2S: AMPDU_MAX_LEN_20M2S Register (offset: 0x1034)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS15 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS15* | 7 |
| 27:24 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS14 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS14* | 7 |
| 23:20 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS13 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS13* | 7 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS12 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS12* | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS11 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS11* | 7 |
| 11:08 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS10 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS10* | 7 |
| 07:04 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS9 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS9* | 7 |
| 03:00 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW20_MCS8 | Maximum AMPDU for BW20 MCS8* | 7 |

**Note1*:** 0-2: 2K bytes, 3: 4K bytes, 4: 8K, 5: 16K, 6: 32K, 7: 64K

**Note2:** The value applied together with 0x1018 MAX_PSDU_LEN.

AMPDU_MAX_LEN_40M1S: AMPDU_MAX_LEN_40M1S Register (offset: 0x1038)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS7 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS7* | 7 |
| 27:24 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS6 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS6* | 7 |
| 23:20 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS5 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS5* | 7 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS4 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS4* | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS3 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS3* | 7 |
| 11:08 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS2 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS2* | 7 |
| 07:04 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS1 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS1* | 7 |
| 03:00 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS0 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS0* | 7 |

**Note1*:** 0-2: 2K bytes, 3: 4K bytes, 4: 8K, 5: 16K, 6: 32K, 7: 64K

**Note2:** The value applied together with 0x1018 MAX_PSDU_LEN.

AMPDU_MAX_LEN_40M2S: AMPDU_MAX_LEN_40M2S Register (offset: 0x103C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS15 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS15* | 7 |
| 27:24 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS14 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS14* | 7 |
| 23:20 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS13 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS13* | 7 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS12 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS12* | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS11 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS11* | 7 |
| 11:08 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS10 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS10* | 7 |
| 07:04 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS9 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS9* | 7 |
| 03:00 | R/W | AMPDU_MAX_BW40_MCS8 | Maximum AMPDU for BW40 MCS8* | 7 |

**Note1*:** 0-2: 2K bytes, 3: 4K bytes, 4: 8K, 5: 16K, 6: 32K, 7: 64K

**Note2:** The value applied together with 0x1018 MAX_PSDU_LEN.

AMPDU_BA_WINSIZE: AMPDU_BA_WINSIZE Register ( (offset: 0x1040)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:07 | R | - | Reserved | 0 |
| -- :06 | R/W | FORCE_BA_WINSIZE_EN | Enable forced BA window size over BA window size value in TXWI<br>0: disable, 1: enable | 0 |
| 05:00 | R/W | FORCE_BA_WINSIZE | Forced BA window size | 0 |

XIFS_TIME_CFG: XIFS_TIME_CFG Register (offset:0x1100)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:30 | - | - | Reserved | |
| 29 | R/W | BB_RXEND_EN | BB_RX_END signal enable<br>Refer BB_RX_END signal from BBP RX logic to start SIFS defer.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 28:20 | R/W | EIFS_TIME | EIFS time (unit: 1us)<br>EIFS is the defer time after reception of a CRC error packet. After deferring EIFS, the normal back-off process may proceed. | 314 |
| 19:16 | R/W | OFDM_XIFS_TIME | Delayed OFDM SIFS time compensator (unit: 1us)<br>When BB_RX_END from BBP is a delayed version the SIFS deferred will be (OFDM_SIFS_TIME - OFDM_XIFS_TIME) | 4 |
| 15:8 | R/W | OFDM_SIFS_TIME | OFDM SIFS time (unit: 1us)<br>Applied after OFDM TX/RX. | 16 |
| 7:0 | R/W | CCK_SIFS_TIME | CCK SIFS time (unit: 1us)<br>Applied after CCK TX/RX. | 10 |

**Note1:** EIFS = SIFS + ACK @ 1Mbps + DIFS = 10us (SIFS) + 192us (long preamble) + 14*8us (ACK) + 50us (DIFS) = 364. However, MAC should start back-off procedure after (EIFS-DIFS).

**Note2:** EIFS is not applied if MAC is a TXOP initiator that owns the channel.

**Note3:** EIFS is not started if AMPDU is only partial corrupted.

Caution: It is recommended that both (CCK_SIFS_TIME) and (OFDM_SIFS_TIME) are no less than TX/RX transition time. If the SIFS value is not long enough, a SIFS burst transmission may be replaced with a PIFS burst one.

BKOFF_SLOT_CFG: BKOFF_SLOT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1104)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11:8 | R/W | CC_DELAY_TIME | Channel clear delay (unit: 1-us)<br>This value specified the TX guard time after channel is clear. | 2 |
| 7:0 | R/W | SLOT_TIME | Slot time (unit: 1-us)<br>This value specified the slot boundary after deferring SIFS time.<br>**Note:** Default 20us is for 11b/g. 11a and 11g-short-slot-mode is 9us. | 20 |

NAV_TIME_CFG: NAV_TIME_CFG Register (offset: 0x1108)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | WC | NAV_UPD | NAV timer manual update command<br>0: Do nothing<br>1: Update NAV timer with NAV_UPD_VAL | 0 |
| 30:16 | R/W | NAV_UPD_VAL | NAV timer manual update value (unit: 1us) | 0 |
| 15 | R/W | NAV_CLR_EN | NAV timer auto-clear enable<br>When enabled, MAC will auto clear NAV timer after the reception of CF-End frame from previous NAV holder STA.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 14:0 | R | NAV_TIMER | NAV timer (unit: 1us)<br>The timer is set by other STA and will auto countdown to zero. The STA who set the NAV timer is called the NAV holder. When NAV timer is nonzero, MAC will not send any packet. | 0 |

CH_TIME_CFG: CH_TIME_CFG Register (offset: 0x110C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:5 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | EIFS_AS_CH_BUSY | Count EIFS as channel busy<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 3 | R/W | NAV_AS_CH_BUSY | Count NAV as channel busy<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 2 | R/W | RX_AS_CH_BUSY | Count RX busy as channel busy<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |
| 1 | R/W | TX_AS_CH_BUSY | Count TX busy as channel busy<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | R/W | CH_STA_TIMER_EN | Channel statistic timer enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |

PBF_LIFE_TIMER: PBF_LIFE_TIMER Register (offset: 0x1110)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R | PBF_LIFE_TIMER | TX/RX MPDU timestamp timer (free run)<br>Unit: 1us | 0 |

BCN_TIME_CFG: BCN_TIME_CFG Register (offset: 0x1114)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TSF_INS_COMP | TSF insertion compensation value (unit: 1us)<br>When inserting TSF, add this value with local TSF timer as the TX timestamp. | 0 |
| 23:21 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 20 | R/W | BCN_TX_EN | BEACON frame TX enable<br>When enabled, MAC sends BEACON frame at TBTT interrupt.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 19 | R/W | TBTT_TIMER_EN | TBTT timer enable<br>When enabled, TBTT interrupt will be issued periodically with period specified in (BCN_INTVAL).<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 18:17 | R/W | TSF_SYNC_MODE | Local 64-bit TSF timer synchronization mode<br>00: disable<br>01: (STA infra-structure mode) Upon the reception of BEACON frame from associated BSS, local TSF is always updated with remote TSF.<br>10: (STA ad-hoc mode) Upon the reception of BEACON frame from associated BSS, local TSF is updated with remote TSF only if the remote TSF is greater than local TSF.<br>11: (AP mode) SYNC with nobody | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | TSF_TIMER_EN | Local 64-bit TSF timer enable<br>When enabled, TSF timer will re-start from zero.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | BCN_INTVAL | BEACON interval (unit: 64us)<br>This value specified the interval between<br>Maximum beacon interval is about 4sec. | 1600 |

TBTT_SYNC_CFG: TBTT_SYNC_CFG Register (offset: 0x1118)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 23:20 | R/W | BCN_CWMIN | Beacon transmission CWMIN after TBTT interrupt (unit: | 4 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | slot) | |
| 19:16 | R/W | BCN_AIFSN | Beacon transmission AIFSN after TBTT interrupt (unit: slot) | 2 |
| 15:8 | R/W | BCN_EXP_WIN | Beacon expecting window duration (unit: 64us)<br>The window starts from TBTT interrupt. The phase of "TBTT interrupt train" will NOT be adjusted by the beacon arrived within the window. | 32 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TBTT_ADJUST | IBSS mode TBTT phase adaptive adjustment step (unit: 1us), default value is 16us.<br>In IBSS mode (Ad hoc), if consecutive TX beacon failures (or consecutive success) happened, TBTT timer will adjust it phase to meet the external Ad hoc TBTT time. | 16 |

TSF_TIMER_DW0: TSF_TIMER_DW0 Register (offset: 0x111C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R | TSF_TIMER_DW0 | Local TSF timer LSB 32 bits (unit: 1us) | 0 |

TSF_TIMER_DW1: TSF_TIMER_DW1 Register (offset: 0x1120)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | R | TSF_TIMER_DW1 | Local TSF timer MSB 32 bits (unit: 1us) | 0 |

TBTT_TIMER: TBTT_TIMER _DW0 Register (offset: 0x1124)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 16:0 | R | TBTT_TIMER | TBTT Timer (unit: 32us)<br>The time remains till next TBTT.<br>When TBTT_TIMER_EN is enabled, the timer will down count from BCN_INTVAL to zero.<br>When TBTT_TIMER_EN is disabled, the timer will stay in zero. | 0 |

INT_TIMER_CFG: INT_TIMER_CFG Register (offset: 0x1128)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | GP_TIMER | Period of general purpose interrupt timer<br>(Unit: 64us) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | PRE_TBTT_TIMER | Pre-TBTT interrupt time (unit: 64us)<br>The value specified the interrupt timing before TBTT interrupt. | 0 |

INT_TIMER_EN: INT_TIMER_EN Register (offset: 0x112C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:2 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | GP_TIMER_EN | Periodic general purpose interrupt timer enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | PRE_TBTT_INT_EN | Pre-TBTT interrupt enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |

CH_IDLE_STA: CH_IDLE_STA Register (offset: 0x1130)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RC | CH_IDLE_TIME | Channel idle time<br>Unit: 1us | 0 |

In application, the channel busy time can be derived by the equation:

CH_BUSY_TIME = host polling period – CH_IDLE_TIME.

Reserved: Reserved Register (offset: 0x1134)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:0 | RC | Reserved | Reserved | 0 |

MAC_STATUS_REG: MAC_STATUS_REG Register (offset: 0x1200)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:2 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 1 | R | RX_STATUS | RX status<br>0: Idle<br>1: Busy | 0 |
| 0 | R | TX_STATUS | TX status<br>0: Idle<br>1: Busy | 0 |

PWR_PIN_CFG: PWR_PIN_CFG Register (offset: 0x1204)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:4 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | IO_ADDA_PD | AD/DA power down | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | IO_PLL_PD | PLL power down | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | IO_RA_PE | RA_PE | 1 |
| 0 | R/W | IO_RF_PE | RF_PE | 1 |

AUTO_WAKEUP_CFG: AUTO_WAKEUP_CFG Register (offset:0x1208)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15 | R/W | AUTO_WAKEUP_EN | Auto wakeup interrupt enable<br>Auto wakeup interrupt will be issued after #(SLEEP_TBTT_NUM) TBTTs' at WAKEUP_LEAD_TIME before the target wakeup TBTT.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable<br>**Note:** Please make sure TBTT_TIMER_EN is enabled. | 0 |
| 14:8 | R/W | SLEEP_TBTT_NUM | Number of sleeping TBTT | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | WAKEUP_LEAD_TIME | Auto wakeup lead time (unit: 1TU=1024us) | 20 |

### 3.20.3.5 MAC TX configuration registers (base: 1018.0000)

EDCA_AC0_CFG (BE): EDCA_AC0_CFG (BE) Register (offset: 0x1300)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AC0_CWMAX | AC0 CWMAX (unit: power of 2) | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AC0_CWMIN | AC0 CWMIN (unit: power of 2) | 3 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11:8 | R/W | AC0_AIFSN | AC0 AIFSN (unit: # of slot time) | 2 |
| 7:0 | R/W | AC0_TXOP | AC0 TXOP limit (unit: 32us) | 0 |

EDCA_AC1_CFG (BK): EDCA_AC1_CFG (BK) Register (offset: 0x1304)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AC1_CWMAX | AC1 CWMAX (unit: power of 2) | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AC1_CWMIN | AC1 CWMIN (unit: power of 2) | 3 |
| 11:8 | R/W | AC1_AIFSN | AC1 AIFSN (unit: # of slot time) | 2 |
| 7:0 | R/W | AC1_TXOP | AC1 TXOP limit (unit: 32us) | 0 |

EDCA_AC2_CFG (VI): EDCA_AC2_CFG (VI) Register (offset: 0x1308)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AC2_CWMAX | AC2 CWMAX (unit: power of 2) | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AC2_CWMIN | AC2 CWMIN (unit: power of 2) | 3 |
| 11:8 | R/W | AC2_AIFSN | AC2 AIFSN (unit: # of slot time) | 2 |
| 7:0 | R/W | AC2_TXOP | AC2 TXOP limit (unit: 32us) | 0 |

EDCA_AC3_CFG (VO): EDCA_AC3_CFG (VO) Register (offset: 0x130C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | AC3_CWMAX | AC3 CWMAX (unit: power of 2) | 7 |
| 15:12 | R/W | AC3_CWMIN | AC3 CWMIN (unit: power of 2) | 3 |
| 11:8 | R/W | AC3_AIFSN | AC3 AIFSN (unit: # of slot time) | 2 |
| 7:0 | R/W | AC3_TXOP | AC3 TXOP limit (unit: 32us) | 0 |

EDCA_TID_AC_MAP: EDCA_TID_AC_MAP Register (offset: 0x1310)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:14 | R/W | TID7_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=7 | 3 |
| 13:12 | R/W | TID6_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=6 | 3 |
| 11:10 | R/W | TID5_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=5 | 2 |
| 9:8 | R/W | TID4_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=4 | 2 |
| 7:6 | R/W | TID3_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=3 | 0 |
| 5:4 | R/W | TID2_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=2 | 1 |
| 3:2 | R/W | TID1_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=1 | 1 |
| 1:0 | R/W | TID0_AC_MAP | AC value as TID=0 | 0 |

**Note:** default according 802.11e Table 20.23—User priority to Access Category mappings.

TX_PWR_CFG_0: TX_PWR_CFG_0 Register (offset: 0x1314, default: 0x6666_6666)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TX_PWR_OFDM_12 | TX power for OFDM 12M/18M | 0x66 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TX_PWR_OFDM_6 | TX power for OFDM 6M/9M | 0x66 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TX_PWR_CCK_5 | TX power for CCK5.5M/11M | 0x66 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TX_PWR_CCK_1 | TX power for CCK1M/2M | 0x66 |

TX_PWR_CFG_1: TX_PWR_CFG_1 Register (offset: 0x1318)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_2 | TX power for HT MCS=2,3 | 0x66 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_0 | TX power for HT MCS=0,1 | 0x66 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TX_PWR_OFDM_48 | TX power for OFDM 48M/54M | 0x66 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TX_PWR_OFDM_24 | TX power for OFDM 24M/36M | 0x66 |

TX_PWR_CFG_2: TX_PWR_CFG_2 Register (offset: 0x131C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_10 | TX power for HT MCS=10,11 | 0x66 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_8 | TX power for HT MCS=8,9 | 0x66 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_6 | TX power for HT MCS=6,7 | 0x66 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_4 | TX power for HT MCS=4,5 | 0x66 |

TX_PWR_CFG_3: TX_PWR_CFG_3 Register (offset: 0x1320)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | - | Reserved | 0x66 |
| 23:16 | R/W | - | Reserved | 0x66 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_14 | TX power for HT MCS=14,15 | 0x66 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TX_PWR_MCS_12 | TX power for HT MCS=12,13 | 0x66 |

TX_PWR_CFG_4: TX_PWR_CFG_4 Register (offset: 0x1324)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | - | Reserved | 0x66 |
| 7:0 | R/W | - | Reserved | 0x66 |

TX_PIN_CFG: TX_PIN_CFG Register (offset: 0x1328)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19 | R/W | TRSW_POL | TRSW_EN polarity | 0 |
| 18 | R/W | TRSW_EN | TRSW_EN enable | 1 |
| 17 | R/W | RFTR_POL | RF_TR polarity | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | RFTR_EN | RF_TR enable | 1 |
| 15 | R/W | LNA_PE_G1_POL | LNA_PE_G1 polarity | 0 |
| 14 | R/W | LNA_PE_A1_POL | LNA_PE_A1 polarity | 0 |
| 13 | R/W | LNA_PE_G0_POL | LNA_PE_G0 polarity | 0 |
| 12 | R/W | LNA_PE_A0_POL | LNA_PE_A0 polarity | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | LNA_PE_G1_EN | LNA_PE_G1 enable | 1 |
| 10 | R/W | LNA_PE_A1_EN | LNA_PE_A1 enable | 1 |
| 9 | R/W | LNA_PE_G0_EN | LNA_PE_G0 enable | 1 |
| 8 | R/W | LNA_PE_A0_EN | LNA_PE_A0 enable | 1 |
| 7 | R/W | PA_PE_G1_POL | PA_PE_G1 polarity | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | PA_PE_A1_POL | PA_PE_A1 polarity | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | PA_PE_G0_POL | PA_PE_G0 polarity | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | PA_PE_A0_POL | PA_PE_A0 polarity | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | PA_PE_G1_EN | PA_PE_G1 enable | 1 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | R/W | PA_PE_A1_EN | PA_PE_A1 enable | 1 |
| 1 | R/W | PA_PE_G0_EN | PA_PE_G0 enable | 1 |
| 0 | R/W | PA_PE_A0_EN | PA_PE_A0 enable | 1 |

TX_BAND_CFG: TX_BAND_CFG Register (offset: 0x132C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:3 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | 5G_BAND_SEL_N | 5G band selection PIN (complement of 5G_BAND_SEL_P) | 1 |
| 1 | R/W | 5G_BAND_SEL_P | 5G band selection PIN | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | TX_BAND_SEL | 0: use lower 40Mhz band in 20Mhz TX<br>1: use upper 40Mhz band in 20Mhz TX | 0 |

**Note1:** TX_BAND_SEL is effective only when TX/RX bandwidth control register R4 of BBP is set to 40Mhz.

TX_SW_CFG0: TX_SW_CFG0 Register (offset: 0x1330)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | DLY_RFTR_EN | Delay of RF_TR assertion | 0x0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | DLY_TRSW_EN | Delay of TR_SW assertion | 0x4 |
| 15:8 | R/W | DLY_PAPE_EN | Delay of PA_PE assertion | 0x8 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLY_TXPE_EN | Delay of TX_PE assertion | 0xC |

**Note1:** The timing unit is 0.25us.

**Note2:** SIFS_TIME should compensate with DLY_TXPE_EN.

TX_SW_CFG1: TX_SW_CFG1 Register (offset: 0x1334)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | DLY_RFTR_DIS | Delay of RF_TR de-assertion | 0xC |
| 15:8 | R/W | DLY_TRSW_DIS | Delay of TR_SW de-assertion | 0x8 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLY_PAPE_DIS | Delay of PA_PE de-assertion | 0x8 |

**Note1:** The timing unit is 0.25us.

**Note2:** The delay is started from TX_END event of BBP.

**Note3:** TX_PE is de-asserted automatically as last data byte passed to BBP.

TX_SW_CFG2: TX_SW_CFG2 Register (offset: 0x1338)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | DLY_LNA_EN | Delay of LNA* assertion | 0x0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | DLY_LNA_DIS | Delay of LNA* de-assertion | 0xC |
| 15:8 | R/W | DLY_DAC_EN | Delay of DAC_PE assertion | 0x4 |
| 7:0 | R/W | DLY_DAC_DIS | Delay of DAC_PE de-assertion | 0x8 |

**Note1:** The timing unit is 0.25us.

**Note 2:** LNA* includes LNA_A0, LNA_A1, LNA_G0, LNA_G1.

TXOP_THRES_CFG: TXOP_THRES_CFG Register (offset: 0x133C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TXOP_REM_THRES | Remaining TXOP threshold, unit: 32us<br>As the remaining TXOP is less than the threshold, the TXOP is passed silently. | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | CF_END_THRES | CF-END threshold, unit: 32us<br>As the remaining TXOP is greater than the threshold, the | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | CF-END will be send to release the remaining TXOP reserved by long NAV.<br>Set 0xFF to disable CF_END transmission. | |
| 15:8 | R/W | RDG_IN_THRES | RX RDG threshold, unit: 32us<br>As the remaining TXOP (specified in the duration field of the RX frame with RDG=1) is greater than or equal to the threshold, the granted reverse direction TXOP may be used. | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | RDG_OUT_THRES | TX RDG threshold, unit: 32us<br>As the remaining TXOP is greater than or equal to the threshold, RDG in the TX frame may be set to one. | 0 |

TXOP_CTRL_CFG: TXOP_CTRL_CFG Register (offset: 0x1340)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:20 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 19:16 | R/W | EXT_CW_MIN | Cwmin for extension channel backoff<br>When EXT_CCA_EN is enabled, 40Mhz transmission will be suppressed to 20Mhz if the extension CCA is busy or extension channel backoff is not finished.<br>Default: Cwmin=0, disable. | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | EXT_CCA_DLY | Extension CCA signal delay time (unit: usec)<br>Create delayed version of extension CCA signal reference time for extension channel IFS.<br>Default: (ofdm SIFS) + (long slot time) = 16 + 20 = 36 (usec) | 36 |
| 7 | R/W | EXT_CCA_EN | Extension CCA reference enable<br>When transmit in 40Mhz mode, defer until extension CCA is also clear.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | LSIG_TXOP_EN | L-SIG TXOP protection enable<br>Extension of mix mode L-SIG protection range to following ACK/CTS. | 0 |
| 5:0 | R/W | TXOP_TRUN_EN | TXOP truncation enable<br>Bit5: reserved<br>Bit4: truncation for MIMO power save RTS/CTS<br>Bit3: truncation for user TXOP mode<br>Bit2: truncation for TX rate group change<br>Bit1: truncation for AC change<br>Bit0: TXOP timeout truncation<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0x3F |

TX_RTS_CFG: TX_RTS_CFG Register (offset: 0x1344)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | RTS_FBK_EN | RTS rate fallback enable | 0 |
| 23:8 | R/W | RTS_THRES | RTS threshold (unit: byte)<br>MPDU or AMPDU with length greater than RTS threshold will be protected with RTS/CTS exchange at the beginning of the TXOP. | 65535 |
| 7:0 | R/W | RTS_RTY_LIMIT | Auto RTS retry limit | 7 |

TX_TIMEOUT_CFG: TX_TIMEOUT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1348)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TXOP_TIMEOUT | TXOP timeout value for TXOP truncation<br>Unit: 1usec<br>**Note:** It is recommended that (SLOT_TIME) > (TXOP_TIMEOUT) > (RX_ACK_TIMEOUT)<br>Default: For 20us long slot time. | 15 |
| 15:8 | R/W | RX_ACK_TIMEOUT | RX ACK/CTS timeout value for TX procedure<br>Unit: 1usec<br>**Note:** It is recommended that (SLOT_TIME) > (TXOP_TIMEOUT) > (RX_ACK_TIMEOUT)<br>Default: For 20us long slot time. | 10 |
| 7:4 | R/W | MPDU_LIFE_TIME | TX MPDU expiration time<br>Expiration time = 2^(9+MPDU_LIFE_TIME) us<br>Default value is 2^(9+9) ~= 256ms | 9 |
| 3:0 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |

TX_RTY_CFG: TX_RTY_CFG Register (offset: 0x134C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 30 | R/W | TX_AUTOFB_EN | TX retry PHY rate auto fallback enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 29 | R/W | AGG_RTY_MODE | Aggregate MPDU retry mode<br>0: expired by retry limit<br>1: expired by MPDU life timer | 1 |
| 28 | R/W | NAG_RTY_MODE | Non-aggregate MPDU retry mode<br>0: expired by retry limit<br>1: expired by MPDU life timer | 0 |
| 27:16 | R/W | LONG_RTY_THRES | Long retry threshold<br>MPDU with length over this threshold is applied with long retry limit. | 3000 |
| 15:8 | R/W | LONG_RTY_LIMIT | Long retry limit | 4 |
| 7:0 | R/W | SHORT_RTY_LIMIT | Short retry limit | 7 |

TX_LINK_CFG: TX_LINK_CFG Register (offset: 0x1350)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R | REMOTE_MFS | Remote MCS feedback sequence number | * |
| 23:16 | R | REMOTE_MFB | Remote MCS feedback | 0x7F |
| 15:13 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 12 | R/W | TX_CFACK_EN | Piggyback CF-ACK enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 11 | R/W | TX_RDG_EN | RDG TX enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 10 | R/W | TX_MRQ_EN | MCS request TX enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 9 | R/W | REMOTE_UMFS_EN | Remote un-solicit MFB enable<br>0: do not apply remote un-solicit MFB (MFS=7)<br>1: apply un-solicit MFB | 0 |
| 8 | R/W | TX_MFB_EN | TX apply remote MFB<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | REMOTE_MFB_LITE TIME | Remote MFB life time<br>Unit: 32us | 32 |

HT_FBK_CFG0: HT_FBK_CFG0 Register (offset: 0x1354)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | HT_MCS7_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =7 | 6 |
| 27:24 | R/W | HT_MCS6_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =6 | 5 |
| 23:20 | R/W | HT_MCS5_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =5 | 4 |
| 19:16 | R/W | HT_MCS4_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =4 | 3 |
| 15:12 | R/W | HT_MCS3_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =3 | 2 |
| 11:8 | R/W | HT_MCS2_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =2 | 1 |
| 7:4 | R/W | HT_MCS1_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =1 | 0 |
| 3:0 | R/W | HT_MCS0_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =0 | 0 |

HT_FBK_CFG1: HT_FBK_CFG1 Register (offset: 0x1358)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | HT_MCS15_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =15 | 14 |
| 27:24 | R/W | HT_MCS14_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =14 | 13 |
| 23:20 | R/W | HT_MCS13_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =13 | 12 |
| 19:16 | R/W | HT_MCS12_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =12 | 11 |
| 15:12 | R/W | HT_MCS11_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =11 | 10 |
| 11:8 | R/W | HT_MCS10_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =10 | 9 |
| 7:4 | R/W | HT_MCS9_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =9 | 8 |
| 3:0 | R/W | HT_MCS8_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as HT MCS =8 | 8 |

**Note1.** The MCS is a fallback stopping state, as the fallback MCS is the same as current MCS.

**Note2.** HT TX PHY rates will not fallback to legacy PHY rates.

LG_FBK_CFG0: LG_FBK_CFG0 Register (offset: 0x135C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:28 | R/W | OFDM7_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 54Mbps. | 14 |
| 27:24 | R/W | OFDM6_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 48Mbps. | 13 |
| 23:20 | R/W | OFDM5_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 36Mbps. | 12 |
| 19:16 | R/W | OFDM4_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 24Mbps. | 11 |
| 15:12 | R/W | OFDM3_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 18Mbps. | 10 |
| 11:8 | R/W | OFDM2_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 12Mbps. | 9 |
| 7:4 | R/W | OFDM1_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 9Mbps. | 8 |
| 3:0 | R/W | OFDM0_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is OFDM 6Mbps. | 8 |

LG_FBK_CFG1: LG_FBK_CFG1 Register (offset: 0x1360)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:12 | R/W | CCK3_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is CCK 11Mbps. | 2 |
| 11:8 | R/W | CCK2_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is CCK 5.5Mbps. | 1 |
| 7:4 | R/W | CCK1_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is CCK 2Mbps. | 0 |
| 3:0 | R/W | CCK0_FBK | Auto fall back MCS as previous TX rate is CCK 1Mbps. | 0 |

Note1. Bit3 of each legacy fallback rate is selection of OFDM/CCK. 0=CCK, 1=OFDM.

CCK_PROT_CFG: CCK_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1364)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | CCK_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on CCK TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | CCK_TXOP_ALLOW | CCK TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX<br>Bit20: allow CCK TX | 1 |
| 19:18 | R/W | CCK_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for CCK TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | CCK_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for CCK TX<br>0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | CCK_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for CCK TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: CCK 11M | 0x0003 |

OFDM_PROT_CFG: OFDM_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1368)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | OFDM_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on OFDM TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | OFDM_PROT_TXOP | OFDM TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX<br>Bit20: allow CCK TX | 2 |
| 19:18 | R/W | OFDM_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for OFDM TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | OFDM_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for OFDM TX<br>0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | OFDM_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for OFDM TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: CCK 11M | 0x0003 |

MM20_PROT_CFG: MM20_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x136C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | MM20_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on MM20 TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | MM20_PROT_TXOP | MM20 TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX<br>Bit20: allow CCK TX | 4 |
| 19:18 | R/W | MM20_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for MM20 TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | MM20_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for MM20 TX | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | |
| 15:0 | R/W | MM20_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for MM20 TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: OFDM 24M | 0x4004 |

MM40_PROT_CFG: MM40_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1370)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | MM40_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on MM40 TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | MM40_PROT_TXOP | MM40 TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX<br>Bit20: allow CCK TX | 8 |
| 19:18 | R/W | MM40_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for MM40 TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | MM40_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for MM40 TX<br>0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | MM40_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for MM40 TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: duplicate OFDM 24M | 0x4084 |

GF20_PROT_CFG: GF20_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1374)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | GF20_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on GF20 TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | GF20_PROT_TXOP | GF20 TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX | 16 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Bit20: allow CCK TX | |
| 19:18 | R/W | GF20_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for GF20 TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | GF20_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for GF20 TX<br>0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | GF20_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for GF20 TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: OFDM 24M | 0x4004 |

GF40_PROT_CFG: GF40_PROT_CFG Register (offset: 0x1378)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:27 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 26 | R/W | GF40_RTSTH_EN | RTS threshold enable on GF40 TX<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 25:20 | R/W | GF40_PROT_TXOP | GF40 TXOP allowance<br>(0: disallow, 1: allow)<br>Bit25: allow GF-40 TX<br>Bit24: allow GF-20 TX<br>Bit23: allow MM-40 TX<br>Bit22: allow MM-20 TX<br>Bit21: allow OFDM TX<br>Bit20: allow CCK TX | 16 |
| 19:18 | R/W | GF40_PROT_NAV | TXOP protection type for GF40 TX<br>0: None<br>1: Short NAV protection<br>2: Long NAV protection<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 17:16 | R/W | GF40_PROT_CTRL | Protection control frame type for GF40 TX<br>0: None<br>1: RTS/CTS<br>2: CTS-to-self<br>3: Reserved (None) | 0 |
| 15:0 | R/W | GF40_PROT_RATE | Protection control frame rate for GF40 TX<br>(Including RTS/CTS-to-self/CF-END)<br>Default: duplicate OFDM 24M | 0x4084 |

EXP_CTS_TIME: EXP_CTS_TIME Register (offset: 0x137C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 30:16 | R/W | EXP_OFDM_CTS_TIME | Expected time for OFDM CTS response (unit: 1us) | 56 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Used for outgoing NAV setting.<br>Default: SIFS + 6Mbps CTS | |
| 15 | R | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 14:0 | R/W | EXP_CCK_CTS_TIME | Expected time for CCK CTS response (unit: 1us)<br>Used for outgoing NAV setting.<br>Default: SIFS + 1Mbps CTS | 314 |

EXP_ACK_TIME: EXP_ACK_TIME Register (offset: 0x1380)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 30:16 | R/W | EXP_OFDM_ACK_TIME | Expected time for OFDM ACK response (unit: 1us)<br>Used for outgoing NAV setting.<br>Default: SIFS + 6Mbps ACK preamble | 36 |
| 15 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 14:0 | R/W | EXP_CCK_ACK_TIME | Expected time for OFDM ACK response (unit: 1us)<br>Used for outgoing NAV setting.<br>Default: SIFS + 1Mbps ACK preamble | 202 |

### 3.20.3.6 MAC RX configuration registers (base: 1018.0000)

RX_FILTR_CFG: RX_FILTR_CFG Register (offset: 0x1400)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:17 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 16 | R/W | DROP_CTRL_RSV | Drop reserve control subtype | 1 |
| 15 | R/W | DROP_BAR | Drop BAR | 0 |
| 14 | R/W | DROP_BA | Drop BA | 1 |
| 13 | R/W | DROP_PSPOLL | Drop PS-Poll | 0 |
| 12 | R/W | DROP_RTS | Drop RTS | 1 |
| 11 | R/W | DROP_CTS | Drop CTS | 1 |
| 10 | R/W | DROP_ACK | Drop ACK | 1 |
| 9 | R/W | DROP_CFEND | Drop CF-END | 1 |
| 8 | R/W | DROP_CFACK | Drop CF-END + CF-ACK | 1 |
| 7 | R/W | DROP_DUPL | Drop duplicated frame | 1 |
| 6 | R/W | DROP_BC | Drop broadcast frame | 0 |
| 5 | R/W | DROP_MC | Drop multicast frame | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | DROP_VER_ERR | Drop 802.11 version error frame | 1 |
| 3 | R/W | DROP_NOT_MYBSS | Drop frame that is not my BSSID | 1 |
| 2 | R/W | DROP_UC_NOME | Drop not to me unicast frame | 1 |
| 1 | R/W | DROP_PHY_ERR | Drop physical error frame | 1 |
| 0 | R/W | DROP_CRC_ERR | Drop CRC error frame | 1 |

Note: 1: enable, 0: disable.

AUTO_RSP_CFG: AUTO_RSP_CFG Register (offset: 0x1404)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:8 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | R/W | CTRL_PWR_BIT | Power bit value in control frame | 0 |
| 6 | R/W | BAC_ACK_POLICY | BA frame -> BAC -> Ack policy bit value | 0 |
| 5 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 4 | R/W | CCK_SHORT_EN | CCK short preamble auto response enable<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 3 | R/W | CTS_40M_REF | In duplicate legacy CTS response mode, refer to extension CCA to decide duplicate or not.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 2 | R/W | CTS_40M_MODE | Duplicate legacy CTS response mode<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 1 | R/W | BAC_ACKPOLICY_EN | BAC ACK policy bit enable<br>0: disable; don't care this bit<br>1: enable; no BA auto responding upon reception of BAR with no ACK policy | 1 |
| 0 | R/W | AUTO_RSP_EN | Auto responder enable | 1 |

LEGACY_BASIC_RATE: LEGACY_BASIC_RATE Register (offset: 0x1408)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31: 12 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 11: 0 | R/W | LEGACY_BASIC_RATE | Legacy basic rate bit mask<br>Bit0: 1 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit1: 2 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit2: 5.5 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit3: 11 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit4: 6 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit5: 9 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit6: 12 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit7: 18 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit8: 24 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit9: 36 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit10: 48 Mbps is basic rate<br>Bit11: 54 Mbps is basic rate<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |

HT_BASIC_RATE: HT_BASIC_RATE Register (offset: 0x140C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31: 16 | R/W | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15: 0 | R/W | HT_BASIC_RATE | HT basic rate for auto responding control frame<br>Bit15 =1, enable MCS feedback | 0 |

HT_CTRL_CFG: HT_CTRL_CFG Register (offset: 0x1410)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31: 9 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 8: 0 | R/W | HT_CTRL_THRES | Remaining TXOP threshold for HT control frame auto responding<br>(unit: us) | 256 |

SIFS_COST_CFG: SIFS_COST_CFG Register (offset: 0x1414)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | OFDM_SIFS_COST | OFDM SIFS time (unit: 1us)<br>Applied after OFDM TX/RX. | 16 |
| 7:0 | R/W | CCK_SIFS_COST | CCK SIFS time (unit: 1us)<br>Applied after CCK TX/RX. | 10 |

**Note:** The OFDM_SIFS_COST and CCK_SIFS_COST are used only for duration field calculation. It will not affect the responding timing.

RX_PARSER_CFG: RX_PARSER_CFG Register (offset: 0x1418)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 0 | R/W | NAV_ALL_EN | Set NAV for all received frames<br>0: disable (unicast to me frame will not set the NAV)<br>1: enable | 0 |

### 3.20.3.7 MAC Security Configuration Registers (base: 1018.0000)

TX_SEC_CNT0: TX_SEC_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x1500)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_SEC_ERR_CNT | TX SEC packet error count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_SEC_CPL_CNT | TX SEC packet complete count | 0 |

RX_SEC_CNT0: RX_SEC_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x1504)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | RX_SEC_CPL_CNT | RX SEC packet complete count | 0 |

CCMP_FC_MUTE: CCMP_FC_MUTE Register (offset: 0x1508)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R/W | HT_CCMP_FC_MUTE | HT rate CCMP FC mute | 0xc78f |
| 15:0 | R/W | LG_CCMP_FC_MUTE | Legacy rate CCMP FC mute | 0xc78f |

### 3.20.3.8 MAC HCCA/PSMP CSR (base: 1018.0000)

TXOP_HLDR_ADDR0: TXOP_HLDR_ADDR0 Register (offset: 0x1600)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_3 | TXOP holder MAC address byte3 | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_2 | TXOP holder MAC address byte2 | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_1 | TXOP holder MAC address byte1 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_0 | TXOP holder MAC address byte0 | 0 |

TXOP_HLDR_ADDR1: TXOP_HLDR_ADDR1 Register (offset: 0x1604)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_5 | TXOP holder MAC address byte5 | 0 |
| 7:0 | R/W | TXOP_HOL_4 | TXOP holder MAC address byte4 | 0 |

**Note:** Byte0 is the first byte on network. Its LSB bit is the first bit on network. For a MAC address captured on the network with order 00:01:02:03:04:05, byte0=00, byte1=01 etc.

TXOP_HLDR_ET: TXOP_HLDR_ET Register (offset:0x1608)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:26 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 25 | R/W | TXOP_ETM1_EN | TXOP holder early termination interrupt enable (Type 1)<br><br>Upon the reception of QoS data frame from TXOP_HLDR_ADDR (A2) and Queue size (QS) in QOS control field (QC) is equal to zero, "TXOP holder early termination interrupt" will be issue.<br><br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 24 | R/W | TXOP_ETM0_EN | TXOP holder early termination interrupt enable (Type 0)<br><br>When RX packet is from TXOP holder specified in QOS_CSR0,1 (match with Addr2) and duration value is less than or equal to early termination duration threshold specified below, "TXOP holder early termination" interrupt will be issued after CRC check is ok.<br><br>Upon the reception of QoS data frame from TXOP_HLDR_ADDR (A2) and Duration (DUR) is less than or equal to early termination duration threshold (TXOP_ETM_THRES), "TXOP holder early termination interrupt" will be issue.<br>0: disable<br>1: enable | 0 |
| 23:16 | R/W | TXOP_ETM_THRES | TXOP early termination duration threshold<br><br>Unit: 1usec | 0 |
| 15:9 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 8 | WC | TXOP_ETO_EN | TXOP holder early timeout enable<br><br>Write 1 to enable early timeout check. (interrupt when timeout)<br><br>When enabled, hardware will expect CCA event.<br>If hardware didn't sense CCA over the TXOP holder early timeout threshold (TXOP_ETO_THRES), the "TXOP holder early timeout interrupt" will then be issued. | 0 |
| 7:1 | R/W | TXOP_ETO_THRES | TXOP holder early timeout threshold<br><br>Unit: 1usec | 0 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | R/W | PER_RX_RST_EN | Baseband RX_PE per RX reset enable<br>0: disable, 1: enable | 0 |

**Note1:** TXOP holder early timeout interrupt (TXOP_ETO_INT) is used by AP for HC purpose.

**Note2:** TXOP holder early termination interrupt (TXOP_ETM_INT) is used by STA (both AP and non-AP STA) for HC purpose.

QOS_CFPOLL_RA_DW0: QOS_CFPOLL_RA_DW0 Register (offset: 0x160C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE3 | Byte3 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |
| 23:16 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE2 | Byte2 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |
| 15:8 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE1 | Byte1 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |
| 7:0 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE0 | Byte0 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |

QOS_CFPOLL_A1_DW1: QOS_CFPOLL_RA_DW1 Register (offset: 0x1610)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 16 | R | CFPOLL_A1_TOME | 1: QoS CF-Poll to me<br>0: Qos CF-Poll not to me | X |
| 15:8 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE5 | Byte5 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |
| 7:0 | R | CFPOLL_A1_BYTE4 | Byte4 of A1 of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |

QOS_CFPOLL_QC: QOS_CFPOLL_QC Register (offset: 0x1614)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:24 | - | - | Reserved | 0 |
| 15:8 | R | CFPOLL_QC_BYTE1 | Byte1 of QC of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |
| 7:0 | R | CFPOLL_QC_BYTE0 | Byte0 of QC of received QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame | X |

**Note:** CFPOLL_RA_DW0, CFPOLL_RA_DW1, and CFPOLL_QC are updated after the reception of QoS Data (+) CF-Poll frame and RX QoS CF-Poll interrupt (RX_QOS_CFPOLL_INT) is launched then

#### 3.20.3.9 MAC Statistic Counters (base: 1018.0000)

RX_STA_CNT0: RX_STA_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x1700)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | PHY_ERRCNT | RX PHY error frame count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | CRC_ERRCNT | RX CRC error frame count | 0 |

**Note1:** RX PHY error means PSDU length is shorter than indicated by PLCP.

**Note2:** RX PHY error is also treated as CRC error.

RX_STA_CNT1: RX_STA_CNT1 Register (offset: 0x1704)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | PLPC_ERRCNT | RX PLCP error count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | CCA_ERRCNT | CCA false alarm count | 0 |

**Note1:** CCA false alarm means there is no PLCP after CCA indication.

**Note2:** RX PLCP error means there is no PSDU after PLCP indication.

RX_STA_CNT2: RX_STA_CNT2 Register (offset: 0x1708)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | RX_OVFL_CNT | RX FIFO overflow frame count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | RX_DUPL_CNT | RX duplicated filtered frame count | 0 |

**Note:** MAC will NOT auto respond ACK/BA to the frame originator when frame is lost due to RXFIFO overflow. However, MAC will respond when frame is duplicated filtered.

TX_STA_CNT0: TX_STA_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x170C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_BCN_CNT | TX beacon count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_FAIL_CNT | Failed TX count | 0 |

TX_STA_CNT1: TX_STA_CNT1 Register (offset: 0x1710)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_RTY_CNT | TX retransmission count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_SUCC_CNT | Successful TX count | 0 |

TX_STA_CNT2: TX_STA_CNT2 Register (offset: 0x1714)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_UDFL_CNT | TX underflow count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_ZERO_CNT | TX zero length frame count | 0 |

TX_STAT_FIFO: TX_STAT_FIFO Register (offset: 0x1718)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | R | TXQ_RATE | TX success rate | * |
| 15:8 | R | TXQ_WCID | TX WCID | * |
| 7 | R | TXQ_ACKREQ | TX acknowledge required<br>0: not required<br>1: required | * |
| 6 | R | TXQ_AGG | TX aggregate<br>0: non-aggregated<br>1: aggregated | * |
| 5 | R | TXQ_OK | TX success<br>0: failed<br>1: success | * |
| 4:1 | R | TXQ_PID | TX Packet ID (Latched from TXWI) | * |
| 0 | RC | TXQ_VLD | TX status queue valid<br>0: queue empty, 1: valid | 0 |

**Note:** TX status FIFO size = 16.

TX_NAG_AGG_CNT: TX_NAG_AGG_CNT Register (offset: 0x171C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_CNT | Aggregate TX count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_NAG_CNT | Non-aggregate TX count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT0: TX_AGG_CNT0 Register (offset: 0x1720)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_2_CNT | Aggregate Size = 2 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_1_CNT | Aggregate Size = 1 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT1: TX_AGG_CNT1 Register (offset: 0x1724)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_4_CNT | Aggregate Size = 4 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_3_CNT | Aggregate Size = 3 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT2: TX_AGG_CNT2 Register (offset: 0x1728)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_6_CNT | Aggregate Size = 6 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_5_CNT | Aggregate Size = 5 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT3: TX_AGG_CNT3 Register (offset: 0x172C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_8_CNT | Aggregate Size = 8 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_7_CNT | Aggregate Size = 7 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT4: TX_AGG_CNT4 Register (offset: 0x1730)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_10_CNT | Aggregate Size = 10 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_9_CNT | Aggregate Size = 9 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT5: TX_AGG_CNT5 Register (offset: 0x1734)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_12_CNT | Aggregate Size = 12 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_11_CNT | Aggregate Size = 11 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT6: TX_AGG_CNT6 Register (offset: 0x1738)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_14_CNT | Aggregate Size = 14 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_13_CNT | Aggregate Size = 13 MPDU count | 0 |

TX_AGG_CNT7: TX_AGG_CNT7 Register (offset: 0x173C)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | TX_AGG_16_CNT | Aggregate Size > 16 MPDU count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_AGG_15_CNT | Aggregate Size = 15 MPDU count | 0 |

MPDU_DENSITY_CNT: MPDU_DENSITY_CNT Register (offset: 0x1740)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:16 | RC | RX_ZERO_DEL_CNT | RX zero length delimiter count | 0 |
| 15:0 | RC | TX_ZERO_DEL_CNT | TX zero length delimiter count | 0 |

### 3.20.3.10 MAC search table (base: 0x1018.0000)

RX_WC_SEF: RX WCID Search Entry Format (8 bytes)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x00 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR0 | Client MAC address byte0 | 0x00 |
| 0x01 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR1 | Client MAC address byte1 | 0x00 |
| 0x02 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR2 | Client MAC address byte2 | 0x00 |
| 0x03 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR3 | Client MAC address byte3 | 0x00 |
| 0x04 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR4 | Client MAC address byte4 | 0x00 |
| 0x05 | R/W | WC_MAC_ADDR5 | Client MAC address byte5 | 0x00 |
| 0x06 | R/W | BA_SESS_MASK0 | BA session mask (lower)<br>Bit0 for TID0<br>Bit7 for TID7 | 0x00 |
| 0x07 | R/W | BA_SESS_MASK1 | BA session mask (upper) | 0x00 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Bit8 for TID8<br>Bit15 for TID15 | |

RX_WC_ST: RX WCID Search Table (offset: 0x1800)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x1800 | R/W | WC_ENTRY_0 | WC MAC address with WCID=0 | 0 |
| 0x1808 | R/W | WC_ENTRY_1 | WC MAC address with WCID=1 | 0 |
| .... | R/W | .... | WC MAC address with WCID=2~253 | 0 |
| 0x1FF0 | R/W | WC_ENTRY_254 | WC MAC address with WCID=254 | 0 |
| 0x1FF8 | R/W | WC_ENTRY_255 | Reserved (shall not be used) | 0 |

**Note1:** WCID=Wireless Client ID.

### 3.20.3.11 Security table/CIS/Beacon/NULL frame (base : 0x1018.0000, offset: 0x4000)

SKF: Security Key Format (8DW)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x00 | R/W | SECKEY_DW0 | Security key byte3~0 | * |
| 0x04 | R/W | SECKEY_DW1 | Security key byte7~4 | * |
| 0x08 | R/W | SECKEY_DW2 | Security key byte11~8 | * |
| 0x0C | R/W | SECKEY_DW3 | Security key byte15~12 | * |
| 0x10 | R/W | TXMIC_DW0 | TX MIC key byte3~0 | * |
| 0x14 | R/W | TXMIC_DW1 | TX MIC key byte7~4 | * |
| 0x18 | R/W | RXMIC_DW0 | RX MIC key byte3~0 | * |
| 0x1C | R/W | RXMIC_DW1 | RX MIC key byte7~4 | * |

Note: 1. For WEP40, CKIP40, only byte4~0 of security key are valid.

2. For WEP104, CKIP104, only byte12~0 of security key are valid.
3. For TKIP, AES, all the bytes of security key are valid.
4. TX/RX MIC key is used only for TKIP MIC calculation.

IV/EIV _F: IV/EIV format (2 DW)
When TXINFO.WIV=0, hardware will auto lookup IV/EIV from this table and update IV/EIV after encryption is finished.

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x00 | R/W | IV_FIELED | IV field | * |
| 0x04 | R/W | EIV_FIELED | EIV field | * |

**Note1:** The key index and extension IV bit shall be initialized by software. The MSB octet of IV will not be modified by hardware

**Note2:** IV/EIV packet number (PN) counter modes:

**a.** For WEP40, WEP104, CKIP40, CKIP104, CKIP128 mode, PN=IV[23:0]. EIV[31:0] is not used.

**b.** For TKIP mode, PN = {EIV[31:0], IV[7:0], IV[23:16]}, IV[15:8]=(IV[7:0] | 0x20) & 0x7f) is generated by hardware.

**c.** For AES-CCMP, PN = {EIV[31:0], IV[15:0] }

**d.** PN = PN + 1 after each encryption.

**Note3:** Software may initialize the PN counter to any value.

WCID_AEF: WCID Attribute Entry Format (1DW)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31:10 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 9:7 | R/W | RXWI_UDF | RXWI user define field<br>This field is tagged in the RXWI.UDF fields for the | * |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | WCID. | |
| 6:4 | R/W | BSS_IDX | Multiple-BSS index for the WCID | * |
| 3:1 | R/W | RX_PKEY_MODE | Pair-wise key security mode<br>0: No security<br>1: WEP40<br>2: WEP104<br>3: TKIP<br>4: AES-CCMP<br>5: CKIP40<br>6: CKIP104<br>7: CKIP128 | * |
| 0 | R/W | RX_PKEY_EN | Key table selection<br>0: shared key table<br>1: pair-wise key table | * |

SKME: Share Key Mode Entry Format (1DW)

| Bits | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 30:28 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_7+ | Shared key7+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 27 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 26:24 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_6+ | Shared key6+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 23 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 22:20 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_5+ | Shared key5+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 19 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 18:16 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_4+ | Shared key4+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 15 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 14:12 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_3+ | Shared key3+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 11 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 10:8 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_2+ | Shared key2+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 7 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 6:4 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_1+ | Shared key1+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |
| 3 | - | - | Reserved | * |
| 2:0 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_0+ | Shared key0+(8x) mode, x=0~3 | * |

Key mode definition:

0: No security

1: WEP40

2: WEP104

3: TKIP

4: AES-CCMP

5: CKIP40

6: CKIP104

7: CKIP128

### 3.20.3.12 Security Table

PWKT: Pair-Wise Key Table (offset: 0x4000)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x4000 | R/W | PKEY_0 | Pair-wise key for WCID0 | * |
| 0x4020 | R/W | PKEY_1 | Pair-wise key for WCID1 | * |
| .... | R/W | .... | Pair-wise key for WCID2~253 | * |
| 0x5FC0 | R/W | PKEY_254 | Pair-wise key for WCID254 | * |
| 0x5FE0 | R/W | PKEY_255 | Pair-wise key for WCID255 (not used) | * |

IV/EIV _T: IV/EIV table (offset: 0x6000)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x6000 | R/W | IVEIV_0 | IV/EIV for WCID0 | * |
| 0x6008 | R/W | IVEIV_1 | IV/EIV for WCID1 | * |
| .... | R/W | .... | IV/EIV for WCID2~253 | * |
| 0x67F0 | R/W | IVEIV_254 | IV/EIV for WCID254 | * |
| 0x67F8 | R/W | IVEIV_255 | IV/EIV for WCID255 (not used) | * |

WCID_AT: WCID Attribute Table (offset: 0x6800)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x6800 | R/W | WCID_ATTR_0 | WCID Attribute for WCID0 | * |
| 0x6804 | R/W | WCID_ATTR_1 | WCID Attribute for WCID1 | * |
| .... | R/W | .... | WCID Attribute for WCID2~253 | * |
| 0x6BF8 | R/W | WCID_ATTR_254 | WCID Attribute for WCID254 | * |
| 0x6BFC | R/W | WCID_ATTR_255 | WCID Attribute for WCID255 | * |

SKT: Shared Key Table (offset: 0x6C00)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x6C00 | R/W | SKEY_0 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=0, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6C20 | R/W | SKEY_1 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=0, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6C40 | R/W | SKEY_2 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=0, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6C60 | R/W | SKEY_3 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=0, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6C80 | R/W | SKEY_4 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=1, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6CA0 | R/W | SKEY_5 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=1, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6CC0 | R/W | SKEY_6 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=1, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6CE0 | R/W | SKEY_7 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=1, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6D00 | R/W | SKEY_8 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=2, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6D20 | R/W | SKEY_9 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=2, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6D40 | R/W | SKEY_10 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=2, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6D60 | R/W | SKEY_11 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=2, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6D80 | R/W | SKEY_12 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=3, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6DA0 | R/W | SKEY_13 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=3, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6DC0 | R/W | SKEY_14 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=3, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6DE0 | R/W | SKEY_15 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=3, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6E00 | R/W | SKEY_16 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=4, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6E20 | R/W | SKEY_17 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=4, KEY_IDX=1 | * |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x6E40 | R/W | SKEY_18 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=4, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6E60 | R/W | SKEY_19 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=4, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6E80 | R/W | SKEY_20 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=5, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6EA0 | R/W | SKEY_21 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=5, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6EC0 | R/W | SKEY_22 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=5, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6EE0 | R/W | SKEY_23 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=5, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6F00 | R/W | SKEY_24 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=6, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6F20 | R/W | SKEY_25 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=6, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6F40 | R/W | SKEY_26 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=6, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6F60 | R/W | SKEY_27 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=6, KEY_IDX=3 | * |
| 0x6F80 | R/W | SKEY_28 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=7, KEY_IDX=0 | * |
| 0x6FA0 | R/W | SKEY_29 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=7, KEY_IDX=1 | * |
| 0x6FC0 | R/W | SKEY_30 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=7, KEY_IDX=2 | * |
| 0x6FE0 | R/W | SKEY_31 | Shared key for BSS_IDX=7, KEY_IDX=3 | * |

SKM: Shared Key Mode (offset: 0x7000)

| Offset | Type | Name | Description | Initial value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x7000 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_0_7 | Shared mode for SKEY0-SKEY7 | * |
| 0x7004 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_8_15 | Shared mode for SKEY8-SKEY15 | * |
| 0x7008 | R/W | SKEY_MODE_16_23 | Shared mode forSKEY16-SKEY23 | * |
| 0x700C | R/W | SKEY_MODE_24_31 | Shared mode for SKEY24-SKEY31 | * |

### 3.20.3.13 Descriptor and Wireless information

#### 3.20.3.13.1 TX frame information

To transmit a frame, the driver needs to prepare the TX frame information for hardware. The TX frame information contains the transmission control, the header, and the payload. The transmission control information (the "***TXWI***") is used by the MAC and BBP and is applied for the associated TX frame when transmission. The header and payload is the content of an 802.11 packet.
The TX information could be scattered in several segments. The TX descriptor (the "***TXD***") specifies the location and length of the TX frame information segment. TX frame information could be linked by use of several TXD. These TXD are arranged in a TXD ring in serial. Below diagram illustrates the linking between TXD and TX frame information.

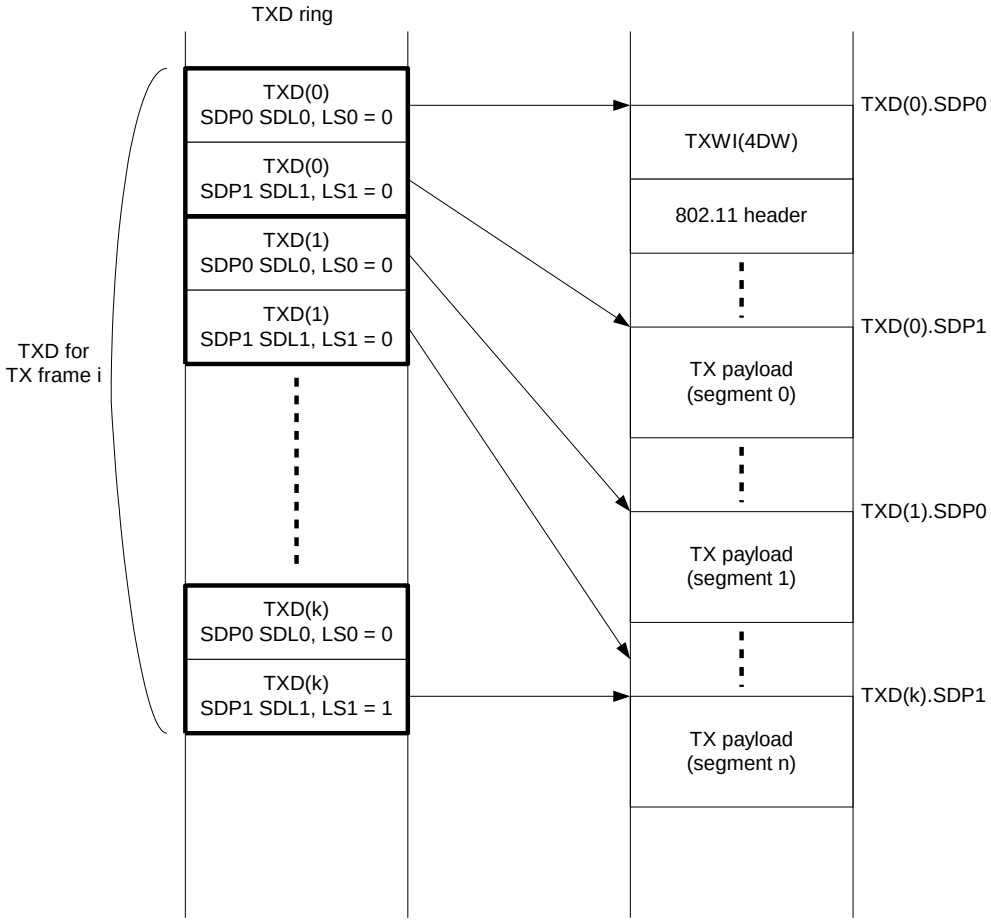



Fig. 3-20-3 TX frame Information

#### 3.20.3.13.2 TX descriptor format

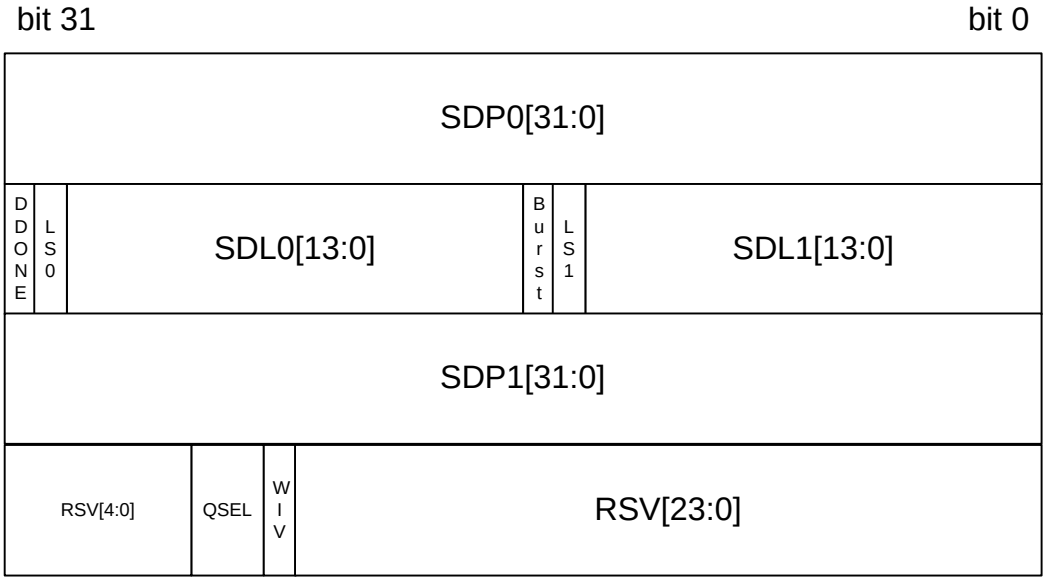



Fig. 3-20-4 TX Descriptor Format

- ***SDP0*** : Segment Data Pointer 0
- ***SDL0*** : Segment Data Length for the data pointed by SDP0.
- ***SDP1*** : Segment Data Pointer 1.
- ***SDL1*** : Segment Data Length for the data pointed by SDP1.
- ***LS0*** : data pointed by SDP0 is the last segment
- ***LS1*** : data pointed by SDP1 is the last segment
- ***DDONE*** : DMA Done. DMA has transferred the segments pointed by this TX descriptor

#### 3.20.3.13.3 TXWI format

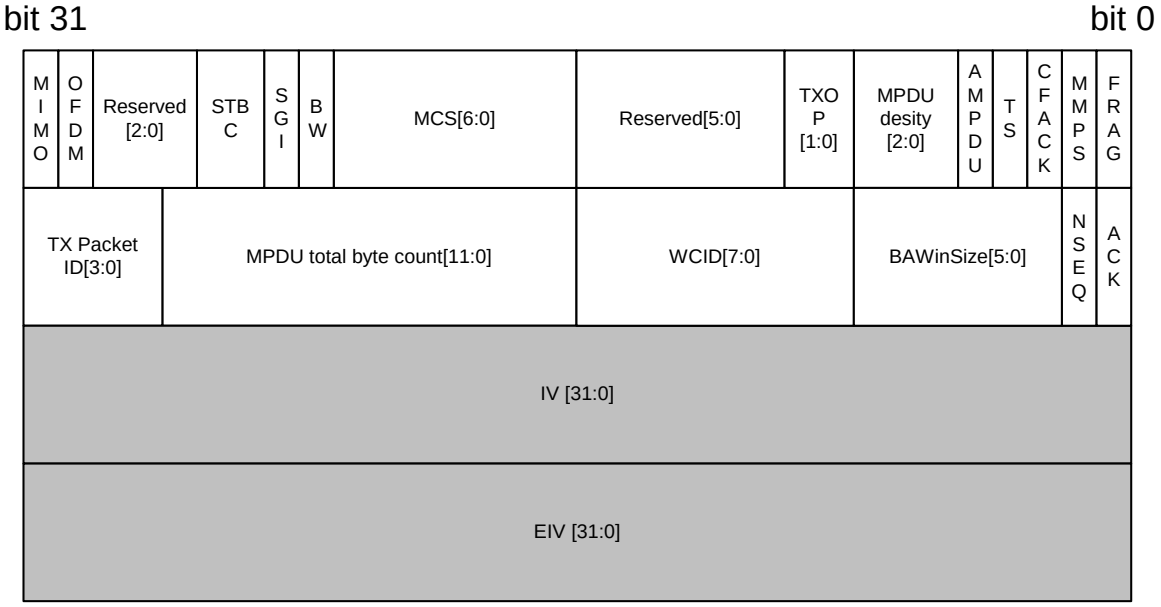



Fig. 3-20-5 TXWI Format

- ***FRAG***: 1: to inform TKIP engine this is a fragment, so that TKIP MIC is appended by driver at the last fragment; hardware TKIP engine only need to insert IV/EIV and ICV

- ***MMPS***: 1: the remote peer is in dynamic MIMO-PS mode
- ***CFACK***: 1: if an ACK is required to the same peer as this outgoing DATA frame, then MAC TX will send a single DATA+CFACK frame instead of separate ACK and DATA frames. 0: no piggyback ACK allowed for the RA of this frame.
- ***TS***: 1: This is a BEACON or ProbeResponse frame and MAC needs to auto insert 8-byte timestamp after 802.11 WLAN header.
- ***AMPDU***: this frame is eligible for AMPDU. MAC TX will aggregate subsequent outgoing frames having <same RA, same TID, AMPDU=1> whenever TXOP allows. Even there's only one DATA frame to be sent, as long as the AMPDU bit in TXWI is ON, MAC will still package it as AMPDU with implicit BAR. This adds only 4-byte AMPDU delimiter overhead into the outgoing frame and imply the response frame is a BA instead of ACK. NOTE: driver should set AMPDU=1 only after a BA session is successfully negotiated, because Block ACK is the only way to acknowledge in AMPDU case.
- ***MPDU density***: 1/4usec ~ 16usec per-peer parameter used in outgoing A-MPDU. (This field complies with the "minimum MDPU Starting Spacing" of the A-MPDU parameter field of draft 1.08).

  000- no restriction
  001- 1/4 µsec
  010- 1/2 µsec
  011- 1 µsec
  100- 2 µse
  101- 4 µsec
  110- 8 µsec
  111- 16 µsec
- ***TXOP: TX back off mode. 0***: HT TXOP rule; 1: PIFS TX; 2: SIFS (only when previous frame exchange is successful); 3: Back off.
- ***"MCS/BW/ShortGI/OFDM/MIMO"***: TX data rate & MIMO parameters for this outgoing frame to be filled into BBP.
- ***ACK***: this bit informs MAC to wait for ACK or not after transmission of the frame. Event though QOD DATA frame has ACK policy in its QOS CONTROL field, MAC TX solely depends on this ACK bit to decide waiting of ACK or not.
- ***NSEQ***: 1: to use the special h/w SEQ number register in MAC block.
- ***BA window size:*** tell MAC the maximum number of to-be-BAed frames is allowed of the RA (RA's BA re-ordering buffer size)
- ***WCID (Wireless Client Index)*** : lookup result of ADDR1 in the peer table (255=not found). This index is also used to find all the attributes of the wireless peer (e.g. TX rate, TX power, pair-wise KEY, IV, EIV,). This index has consistent meaning in both driver and hardware.
- ***MSDU total byte count***: total length of this frame.
- ***Packet ID:*** as a cookie specified by driver and will be latched into the TX result register stack. Driver use this field to identify special frame's TX result.
- ***IV***: used by encryption engine.
- ***EIV:*** used by encryption engine.

### 3.20.3.13.4 RX descriptor ring

The RX descriptor (the "***RXD***") specifies the location to place the payload of the received frame (the RX payload) and the associated receiving information (the ***"RXWI"***). One RXD serves for one receiving frame. Only SDP0 and SDL0 are useful in the RXD. The RXD is arranged in the RXD ring in serial. The hardware links the RXWI and RX payload in serial and place it to the location specified in SDP0. See below diagram.

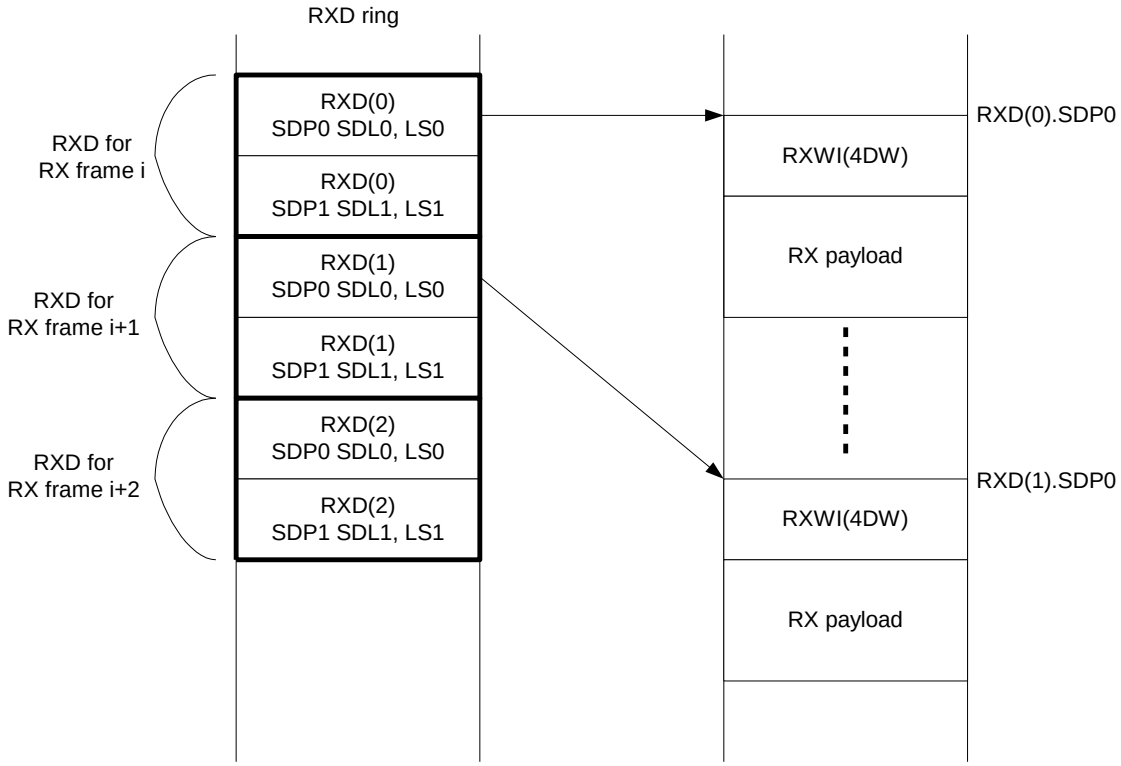



Fig. 3-20-6 RX Descriptor Ring

### 3.20.3.13.5 RX descriptor format

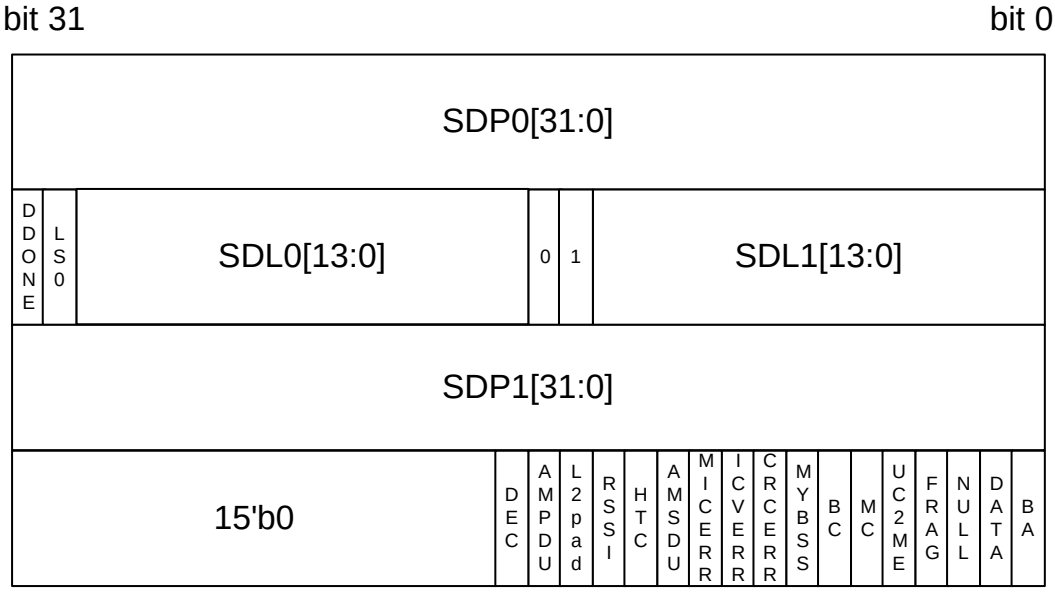



Fig. 3-20-7 RX Descriptor Format

Following fields are driver-specified.

- ***SDP0*** : Segment Data Pointer 0.
- ***SDL0*** : Segment Data Length for the data pointed by SDP0.
- ***SDP1*** : Segment Data Pointer 1.
- ***SDL1*** : Segment Data Length for the data pointed by SDP1.
- ***DDONE*** : DMA Done. DMA has moved the RX frame to the specified location.

Set by hardware and cleared by driver.

Following fields are filled by hardware.

- ***BA***: the received frame is part of BA session, need to do re-ordering.
- ***DATA***: 1: the received frame is DATA type.
- ***NULL***: 1: the received frame has sub-type NULL/QOS-NULL.
- ***FRAG***: 1: the receive frame is a fragment
- ***UC2ME***: 1: the received frame ADDR1 = my MAC address
- ***MC***: 1: the received frame ADDR1 = multicast
- ***BC***: 1: the received frame ADDR1 = ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
- ***MyBSS***: 1: the received frame BSSID is one of my BSS (as an AP, max 4 BSSID supported)
- ***CRC error***: 1: the received frame is CRC error
- ***ICV error***: 1: the received frame is ICV error
- ***MIC error***: 1: the received frame is MIC error (RX CNRL register should support individual pass-up error frame to driver in order to implement MIC error detection feature)
- ***AMSDU***: the received frame is in A-MSDU sub frame format which is <802.3 + MSDU + padding>
- ***HTC***: 1: this received frame came with HTC field, 0: no HTC field
- ***RSSI***: 1: RSSI information available in RSSI0, RSSI1, RSSI2 fields
- ***L2Pad***: 1: the L2 header is recognizable and been 2-byte-padded to ensure payload to align at 4-byte boundary. 0: L2 header not extra padded
- ***AMPDU***: 1: this is an AMPDU segregated frame
- ***DEC***: 1: this is a decrypted frame

#### 3.20.3.13.6 RXWI format

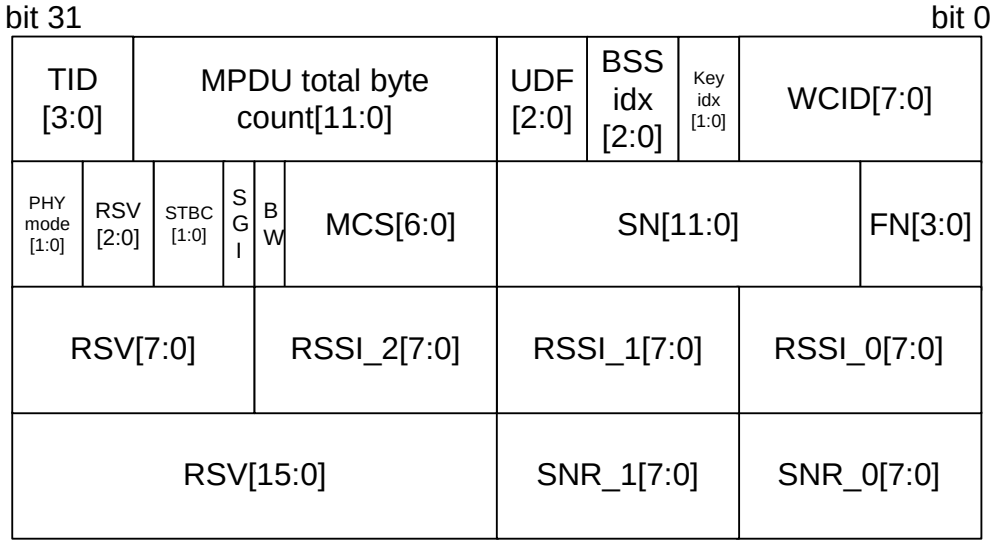



Fig. 3-20-8 RXWI Format

- ***WCID***: index of ADDR2 in the pair wise KEY table. This value uniquely identifies the TA. WCID=255 means not found.
- ***KEY Index***: 0~3 extracted from IV field. For driver reference only, no particular usage so far.
- ***BSSID index***: 0~7 for BSSID0~7. Extract from 802.11 header (the last three bits of BSSID field)
- ***UDF***: User Defined Field.
- ***MPDU total byte count***: the entire MPDU length.
- ***TID***: extracted from 8002.11 QOS control field.
- ***FN***: fragment number of the received MPDU. Extract from 802.11 header.
- ***SN***: sequence number of the received MPDU. Used for BA re-ordering especially that AMSDU are auto segregated by hardware and lost the 802.11 header.
- ***"MCS/BW/SGI/PHYmode"***: RX data rate & related MIMO parameters of this frame got from PLCP header. See next section for the detail.
- ***RSSI0, RSSI1, RSSI2***: BBP reported RSSI information of the received frame.
- ***SNR0, SNR1***: BBP reported SNR information of the received frame.

#### 3.20.3.13.7 Brief PHY rate format and definition

A 16-bit brief PHY rate is used in MAC hardware.
It is the same PHY rate field described in TXWI and RXWI.

| Bit | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 15:14 | PHY MODE | Preamble mode<br>0: Legacy CCK, 1: Legacy OFDM,<br>2: HT mix mode, 3: HT green field |
| 13:11 | - | Reserved |
| 10:9 | - | Reserved |
| 8 | SGI | Short Guard Interval, only support for HT mode<br>0: 800ns, 1: 400ns |
| 7 | BW | Bandwidth<br>Support both legacy and HT modes<br>40Mhz in legacy mode means duplicate legacy<br>0: 20Mhz, 1: 40Mhz |
| 6:0 | MCS | Modulation Coding Scheme |

Table. Brief PHY rate format

| MODE = Legacy CCK | |
|---|---|
| MCS = 0 | Long Preamble CCK 1Mbps |
| MCS = 1 | Long Preamble CCK 2Mbps |
| MCS = 2 | Long Preamble CCK 5.5Mbps |
| MCS = 3 | Long Preamble CCK 11Mbps |
| MCS = 8 | Short Preamble CCK 1Mbps<br>* illegal rate |
| MCS = 9 | Short Preamble CCK 2Mbps |
| MCS = 10 | Short Preamble 5.5Mbps |
| MCS = 11 | Short Preamble 11Mbps |
| Other MCS codes are reserved in legacy CCK mode.<br>BW and SGI are reserved in legacy CCK mode. | |

| | |
|---|---|
| MODE = Legacy OFDM | |
| MCS = 0 | 6Mbps |
| MCS = 1 | 9Mbps |
| MCS = 2 | 12Mbps |
| MCS = 3 | 18Mbps |
| MCS = 4 | 24Mbps |
| MCS = 5 | 36Mbps |
| MCS = 6 | 48Mbps |
| MCS = 7 | 54Mbps |
| Other MCS code in legacy CCK mode are reserved<br>When BW = 1, duplicate legacy OFDM is sent.<br>SGI is reserved in legacy OFDM mode. | |
| MODE = HT mix mode / HT green field | |
| MCS = 0 (1S) | (BW=0, SGI=0) 6.5 Mbps |
| MCS = 1 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 13Mbps |
| MCS = 2 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 19.5Mbps |
| MCS = 3 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 26Mbps |
| MCS = 4 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 39Mbps |
| MCS = 5 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 52Mbps |
| MCS = 6 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 58.5Mbps |
| MCS = 7 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 65Mbps |
| MCS = 8 (2S) | (BW=0, SGI=0) 13Mbps |
| MCS = 9 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 26Mbps |
| MCS = 10 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 39Mbps |
| MCS = 11 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 52Mbps |
| MCS = 12 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 78Mbps |
| MCS = 13 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 104Mbps |
| MCS = 14 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 117Mbps |
| MCS = 15 | (BW=0, SGI=0) 130Mbps |
| MCS = 32 | (BW=1, SGI=0) HT duplicate 6Mbps |
| When BW=1, PHY_RATE = PHY_RATE * 2<br>When SGI=1, PHY_RATE = PHY_RATE * 10/9<br>The effects of BW and SGI are accumulative.<br>When MCS=0~7(1S), SGI option is supported. BW option is supported.<br>When MCS=8~15(2S), SGI option is supported. BW option is supported.<br>When MCS=32, only SGI option is supported. BW option is not supported. (BW =1)<br>Other MCS code in HT mode are reserved | |

### 3.20.3.14 Driver implementation note

#### 3.20.3.14.1 nstruction of down load 8051 firmware

1. Select on-chip program memory
   i. SYS_CTRL.HST_PM_SEL (0x0400.bit[16]) =1
2. Write firmware into program memory space, which starts at 0x2000.
3. Close on-chip program memory.
   i. SYS_CTRL.HST_PM_SEL (0x0400.bit[16]) =0
4. 8051 starts

#### 3.20.3.14.2 Instruction of initialize DMA

1. Set base addresses and total number of descriptors:
   i. TX_BASE_PTR0~TX_BASE_PTR5
   ii. RX_BASE_PTR
   iii. TX_MAX_CNT0~TX_MAX_CNT
   iv. RX_MAX_CNT
2. Set WMM parameters
   i. WMM_AIFSN_CFG
   ii. WMM_CWMIN_CFG
   iii. WMM_CWMAX_CFG
   iv. WMM_TXOP0_CFG and WMM_TXOP1_CFG
3. Set DMA global configuration except TX_DMA_EN and RX_DMA_EN bits:
   i.WPDMA_GLO_CFG
4. Set interrupt configuration:
   i. DELAY_INT_CFG
5. Enable DMA interrupt:
   i.INT_MASK
6. Enable DMA:
   i.WPDMA_GLO_CFG.TX_DMA_EN = 1
   WPDMA_GLO_CFG.RX_DMA_EN = 1

#### 3.20.3.14.3 Instruction of clock control

##### 3.20.3.14.3.1 Clock turn-off sequence

1. Switch 80MHz main clock to PLL clock:
   i. Set SYS_CTRL.CLKSELECT = 1
2. Turn clock off:
   i. Set SYS_CTRL.MAC_CLK_EN = 0
   ii.Set SYS_CTRL.DMA_CLK_EN = 0
3. Turn off PLL:
   i. Set PWR_PIN_CFG.IO_PLL_PD = 1.

##### 3.20.3.14.3.2 Clock turn-on sequence

1. Turn on PLL:
   i. Set PWR_PIN_CFG.IO_PLL_PD = 0
2. Waiting at least $bbp_pll_ready for PLL clock stable:
3. Turn on clock:
   i. Set SYS_CTRL.MAC_CLK_EN = 1
   ii. Set SYS_CTRL.DMA_CLK_EN = 1

### 3.20.3.14.4 Instruction of TX/RX control

#### 3.20.3.14.4.1 Freeze TX and RX sequence

1. Disable DMA TX:
   i. Set WPDMA_GLO_CFG..TX_DMA_EN = 0
2. Polling until DMA TX becomes idle and PBF TX queue becomes empty:
   i. Polling WPDMA_GLO_CFG. TX_DMA_BUSY = 0
   ii. Polling TXRXQ_STA.TX0Q_STA = 2, TXRXQ_STA.TX1Q_STA = 2, polling TXRXQ_STA.TX2Q_STA = 2.
   iii. If the polling period > $dma_tx_polling_timeout, abort power saving procedure.
3. Disable MAC TX and RX:
   i. Set MAC_SYS_CTRL.MAC_RX_EN = 0
   ii. MAC_SYS_CTRL.MAC_TX_EN = 0
4. Polling until MAC TX and RX is disabled:
   i. Polling MAC_STATUS_REG. TX_STATUS = 0, MAC_STATUS_REG. RX_STATUS = 0
   ii. If the polling period > $mac_polling_timeout, abort power saving procedure.
5. Disable DMA RX:
   i. Set WPDMA_GLO_CFG..RX_DMA_EN = 0.
6. Polling until both DMA RX becomes idle and PBF RX queue becomes empty:
   i. Polling WPDMA_GLO_CFG. RX_DMA_BUSY =0.
   ii. Polling TXRXQ_STA.RX0Q_STA = 0x22.
   iii. If the polling period > $dma_rx_polling_timeout, abort power saving procedure.

#### 3.20.3.14.4.2 Recover TX and RX sequence

1. Enable DMA TX and RX:
   i. Set WPDMA_GLO_CFG..RX_DMA_EN = 1
   ii. Set WPDMA_GLO_CFG..TX_DMA_EN = 1
2. Enable MAC TX and RX:
   i. Set MAC_SYS_CTRL.MAC_RX_EN = 1
   ii. Set MAC_SYS_CTRL.MAC_TX_EN = 1

### 3.20.3.14.5 Instruction of RF power on/off sequence

1. Power down RF components sequence
   i. Power down RF component
2. Set PWR_PIN_CFG.IO_ADDA_PD = 1.
3. Set PWR_PIN_CFG.IO_RF_PE = 0.
4. Set TX_PIN_CFG.TRSW_EN = 0.
5. Set TX_PIN_CFG.RFTR_EN = 0.
6. Set TX_PIN_CFG.LNA_PE*EN = 0.
7. Set TX_PIN_CFG.PA_PE*EN = 0.
8. Enable RF components sequence
   i. Recover the registers in previous sequence.
   ii. Wait $rf_pll_ready for RF PLL becomes stable.

### 3.20.3.14.6 Power saving procedure

1. Freeze TX and RX
2. Power down LED and RF components
3. Clock turn-off

#### 3.20.3.14.7 Power recovery procedure

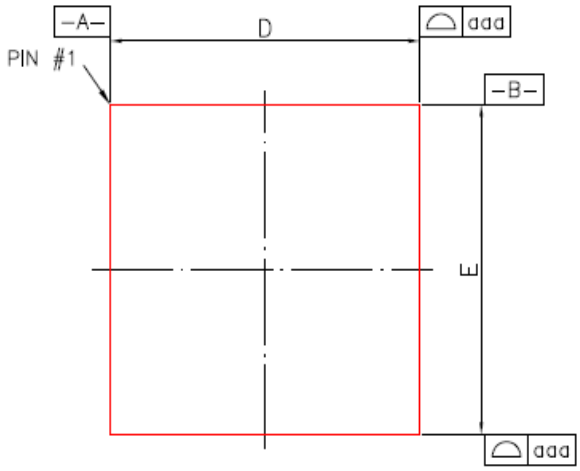
1. Clock turn-on
2. Enable LED and RF components
3. Recover TX and RX

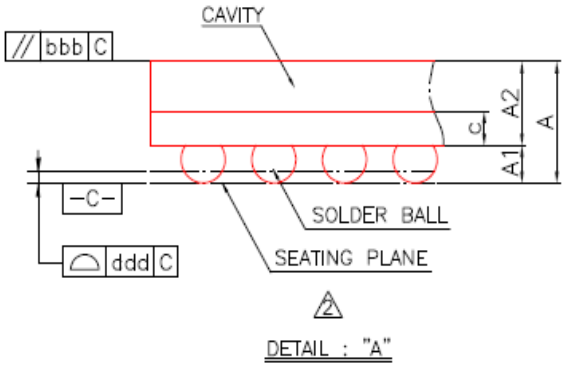
#### 3.20.3.14.8 Parameters

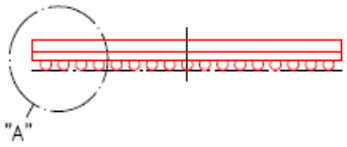
1. $rf_pll_ready = TBD.
2. $bbp_pll_ready = 500 us.
3. $dma_rx_polling_timeout = TBD.
4. $dma_tx_polling_timeout = TBD.
5. $mac_polling_timeout = TBD.

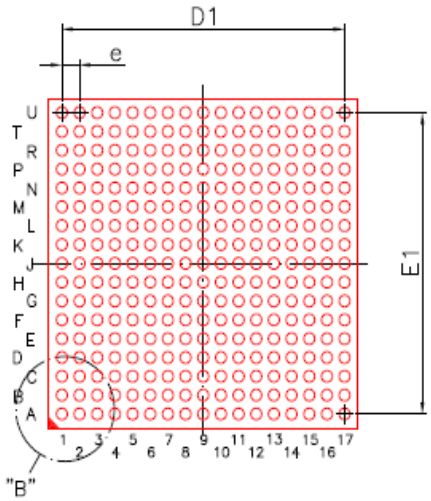
## 4. Package Physical Dimension

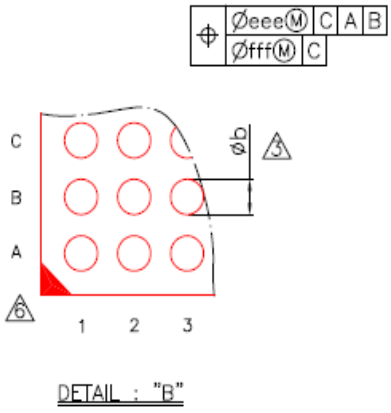
### 4.1 TFBGA 289B（14×14×0.94mm）



| Symbol | Dimension in mm | | | Dimension in inch | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | MIN | NOM | MAX | MIN | NOM | MAX |
| A | --- | --- | 1.40 | --- | --- | 0.055 |
| A1 | 0.35 | 0.40 | 0.45 | 0.014 | 0.016 | 0.018 |
| A2 | 0.84 | 0.89 | 0.94 | 0.033 | 0.035 | 0.037 |
| c | 0.32 | 0.36 | 0.40 | 0.013 | 0.014 | 0.016 |
| D | 13.90 | 14.00 | 14.10 | 0.547 | 0.551 | 0.555 |
| E | 13.90 | 14.00 | 14.10 | 0.547 | 0.551 | 0.555 |
| D1 | --- | 12.80 | --- | --- | 0.504 | --- |
| E1 | --- | 12.80 | --- | --- | 0.504 | --- |
| e | --- | 0.80 | --- | --- | 0.031 | --- |
| b | 0.45 | 0.50 | 0.55 | 0.018 | 0.020 | 0.022 |
| aaa | 0.15 | | | 0.006 | | |
| bbb | 0.20 | | | 0.008 | | |
| ddd | 0.20 | | | 0.008 | | |
| eee | 0.15 | | | 0.006 | | |
| fff | 0.08 | | | 0.003 | | |
| MD/ME | 17/17 | | | 17/17 | | |

NOTE :

1. CONTROLLING DIMENSION : MILLIMETER.
2. PRIMARY DATUM C AND SEATING PLANE ARE DEFINED BY THE SPHERICAL CROWNS OF THE SOLDER BALLS.
3. DIMENSION b IS MEASURED AT THE MAXIMUM SOLDER BALL DIAMETER, PARALLEL TO PRIMARY DATUM C.
4. THERE SHALL BE A MINIMUM CLEARANCE OF 0.25mm BETWEEN THE EDGE OF THE SOLDER BALL AND THE BODY EDGE.
5. REFERENCE DOCUMENT : JEDEC MO-205.
6. THE PATTERN OF PIN 1 FIDUCIAL IS FOR REFERENCE ONLY.
7. SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS C CLASS: bbb, ddd

## 5. Revision History

| Rev | Date | From | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2.0 | 2008/8/14 | Frank Lu | Initial Release |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |